



**HAL**  
open science

# Statistical analysis of large scale surveys for constraining the Galaxy evolution

Andre Machado Murtinheiras Martins

► **To cite this version:**

Andre Machado Murtinheiras Martins. Statistical analysis of large scale surveys for constraining the Galaxy evolution. Astrophysics [astro-ph]. Université de Franche-Comté, 2014. English. NNT : 2014BESA2026 . tel-01649424

**HAL Id: tel-01649424**

**<https://theses.hal.science/tel-01649424>**

Submitted on 27 Nov 2017

**HAL** is a multi-disciplinary open access archive for the deposit and dissemination of scientific research documents, whether they are published or not. The documents may come from teaching and research institutions in France or abroad, or from public or private research centers.

L'archive ouverte pluridisciplinaire **HAL**, est destinée au dépôt et à la diffusion de documents scientifiques de niveau recherche, publiés ou non, émanant des établissements d'enseignement et de recherche français ou étrangers, des laboratoires publics ou privés.

# PhD Thesis

Specialization: Astrophysics

presented by

**André Machado Murtinheira Martins**

Statistical analysis of large scale  
surveys for constraining the Galaxy  
evolution

**Directed by Annie Robin**

**Thèse dirigée par Annie Robin**

soutenue le 9 Décembre 2014

**Jury :**

Dr. Céline Reylé (Président)  
Dr. Carine Babusiaux (Rapporteur)  
Dr. Francesca Figueras (Rapporteur)  
Dr. Olivier Bienaymé (examineur)  
Dr. Annie Robin (Directrice de thèse)

**Front Cover:** Astronomy Picture of the Day (2008 January 4) S.Brunier  
**Back cover:** ESA/ATG medialab; background: ESO/S. Brunier

## Acknowledgements

First and foremost, I would like to thank to my PhD supervisor Dr. Annie Robin, for the knowledge she passed to me, her patience, time and support during these three years of work. It has been an honor to be her Ph.D student. I thank Dr. Francesca Figueras, Dr. Carine Babusiaux, Dr. Olivier Bienaymé and Dr. Céline Reylé which accepted to be the jury of my PhD thesis. I want to thank Céline Reylé for sharing her knowledge and experience. My thanks go also to her husband who is a very good doctor. Thanks go also to the people I encountered at Besançon observatory during my stay in particular Arvind, Ashok, Maria, Esko, Ricardo, Julien and José for productive discussions. The great technical support staff was very during the PhD. I want to thank all of them who helped me with their competences, in particular F. Gazelle, Kevin, Sékou and Bernard Debray. I want to thank to all people in the observatory who helped me integrating in France.

I want to thank the GREAT-ITN that offered me a fellowship and allowed me to be inserted in a large group of professors and PhD students in this scientific domain. Big thanks to the group and in particular to Sergi, Carmen, Lisa and Cheng for sharing their knowledge and skills with me. Big thanks to all my former teachers, from Portugal, in particular Dr. João, Dr. Paulo and Dr. Rui for my early formation in this field. A big thanks to Dr. Daniele Galli with whom I learned so much in Arcetri.

A big thanks to all my family for their support and love. In particular my mom, dad, grandmother and sister who have been always at my side. A big thanks to my closest friends in Portugal in particular Antonio Marçal, Antonio, Nuno, Henrique and João. You have always be with me. I want to thanks my closest friends, in the university, in particular Arvind, Ashok, Alia, Leila, Khaoula, Timothée, Mohamad, Alexis, Gaël, Eric Michoulier, Cory and Batoul with whom I shared special moments. Thanks all my friends in particular Yesica, Claudia, Elisa, Ekaterina, Marina, Nicolas and Gustavo with whom I shared both happiness and sadness in my first year in France. I want to thank my friends from Doubs You Play in particular Eric, Jin, Aymeric, Olivier, Hung and Nicolas. I also want to thank Christian and Annick who always had friendly words to tell me.

I want to dedicate this work to all people who were present in my life but in special I dedicate it to the person who has been always in my thoughts and more Ana Maria Vaz Rodrigues.

---



# Abstract

The formation and evolution of the thick disc of the Milky Way remain controversial. We made use of a population synthesis model of the Galaxy, the Besançon Galaxy Model (Robin et al. 2003), which can be used for data interpretation, study the Galactic structure and test different scenarios of Galaxy formation and evolution. We examined these questions by studying the shape and the metallicity distribution of the thin and thick disc using the population synthesis approach. We imposed on simulations observational errors and biases to make them directly comparable to observations. We corrected magnitudes and colors of stars, from the simulation, using an extinction model. The available extinction models do not always reproduce the exact quantity of extinction along the line of sight. A code to correct the distribution of extinction in distance along these lines have been developed and the corrected extinctions have been applied on model simulations. We studied the shape of the thin disc using photometric data at low latitudes from the SDSS-SEGUE survey. We compared qualitatively and quantitatively observations and simulations and try to constrain the Initial Mass Function. Using the spectroscopic survey SEGUE we selected Main Sequence Turnoff (MSTO) stars (Cheng et al. 2012b) and K giants to study the metallicity distribution of the thin and thick discs. We computed a distance for each star from the relation between effective temperatures and absolute magnitudes for the observed and simulated catalogs. These two catalogues have the same biases in distances, therefore are comparable. We developed a tool based on a MCMC-ABC method to determine the metallicity distribution and study the correlations between the fitted parameters. We confirmed a radial metallicity gradient of  $-0.079 \pm 0.015$  dex  $\text{kpc}^{-1}$  for the thin disc. We obtained a solar neighborhood metallicity of the thick disc of  $-0.47 \pm 0.03$  dex similar to previous studies and the thick disc shows no gradient but the data are compatible with an inner positive gradient followed by a outer negative one. Furthermore, we have applied the developed tools to the Gaia-ESO spectroscopic survey and computed the metallicity distribution of F/G/K stars in the thin and thick disc assuming a two epoch formation for the thick disc of the Milky Way. We obtained a local metallicity in the thick disc of  $-0.23 \pm 0.04$  dex slightly higher than the one obtained with SEGUE but in agreement with Adibekyan et al. (2013) and a radial metallicity gradient for the thick disc in agreement with our previous analysis of SEGUE data and the literature. The local metallicity is in fair agreement with literature at the  $3\sigma$  level but because the GES data is an internal release under testing further analysis with more data and better calibrations have to be done. The existence of a flat gradient in the thick disc can be a consequence of an early formation from a highly turbulent homogeneous well mixed gas, unless it has suffered heavy radial mixing later on.

**keywords:** Galaxy: structure – Galaxy: evolution – Galaxy: formation – Galaxy: disk – Galaxy: stellar content – Astronomical data bases: Surveys

---



---

## Résumé

La formation et l'évolution du disque épais de la Voie Lactée restent controversées. Nous avons utilisé un modèle de synthèse de la population de la Galaxie, le Modèle de la Galaxie de Besançon (Robin et al. 2003), qui peut être utilisé pour l'interprétation des données, étudier la structure galactique et tester différents scénarios de formation et évolution Galactique. Nous avons examiné ces questions en étudiant la forme et la distribution de métallicité du disque mince et du disque épais en utilisant l'approche de synthèse de la population. Nous avons imposé sur des simulations les erreurs d'observation et les biais afin de les rendre directement comparables aux observations. Nous avons corrigé les magnitudes et les couleurs des étoiles de la simulation, en utilisant un modèle d'extinction. Les modèles d'extinction disponibles ne reproduisent pas toujours la quantité exacte d'extinction le long de la ligne de visée. Un programme a été développé pour corriger la distribution de l'extinction en fonction de la distance le long de ces lignes. Les extinctions correctes ont ensuite été appliquées sur les simulations du modèle. Nous avons étudié la forme du disque mince en utilisant des données photométriques aux basses latitudes du sondage SDSS-SEGUE. Nous avons comparé qualitativement et quantitativement les observations et les simulations et nous avons essayé de contraindre la fonction de masse initiale. En utilisant la spectroscopie du relevé SEGUE, nous avons sélectionné les étoiles du turn-off de la séquence principale (MSTO) (Cheng et al. 2012b) et des géantes K pour étudier la distribution de métallicité du disque mince et du disque épais. Nous avons calculé une estimation de distance pour chaque étoile à partir de la relation entre les températures effectives et magnitudes absolues pour les catalogues observés et simulés. Ces deux catalogues ont les mêmes biais sur les distances, elles sont donc comparables.

Nous avons développé un outil basé sur une méthode MCMC-ABC pour déterminer la distribution de la métallicité et étudier les corrélations entre les paramètres ajustés. Nous avons confirmé la présence d'un gradient de métallicité radiale de  $-0.079 \pm 0.015$  dex  $\text{kpc}^{-1}$  pour le disque mince. Nous avons obtenu une métallicité du disque épais au voisinage solaire de  $-0.47 \pm 0.03$  dex, compatible avec les résultats obtenus par les études précédentes. De plus, le disque épais ne montre pas de gradient, mais les données sont compatibles avec un gradient positif intérieur suivi d'un négatif extérieur. Nous avons ensuite appliqué les outils développés au relevé spectroscopique Gaia-ESO et calculé la distribution de métallicité des étoiles F/G/K dans le disque mince et épais en supposant une formation en deux époques du disque épais de la Voie Lactée. Nous avons obtenu une métallicité locale dans le disque épais de  $-0.23 \pm 0.04$  dex légèrement plus élevée que celle obtenue avec SEGUE mais en accord avec Adibekyan et al. (2013) et un gradient de métallicité radiale du disque épais en accord avec notre analyse précédente des données de SEGUE et la littérature. La métallicité locale est en accord avec la littérature au niveau de  $3\sigma$  mais parce que les données GES sont préliminaires, une analyse plus approfondie avec plus de données et de meilleures calibrations doit être faite. L'existence d'un

---



gradient plat dans le disque épais peut être une conséquence d'une formation à partir d'un gaz turbulent et bien homogène, ou bien un fort mélange radial a brassé après coup les étoiles.

**Mots clés:** Galaxy: structure – Galaxy: evolution – Galaxy: formation – Galaxy: disk – Galaxy: stellar content – Astronomical data bases: Surveys

---

---

# Contents

<b>1. Motivation</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>2. Introduction</b>	<b>3</b>
2.1. Astronomy in the antiquity . . . . .	3
2.2. Galaxy formation in a $\Lambda$ cold dark matter scenario . . . . .	5
2.3. Structure of the Milky Way . . . . .	7
2.4. Galactic populations . . . . .	10
2.5. Disc of the Milky Way . . . . .	11
2.5.1. Thin disc . . . . .	12
2.5.2. Thick disc . . . . .	13
2.6. Flare . . . . .	21
2.7. Stellar halo . . . . .	22
2.8. Bulge . . . . .	23
<b>3. The Besançon Galaxy Model</b>	<b>25</b>
3.1. Introduction . . . . .	25
3.2. The overall structure . . . . .	26
3.2.1. The luminosity function and Hess diagram . . . . .	26
3.2.2. Density laws . . . . .	28
3.2.3. Model kinematics . . . . .	30
3.2.4. The dynamical self-consistency . . . . .	31
3.3. The metallicity distribution . . . . .	31
3.4. A revised model for the thin disc . . . . .	32
3.4.1. Atmosphere models . . . . .	33
3.4.2. Evolutionary tracks . . . . .	33
3.4.3. Binarity . . . . .	34
3.4.4. Age-metallicity relation . . . . .	34
3.4.5. Dynamical mass . . . . .	35
3.5. A new thick disc in the BGM . . . . .	36
<b>4. Surveys</b>	<b>37</b>
4.1. Introduction . . . . .	37
4.2. Geneva-Copenhagen survey . . . . .	37
4.3. SDSS-II/III . . . . .	38
4.3.1. SEGUE/SEGUE2 . . . . .	38

---

---

4.3.2. APOGEE . . . . .	39
4.4. RAVE . . . . .	39
4.5. LAMOST . . . . .	41
4.6. Gaia . . . . .	41
4.7. Gaia-ESO . . . . .	43
4.8. GALAH . . . . .	44
4.9. LSST . . . . .	45
4.10. WEAVE . . . . .	45
4.11. 4MOST . . . . .	45
4.12. MOONS . . . . .	46
<b>5. Photometric and spectroscopic sample</b>	<b>47</b>
5.1. Selecting the photometric sample from SEGUE . . . . .	47
5.2. Selecting the spectroscopic sample from SEGUE . . . . .	49
<b>6. Simulations</b>	<b>51</b>
6.1. Masking the simulations . . . . .	51
6.2. Extinction . . . . .	52
6.3. The S/N, proper motions and spectral parameter errors . . . . .	70
6.4. Selection Sample . . . . .	73
6.4.1. Main Sequence turnoff selection . . . . .	73
6.4.2. K giants selection . . . . .	74
<b>7. Photometric results</b>	<b>75</b>
7.1. Comparison between observations and simulations . . . . .	75
7.1.1. Fields 2534 and 2536 . . . . .	75
7.1.2. Fields 2537 and 2538 . . . . .	80
7.1.3. Fields 2554, 2555 and 2556 . . . . .	90
7.1.4. Fields 2668, 2678 and 2681 . . . . .	104
7.1.5. Proper motions . . . . .	117
7.2. Constraining the Initial Mass Function . . . . .	119
7.2.1. Method . . . . .	119
7.2.2. Results . . . . .	120
7.3. Comparison with a new version of the Besançon galaxy model . . . . .	121
<b>8. Spectroscopic results from the SEGUE low latitude data</b>	<b>125</b>
8.1. Main Sequence Turn off stars . . . . .	125
8.1.1. Comparison between observations and simulations . . . . .	125
8.1.2. Preliminary comparison with the standard model . . . . .	125
8.1.3. Metallicity variation with longitudes and latitudes . . . . .	128
8.1.4. Distances . . . . .	129
8.1.5. Fitting method . . . . .	131
8.1.6. Case 1 . . . . .	133
8.1.7. Case 2 . . . . .	134
8.1.8. Case 3 . . . . .	137

---

---

8.1.9. Revised model . . . . .	138
8.1.10. Fitting two slopes in the thick disc . . . . .	141
8.1.11. The age of the thick disc . . . . .	143
8.2. The metallicity distribution in the model B revised version . . . . .	143
8.3. K giants sample . . . . .	144
8.4. Comparison with previous works . . . . .	144
8.4.1. Thin disc . . . . .	144
8.4.2. Thick disc . . . . .	146
<b>9. Spectroscopic results from the GES data</b>	<b>149</b>
9.1. Photometric errors . . . . .	149
9.2. Extinction . . . . .	150
9.3. Spectroscopic errors . . . . .	157
9.4. The selection sample . . . . .	157
9.5. Distances . . . . .	161
9.6. The Metallicity Distribution . . . . .	166
9.6.1. The observed metallicity distribution . . . . .	166
9.6.2. Preliminary comparison with the BGM . . . . .	168
9.6.3. ABC/MCMC analysis for the GES sample . . . . .	174
9.7. Discussion . . . . .	176
9.7.1. The thin disc . . . . .	176
9.7.2. The thick disc . . . . .	178
<b>10. Conclusions and perspectives</b>	<b>179</b>
10.1. The photometric sample . . . . .	179
10.2. Thin/Thick disc - SEGUE vs GES . . . . .	179
10.3. If the thick disc has no radial gradient? . . . . .	182
10.3.1. If the thick disc has a positive/negative gradient? . . . . .	183
10.3.2. Perspectives . . . . .	183
<b>Publications</b>	<b>185</b>
<b>Bibliographie</b>	<b>185</b>

---



---

## List of Figures

- |   |    |
|---|----|
| 2.1. Herschel map of the Milky Way. The darker black point near the center of the map is the Sun position. Source: On the Construction of the Heavens. By William Herschel, Esq. F. R. S. Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society of London, Vol. 75. (1785), pp. 213-266. . . . .  | 5  |
| 2.2. Kapteyn's map of the Galaxy. Source: Kapteyn (1922) . . . . .  | 5  |
| 2.3. <i>An illustration of the concept of baryon acoustic oscillations, which are imprinted in the early universe and can still be seen today in Galaxy surveys like the Baryon Oscillation Spectroscopic Survey (BOSS; Schlegel et al. 2009).</i> Image Credit: Chris Blake and Sam Moorfield in <a href="https://www.sdss3.org/surveys/boss.php">https://www.sdss3.org/surveys/boss.php</a> | 6  |
| 2.4. The Milky Way edge-on view showing the different components of the Milky Way with the Sun position indicated. Image Credit: R. Buser. Hurt . . . . .   | 8  |
| 2.5. The Milky Way face-on view with the Sun position indicated. Artist's impression of the Milky Way. Image Credit: NASA/JPL-Caltech/ESO/R. . . . .  | 9  |
| 2.6. The observed and predicted rotation curve of the Galaxy M33. Image credit: University of Sheffield. . . . .  | 9  |
| 2.7. The predicted rotation curve from the self-consistent model of the Milky Way Robin et al. (2003). The contributions from each component of the Milky Way is also visible. The observations are from Caldwell & Ostriker (1981) . . . . .   | 10 |
| 2.8. A scheme showing the orbits of population I and II. Image credit: Nick Strobel at <a href="http://www.astronomynotes.com">www.astronomynotes.com</a> . . . . .   | 11 |
| 2.9. Schematic representation of a disc structure. Artist's impression of the Milky Way. Image Credit: Amanda Smith, IoA graphics officer . . . . .   | 11 |
| 2.10. The NGC 4762 Galaxy, in different filters (B and V filters), showing a thin and a thick disc (Tsikoudi 1980). The image is taken from <a href="http://arxiv.org/ps/astro-ph/0208106v1">http://arxiv.org/ps/astro-ph/0208106v1</a> figure 3 in Freeman & Bland-Hawthorn (2002) . . . . .   | 12 |
| 2.11. Warp of the spiral Galaxy ESO 510-13. Image Credit: NASA's Hubble Space Telescope . . . . .   | 18 |
| 2.12. The dust warp, in galactic coordinates, as traced by extinction from figure 8 of Marshall et al. (2006). Each panel describes the extinction at 1 kpc intervals from the nearest (top panel) to the further (bottom panel) distance. The black line indicates the position of the mid plane as given by the stellar warp formula in Robin et al. (2003). . . . .                        | 19 |
| 2.13. Schematic representation of the galactic structure. The flare is represented by the discontinuous line representing the thick disc which increases scale height as a function of the galactocentric radius. Image Credit: Gaia-ESO Survey . . . . .   | 21 |
-

2.14.	Figure from Minniti & Zoccali (2008). The velocity dispersion and mean velocity as a function of the galactic longitude in the bulge component. Blue squares are K giants measured by Minniti (1996) and red crosses are M-giants measured by Rich et al. (2007) and which were corrected for the solar motion around the Galaxy. . . . .	24
3.1.	Figure 1 of Robin & Cr�ez�e (1986). Flowchart of the algorithm. . . . .	27
3.2.	Scheme of the algorithm to compute the dynamical self-consistency. Ingredients for the equations are shown in italic, equations are shown in bold and results from equations are underlined. . . . .	31
4.1.	The SDSS sky coverage in the southern and northern Galactic cap. Image credit: <a href="http://www.sdss.org/sdss-surveys/">http://www.sdss.org/sdss-surveys/</a> . . . . .	38
4.2.	The SEGUE in blue and SEGUE-2 in red sky coverage in Galactic coordinates. Image credit: M. Strauss in <a href="http://www.sdss3.org/surveys/segue2.php">http://www.sdss3.org/surveys/segue2.php</a> . . . . .	39
4.3.	The APOGEE sky coverage, from DR10, in Galactic coordinates. Image credit: in <a href="http://www.sdss3.org/dr10/">http://www.sdss3.org/dr10/</a> . . . . .	40
4.4.	The RAVE sky coverage where color are the stellar heliocentric radial velocities. Image credit: Axel Mellinger at <a href="http://www.rave-survey.aip.de/rave/pages/project/index.jsp">http://www.rave-survey.aip.de/rave/pages/project/index.jsp</a> . . . . .	40
4.5.	Simulation of the Gaia Galactic coverage. Image credit: X. Luri & the DPAC-CU2 . . . . .	41
4.6.	The Gaia Galactic coverage where the smaller and larger circles indicate the radius at which distances are accurate to 10% and the tangential velocities accurate to 1 km s <sup>-1</sup> . Image credit: ESA/Lund . . . . .	42
4.7.	The Gaia parallax errors. Top left panel: The G0V stars parallax error distribution without extinction. Top right panel: The G0V stars parallax error distribution with extinction. Bottom left panel: The K5III stars parallax error distribution with extinction and no extinction. Bottom right panel: The Cepheids stars parallax error distribution with extinction and no extinction Image credit: Lennart Lindegren . . . . .	42
4.8.	Sky coverage of the observed targets in DR1 data release. Color indicates the different target groups. MW: Milky Way fields; CL: Clusters; SD: Standard Image credit: provided by Cambridge Astronomy Survey Unit (CASU) - <a href="http://casu.ast.cam.ac.uk/gaiaeso/overview">http://casu.ast.cam.ac.uk/gaiaeso/overview</a> . . . . .	44
5.1.	Difference between the SSPP temperature estimates and the corrected values as a function of the SSPP temperature estimates for plate 2536 (l,b)=(70°,14°). . . . .	50
5.2.	Difference between the SSPP temperature estimates and the corrected values as a function of the extinction E(B-V) for plate 2555 (l,b)=(94°,8°). . . . .	50
6.1.	Distribution in (l,b) of the simulated stars (red points) and observed ones (blue points) for the field 2537. . . . .	51
6.2.	The green points are the masked simulation and the red points are the full simulation for the field 2537. . . . .	52

6.3. Map of the Schlegel et al. (1998) extinction in the g band for the field 2536. We can see in this figure regions where the extinction is homogeneous and low and regions where the extinction is higher. . . . .	53
6.4. Map of the Schlegel et al. (1998) extinction in the g band for the field 2555. We can see in this figure regions where the extinction in g band can reach 8 magnitudes. . . . .	53
6.5. Map of the Drimmel & Spergel (2001) extinction model in the g band for the field 2536. . . . .	53
6.6. Color magnitude diagram for the field 2536 (l,b)=(70°,14°). Density map along with grey contours are observations. Black contours are simulations. . . . .	54
6.7. Color magnitude diagram for the field 2555 (l,b)=(94°,8°). Density map along with grey contours are observations. Black contours are simulations. . . . .	55
6.8. Top panel: Total $A_v$ as a function of the distance from the Sun for field 2534 (l,b)=(50°,14°). Density contours are the total $A_v$ after correction and black contours are before the correction. Bottom panel: Total $A_v$ distribution before (red dashed line) and after correction (solid black line). . . . .	56
6.9. Total $A_v$ as a function of the distance from the Sun for field 2536 (l,b)=(70°,14°). Density contours are the total $A_v$ after correction and black contours are before the correction. Bottom panel: Total $A_v$ distribution before (red dashed line) and after correction (solid black line). . . . .	57
6.10. Total $A_v$ as a function of the distance from the Sun for field 2537 (l,b)=(110°,10.5°). Density contours are the total $A_v$ after correction and black contours are before the correction. Bottom panel: Total $A_v$ distribution before (red dashed line) and after correction (solid black line). . . . .	58
6.11. Total $A_v$ as a function of the distance from the Sun for field 2538 (l,b)=(110°,16°). Density contours are the total $A_v$ after correction and black contours are before the correction. Bottom panel: Total $A_v$ distribution before (red dashed line) and after correction (solid black line). . . . .	59
6.12. Total $A_v$ as a function of the distance from the Sun for field 2554 (l,b)=(94°,14°). Density contours are the total $A_v$ after correction and black contours are before the correction. Bottom panel: Total $A_v$ distribution before (red dashed line) and after correction (solid black line). . . . .	60
6.13. Total $A_v$ as a function of the distance from the Sun for field 2555 (l,b)=(94°,8°). Density contours are the total $A_v$ after correction and black contours are before the correction. Bottom panel: Total $A_v$ distribution before (red dashed line) and after correction (solid black line). . . . .	61
6.14. Total $A_v$ as a function of the distance from the Sun for field 2556 (l,b)=(94°,-8°). Density contours are the total $A_v$ after correction and black contours are before the correction. Bottom panel: Total $A_v$ distribution before (red dashed line) and after correction (solid black line). . . . .	62
6.15. Total $A_v$ as a function of the distance from the Sun for field 2668 (l,b)=(187°,-12°). Density contours are the total $A_v$ after correction and black contours are before the correction. Bottom panel: Total $A_v$ distribution before (red dashed line) and after correction (solid black line). . . . .	63



---

6.16. Total $A_v$ as a function of the distance from the Sun for field 2678 (l,b)=(187°, -8°). Density contours are the total $A_v$ after correction and black contours are before the correction. Bottom panel: Total $A_v$ distribution before (red dashed line) and after correction (solid black line). . . . .	64
6.17. Total $A_v$ as a function of the distance from the Sun for field 2681 (l,b)=(178°, -15°). Density contours are the total $A_v$ after correction and black contours are before the correction. Bottom panel: Total $A_v$ distribution before (red dashed line) and after correction (solid black line). . . . .	65
6.18. Color-magnitude diagram for region one of field 2555 (l,b)=(94°, 8°). Density map along with grey contours are observations. Black contours are simulations.	70
6.19. S/N as a function of the r magnitude for the plate 2668. Black points are observations and red points are simulations after applying the fit. . . . .	71
6.20. Parameter errors as a function of the S/N for plate 2699. Top left panel shows the metallicity error, bottom left: effective temperature, top right: gravity, bottom right: radial velocity. . . . .	71
7.1. Magnitude distribution for each individual region of the field 2536. The black histograms are observations and the red histograms are simulations. . . . .	76
7.2. Color distribution for each individual region of the field 2536. The black histograms are observations and the red histograms are simulations. . . . .	77
7.3. Magnitude, color (top panels) and proper motion distributions (middle and bottom panels) for field 2536. Black histograms are observations and the red histograms are simulations. . . . .	79
7.4. Simulated magnitude, color (top panels) and proper motion distributions (bottom panels) separated by populations for field 2536. Thin disc stars: Black solid line; Thick disc stars: Red dotted line; Halo stars: Blue dashed line. . . . .	81
7.5. Magnitude distribution for each individual region of the field 2537. The black histograms are observations and the red histograms are simulations. . . . .	82
7.6. Color distributions for each individual region of the field 2537. The black histograms are observations and the red histograms are simulations. . . . .	83
7.7. Magnitude, color (top panels) and proper motion distributions (middle and bottom panels) for field 2537. Black histograms are observations and the red histograms are simulations. . . . .	84
7.8. Magnitude, color (top panels) and proper motion distributions (bottom panels) separated by populations for field 2537. Thin disc stars: Black solid line; Thick disc stars: Red dotted line; Halo stars: Blue dashed line. . . . .	85
7.9. Magnitude distribution for each individual region of the field 2537. The black histograms are observations and the red histograms are simulations. . . . .	86
7.10. Color distributions for each individual region of the field 2537. The black histograms are observations and the red histograms are simulations. . . . .	87
7.11. Magnitude, color (top panels) and proper motion distributions (middle and bottom panels) for field 2538. Black histograms are observations and the red histograms are simulations. . . . .	88

---

---

7.12. Magnitude, color (top panels) and proper motion distributions (bottom panels) separated by populations for field 2538. Thin disc stars: Black solid line; Thick disc stars: Red dotted line; Halo stars: Blue dashed line. . . . .	89
7.13. Magnitude distribution for each individual region of the field 2554. The black histograms are observations and the red histograms are simulations. . . . .	91
7.14. Magnitude distribution for each individual region of the field 2555. The black histograms are observations and the red histograms are simulations. . . . .	92
7.15. Magnitude distribution for each individual region of the field 2556. The black histograms are observations and the red histograms are simulations. . . . .	93
7.16. Color distribution for each individual region of the field 2554. The black histograms are observations and the red histograms are simulations. . . . .	94
7.17. Color distribution for each individual region of the field 2555. The black histograms are observations and the red histograms are simulations. . . . .	95
7.18. Color distribution for each individual region of the field 2556. The black histograms are observations and the red histograms are simulations. . . . .	96
7.19. Magnitude, color (top panels) and proper motion distributions (middle and bottom panels) for field 2554. Black histograms are observations and the red histograms are simulations. . . . .	98
7.20. Magnitude, color (top panels) and proper motion distributions (bottom panels) separated by populations for field 2554. Thin disc stars: Black solid line; Thick disc stars: Red dotted line; Halo stars: Blue dashed line. . . . .	99
7.21. Magnitude, color (top panels) and proper motion distributions (middle and bottom panels) for field 2555. Black histograms are observations and the red histograms are simulations. . . . .	100
7.22. Magnitude, color (top panels) and proper motion distributions (bottom panels) separated by populations for field 2555. Thin disc stars: Black solid line; Thick disc stars: Red dotted line; Halo stars: Blue dashed line. . . . .	101
7.23. Magnitude, color (top panels) and proper motion distributions (middle and bottom panels) for field 2556. Black histograms are observations and the red histograms are simulations. . . . .	102
7.24. Magnitude, color (top panels) and proper motion distributions (bottom panels) separated by populations for field 2556. Thin disc stars: Black solid line; Thick disc stars: Red dotted line; Halo stars: Blue dashed line. . . . .	103
7.25. Magnitude distribution for each individual region of the field 2668. The black histograms are observations and the red histograms are simulations. . . . .	105
7.26. Magnitude distribution for each individual region of the field 2678. The black histograms are observations and the red histograms are simulations. . . . .	106
7.27. Magnitude distribution for each individual region of the field 2681. The black histograms are observations and the red histograms are simulations. . . . .	107
7.28. Color distribution for each individual region of the field 2668. The black histograms are observations and the red histograms are simulations. . . . .	108
7.29. Color distribution for each individual region of the field 2678. The black histograms are observations and the red histograms are simulations. . . . .	109
7.30. Color distribution for each individual region of the field 2681. The black histograms are observations and the red histograms are simulations. . . . .	110

---

---

7.31. Magnitude, color (top panels) and proper motion distributions (middle and bottom panels) for field 2668. Black histograms are observations and the red histograms are simulations. . . . .	111
7.32. Magnitude, color (top panels) and proper motion distributions (bottom panels) separated by populations for field 2668. Thin disc stars: Black solid line; Thick disc stars: Red dotted line; Halo stars: Blue dashed line. . . . .	112
7.33. Magnitude, color (top panels) and proper motion distributions (middle and bottom panels) for field 2678. Black histograms are observations and the red histograms are simulations . . . . .	113
7.34. Magnitude, color (top panels) and proper motion distributions (bottom panels) separated by populations for field 2678. Thin disc stars: Black solid line; Thick disc stars: Red dotted line; Halo stars: Blue dashed line. . . . .	114
7.35. Magnitude, color (top panels) and proper motion distributions (middle and bottom panels) for field 2681. Black histograms are observations and the red histograms are simulations. . . . .	115
7.36. Magnitude, color (top panels) and proper motion distributions (bottom panels) separated by populations for field 2681. Thin disc stars: Black solid line; Thick disc stars: Red dotted line; Halo stars: Blue dashed line. . . . .	116
7.37. Proper motion (in $mas\ yr^{-1}$ ) measures of central tendency (Mean and Mode) and of dispersion (Standard deviation) as a function of the galactic coordinates. black filled circles: mean of the observations; black open circles: mode of the observations; red filled triangles: mean of the simulations; red open triangles: mode of the simulations. Top panel: $l$ and $b$ components of the proper motion as a function of the galactic longitude. Bottom panel: $l$ and $b$ components of the proper motion as a function of the galactic latitude. . . . .	118
7.38. Mass distribution for the fields used to fit the IMF as given by the standard model.	120
7.39. $\chi^2$ as a function of the IMF slopes. . . . .	121
7.40. $\chi^2$ for the magnitude distribution as a function of galactic longitude. The color coding is galactic latitude. Circles are the original simulation and squares are model B of the revised version of the BGM. . . . .	123
7.41. $\chi^2$ for the color distribution as a function of galactic longitude. The color coding is galactic latitude. Circles are the original simulation and squares are model B of the revised version of the BGM. . . . .	124
7.42. $\chi^2$ for the color magnitude distribution as a function of galactic longitude. The color coding is galactic latitude. Circles are the original simulation and squares are model B of the revised version of the BGM. . . . .	124
8.1. Distance from the plane as a function of the galactocentric distance for the MSTO stars sample as given by the simulations. . . . .	126
8.2. Comparison of the spectroscopic observations and simulations for the bright plate 2537, $l = 110^\circ$ and $b = 10.5^\circ$ . Black points and lines are observations. Simulations are in red. . . . .	127
8.3. Comparison of the spectroscopic observations and simulations for the faint plate 2545, $l = 110^\circ$ and $b = 10.5^\circ$ . Black points and lines are observations. Simulations are in red. . . . .	127

---

8.4.	Mode of metallicities at different longitudes for the data and the standard model. left panel are the bright plates and right panel are the faint plates. The observations are in black and the simulations in red. The standard deviation is represented by the small bars. Squares are latitudes higher or equal to $14^\circ$ ; Circles are latitudes between $8^\circ$ and $10.5^\circ$ ; Triangles are latitudes equal to $-8^\circ$ ; Diamonds correspond to latitudes $-12^\circ$ and $-15^\circ$ . . . . .	129
8.5.	Relation between effective temperature and absolute magnitude for the different metallicity ranges. Top panel: $[Fe/H] \leq -0.5$ . Middle panel: $-0.5 < [Fe/H] < 0.0$ . Bottom panel: $[Fe/H] \geq 0.0$ . Black points are simulations and the red line is the fit. . . . .	130
8.6.	Difference between the new computed distance and the distance given by the model as a function of the distance given by the model. The red line is an horizontal line that crosses the Y axis at zero. . . . .	131
8.7.	Difference between distance estimate and the distance given by the model as a function of the $\log(\text{distance})$ given by the model. Density map and grey contours refer to our method and black contours to Ivezić et al. (2008) method. . . . .	132
8.8.	Correlations between parameters of the thick disc and old thin disc for case 1. . . . .	135
8.9.	Correlations between parameters for the thick disc and old thin disc fitting for case 2 . . . . .	136
8.10.	Mode of metallicities at different longitudes for the revised model (case 1). Left panel are the bright plates and right panel are the faint plates. The observations are in black and the simulations in red. The standard deviation is represented by the small bars. Squares are latitudes higher or equal to $14^\circ$ ; Circles are latitudes between $8^\circ$ and $10.5^\circ$ ; Triangles are latitudes equal to $-8^\circ$ ; Diamonds are latitudes lower than $-8^\circ$ . . . . .	138
8.11.	Effective temperature distributions for the original model (top panel) and revised model (bottom plot) for plate 2538. Black lines are observations and red lines simulations. . . . .	140
8.12.	Top panel: total extinction applied to the simulations as a function of the distance to the Sun. Density plot refers to the original simulation and black contours to the revised version. Bottom panel: Total extinction distribution applied to the original model (black lines) and to the revised model (red lines). . . . .	142
8.13.	Comparison of the spectroscopic observations and simulations for the bright plate 2536. . . . .	145
8.14.	Comparison of the spectroscopic observations and simulations for the faint plate 2544. . . . .	145
9.1.	Reddening from SFD maps and color distributions from GES data (black lines) and simulations (red lines) for field 074500 423000 (top panel) and field 154224 441200 (bottom panel). . . . .	154
9.2.	Reddening from SFD maps and color distributions from GES data (black lines) and simulations (red lines) for field 155400 410000 (top panel) and field 160312 455359 (bottom panel). . . . .	155

---

9.3. Reddening from SFD maps and color distributions from GES data (black lines) and simulations (red lines) for field 170024 051200 (top panel) and field 173359 430000 (bottom panel). . . . .	156
9.4. Aitoff projection for the iDR2 fields selected for this analysis. . . . .	161
9.5. Spatial distribution for the F/G/K stars sample from GES as given by the simulations. . . . .	161
9.6. Absolute magnitude as a function of the effective temperature for dwarf stars in the three different metallicity ranges. From top to bottom the metallicity ranges are $[Fe/H] < -0.5$ , $-0.5 \leq [Fe/H] \leq 0.0$ and $[Fe/H] > 0.0$ respectively. . . . .	163
9.7. Absolute magnitude as a function of the effective temperature for giants stars in the three different metallicity ranges. From top to bottom the metallicity ranges are $[Fe/H] < -0.5$ , $-0.5 \leq [Fe/H] \leq 0.0$ and $[Fe/H] > 0.0$ respectively. . . . .	164
9.8. Absolute magnitude as a function of the log g for subgiants stars in the two different metallicity ranges. From top to bottom the metallicity ranges are $[Fe/H] \leq -0.5$ and $[Fe/H] > -0.5$ respectively. . . . .	165
9.9. Difference between distance estimate and the distance given by the model as a function of the log(distance) (natural logarithm) given by the model. Density map and grey contours refer to our method. . . . .	166
9.10. Distribution of the differences between distance estimate and the distance given by the model. . . . .	167
9.11. Metallicity distribution of the total GES sample from observations (grey lines) and as given by simulations (Green lines). The different components as given by the model are: black lines: Thin disc; red lines: Young thick disc; blue lines: Old thick disc; orange lines: Halo. . . . .	167
9.12. Comparison of the spectroscopic observations and simulations for a field at $l=229^\circ$ and $b=18^\circ$ . Left panels: Black lines are observations and simulations are in red. The Poisson noise is represented by the small vertical bars. Right panels: Black lines are thin disc; red lines are young thick disc; blue lines are old thick disc; orange lines are halo. . . . .	168
9.13. Comparison of the spectroscopic observations and simulations for a field at $l=97^\circ$ and $b=-61^\circ$ . Left panels: Black lines are observations and simulations are in red. The Poisson noise is represented by the small vertical bars. Right panels: Black lines are thin disc; red lines are young thick disc; blue lines are old thick disc; orange lines are halo. . . . .	169
9.14. Effective temperature as a function of the J-K color for a field at $l=97^\circ$ and $b=-61^\circ$ . Black points represent observations and red points simulations. . . . .	170
9.15. Distribution in (l,b) for all fields in GES sample. The color code represents the difference between the mean observation and mean simulation for each field. . . . .	174
9.16. Distribution in (l,b) for all fields in GES sample. The color code represents the difference between mode of the observed distribution in metallicity and the mode of the simulated distribution. . . . .	175
9.17. Correlations between parameters for the young thick disc and old thin disc fitting for the GES sample analysis. . . . .	177

---

---

10.1. Galactocentric radius distribution for the F/G/K stars sample from GES (red line) and MSTO from SEGUE (blue line) as given by the simulations. . . . .	180
10.2. Distance from the plane distribution for the F/G/K stars sample from GES (red line) and MSTO from SEGUE (blue line) as given by the simulations. . . . .	180
10.3. Metallicity as a function of the galactocentric radius for the case 1 SEGUE results (red lines) and GES SN metallicity and gradient results for the old thin disc. The continuous lines are the best values obtained and the dashed lines are the combination of the different results taking into account the maximum and minimum values for the errors. . . . .	181
10.4. Metallicity as a function of the galactocentric radius for the SEGUE results (red lines) and GES SN metallicity and gradient results for the thick disc. The continuous lines are the best values obtained and the dashed lines are the combination of the different results taking into account the maximum and minimum values for the errors. . . . .	182

---



---

## List of Tables

2.1.	Thin disc scale length and scale height values from the literature. . . . .	13
2.2.	Thick disc scale length/height values from literature . . . . .	15
3.1.	Table 1 from Robin et al. (2003). Defined initial mass function (IMF) and star formation rate (SFR) for all the model components . . . . .	28
3.2.	Table 4 from Robin et al. (2003). Age-velocity relations for the different components of the model. . . . .	30
3.3.	Table 1 from Robin et al. (2003). Metallicity distributions assumed in original simulations: Age, mean metallicity, radial metallicity gradient and dispersion for each population. . . . .	32
3.4.	SFR and IMF parameters in the standard and revised versions of the BGM. . .	33
3.5.	Table 2 of Czekaj et al. (2014). Evolutionary tracks for the standard and revised versions of the BGM . . . . .	34
3.6.	Table 5 from Czekaj et al. (2014). Ingredients of the standard and revised simulations . . . . .	35
5.1.	SEGUE survey plates used for the present analysis . . . . .	48
5.2.	Photometric flags used . . . . .	48
5.3.	Spectroscopic flags used . . . . .	49
6.2.	Coefficients from the equation 6.2 for the correction to the DS extinction model. The different lines in each field are the different regions in the field where the program has been implemented. The regions were selected, from 1 to 9, firstly from decreasing galactic latitude and then from increasing galactic longitude. .	65
6.1.	Mean , mode, and dispersion of the distribution of the total extinction in V band $A_V$ before (B) and after (A) correction for each field . . . . .	66
6.3.	Coefficients from the equation 6.2 for the correction to the Marshall extinction model. The different lines in each field are the different regions in the field where the program has been implemented. The regions were selected as in table 6.2 .	69
6.4.	Regression laws for S/N as a function of r magnitude. . . . .	72
6.5.	Regression laws for radial velocity errors as function of g magnitude for each plates. . . . .	73
7.1.	Proper motions measures of central tendency (Mean and Mode) and of dispersion (Standard deviation) for the l-component . . . . .	117

---



---

7.2.	Proper motions measures of central tendency (Mean and Mode) and of dispersion (Standard deviation) for the b-component . . . . .	119
7.3.	$\chi^2$ values (magnitude(m), color(c) and color-magnitude(c-m)) along with dispersion (for the standard model). Last three lines show the sum of $\chi^2$ values for all fields. . . . .	122
7.4.	Deegres of freedom (df) for magnitude(m), color(c) and color-magnitude(c-m).	123
8.1.	The number of stars of the thick disc/thin disc in the standard model in each plate for the bright (b) and faint (f) plates after applying the selection sample. The number of stars in each plate and the mode of the total extinction $A_V$ for each distribution are also indicated. . . . .	126
8.2.	Likelihood values for the spectroscopic parameters (MSTO stars) - original model	128
8.3.	Set of parameter range. The thick disc parameters have the subscript 'Thick', the old thin disc parameters have the subscript 'Old thin' and the thin disc parameters have the subscript 'Thin disc'. . . . .	133
8.4.	Thick disc and thin disc metallicity mean values, when fitting the thick disc and old thin disc. The SN subscript refers to solar neighbourhood value. . . . .	134
8.5.	Thick disc metallicity mean values, when fitting the thick disc alone for case 2 .	137
8.6.	Thick disc and thin disc metallicity mean set of parameters when fitting the thick disc along with all thin disc - for case 2 . . . . .	137
8.7.	Likelihood values for the spectroscopic parameters with the new sets of parameters	139
8.8.	Sum of the log likelihood values for all fields for the spectroscopic parameters (MSTO stars) with the new set of parameters. . . . .	140
8.9.	Sum of the likelihood values, for groups of fields of different longitudes, for the spectroscopic parameters (MSTO stars) with the new set of parameters. . . . .	141
8.10.	Thick disc and thin disc metallicity mean values, when fitting the thick disc (two slopes) and old thin disc. $R_{change}$ is the galactocentric radius at which the gradient of the thick disc changes. . . . .	141
8.11.	Sum of the likelihood values, for different ages of the thick disc, for the spectroscopic parameters (MSTO stars) with the fitted parameters. . . . .	143
8.12.	Thick disc and thin disc metallicity mean set of parameters - Fitting the old thin disc for the model B of the revised version. . . . .	144
8.13.	Thin disc metallicity distribution from the literature . . . . .	146
8.14.	Thick disc metallicity distribution from the literature . . . . .	147
9.1.	The value of the parameters used to compute the photometric errors in the simulation . . . . .	149
9.2.	Mean reddening for each of the observed disc fields in GES . . . . .	150
9.3.	Total extinction in each filter . . . . .	153
9.4.	Number of stars, in the model, for the thin, young thick, old thick disc for each field after applying the selection sample. The total number of stars in each field is given in the last column . . . . .	157

---

---

9.5. Set of parameters used to compute absolute magnitude from the relation with effective temperature for dwarfs ( $\log g > 4.5$ dex) and giants ( $\log g < 4.0$ dex) and with $\log g$ for subgiants ( $4.0 \text{ dex} \leq \log g \leq 4.5$ dex). The selection in metallicity and $\log g$ is given in the first two columns respectively. . . . .	162
9.6. GES metallicity distribution . . . . .	171
9.7. Set of parameter range. The thick disc parameters have the subscript 'Thick' and refer to the young thick disc. The subscript 'Old Thin' refers to the older ages of the thin disc as explained in section 8.1.5. . . . .	175
9.8. Young thick disc and old thin disc metallicity mean values, when fitting the young thick disc and old thin disc with the GES survey . . . . .	176

---



# Chapter 1

## Motivation

The structure, formation and evolution of the Milky Way is still today under debate. Since Herschel and Kapteyn realized the importance of star counts the scientific community tried to create new and better observational surveys, but only in the last decades with the emergence of wide-field mosaic of CCD cameras it has been possible to create large complete catalogs. This large catalogs allowed the analysis and study of bright and faint magnitudes in vast areas of sky. This new large surveys create huge databases which allow a better exploration, star by star, of the Milky Way, as never done before and possibly not accessible for external galaxies in the near future. In this sense the Milky Way is a huge experimental laboratory from where we can obtain important information.

From the side of models and in particular stellar population synthesis models great effort has been done to make possible to understand data and test different scenarios of formation and evolution of the Milky Way. The existence of different models in the literature (Besançon Galaxy Model (Robin et al. 2003), Trilegal (Girardi et al. 2005), GALFAST (Jurić et al. 2008), Galaxia (Sharma et al. 2011)) is a proof of this work. The combination of the information taken from the comparison of data with different models is a further step to understand the Milky Way and realize our "place" in the Universe.

The goal of this study is to use a stellar population synthesis model the Besançon Galaxy Model (Robin et al. 2003) to understand data and selection bias, study the structure of the Milky Way and test scenarios of formation and evolution of our Galaxy. In particular this work uses photometric data to study the shape and spectroscopic data to study the metallicity, surface gravity and effective temperature distributions in the different components of the Milky Way.

We organized the PhD manuscript in the following way: In the following chapter we begin to describe how important was astronomy in the ancient world and the efforts done, by different people, to have a better knowledge of our place in the universe. We then depict the most accepted scenario of the formation of the universe and we briefly describe the different components of the Milky Way. In chapter 3 we introduce the BGM and describe the different ingredients used for each component. An overview of few surveys from the past, present and

---

future is presented in chapter 4. Chapter 5 describes the photometric and spectroscopic sample used for this work. Chapter 6 explains how we proceed to obtain simulations, which we can compare with real observations, by masking, correcting extinction and applying errors. We then explain the selection applied to obtain Main Sequence Turnoff Stars and K giants from the SEGUE sample. Results for the photometric sample are given in chapter 7. We show qualitative and quantitative comparisons for magnitude, color, color-magnitude and proper motion distributions. We describe how we tried to constrain the IMF and the comparisons with the revised version of the Besançon Galaxy Model. Chapter 8 present the spectroscopic comparisons between simulations and observations, discuss the metallicity distribution and describe how we compute distances. This chapter also describes the ABC/MCMC method used to constrain the radial metallicity gradients and metallicity distributions from the thin and thick disc and the results. Chapter 9 describes the Gaia-ESO sample and F/G/K selection function, discuss the metallicity distributions and describes how we computed distances along with the results from the analysis. In the last chapter we discuss and present conclusions from our results and give some perspectives for future work.

---

# Chapter 2

## Introduction

### 2.1 Astronomy in the antiquity

Astronomy dates to the antiquity, possibly to the pre-history and in the early times it was related to religion, mythology, calendars and general beliefs. The area of the science that studies these relations is called Archaeoastronomy, which is defined as the "anthropology of astronomy". Objects in the sky were first identified as gods or spirits in early cultures. The early development of science can be studied by the analysis of these surviving indigenous traditions and from the structures that early civilizations left. There are few ancient astronomical sites around the world (e.g., France (Carnac), Germany, China, Scotland, Turkey, Malte, Egypt) that have been discovered. The ones in Malte, called Hagar Qim and Mnajdra, are among the oldest ones (3600 and 2500 BC) following a period of development (Cox 2008). The temple in Egypt's Sahara desert (6500 - 6000 BC) is known as Nabta and it consists of five megalithic alignments constructed by nomads<sup>1</sup>. The Gobeklipe site in Turkey is probably the oldest known structure (c. 9600–7300 BC)<sup>2</sup>. Why and by who it was constructed is still a mystery but it is probable that it was a consequence of the development of that society and the need to understand the hereafter<sup>3</sup>. One of the most popular structures (around 2800 BC), probably an astronomical observatory with religious functions, is Stonehenge in which one can follow in the aligned rocks, motions of the Sun and Moon (Lang 2006). Meanwhile, in Mesopotamia, the first lunar calendar has been developed and culminated in a continuous record of solar and lunar eclipses (Lang 2006). In China, as in other regions of the earth, the sky was also a source of wonder and mystery, which led to an interest in observations. The Chinese, as the Babylonian, Egyptians, Hindus, Mayas, Celts among others, were among the first to record the sighting of a comet, the eclipse of the Moon, eclipse

---

<sup>1</sup> URL: <http://www.colorado.edu/news/releases/1998/03/31/oldest-astronomical-megalith-alignment-discovered-southern-egypt-science>

<sup>2</sup>URL: <http://www.gobeklipepe.info/>

<sup>3</sup>David Lewis-Williams et David Pearce, « An Accidental revolution? Early Neolithic religion and economic change », *Minerva*, 17 4 (July/August, 2006), pp. 29-31

---

of the Sun and create a calendar with 12 months of 30 days each<sup>4 5</sup>. First predictions were made in ancient Greece when Thales of Miletus (624 - 547 BC) estimated correctly a solar eclipse (around 585 BC) (Lang 2006). In this epoch the Greek civilization contributed for countless developments in astronomy as the planets constitution, shape, movement and placement. In 530 BC Pythagoras (572-479 BC) proposes a spherical shape for the earth, planets and Sun later modeled by Eudoxus of Cnidus (408-355 BC) which constructed a geocentric model of the solar system and stated that movements of stars in the sky were due to the Earth's rotation<sup>6</sup>. Later, Aristarchos of Samos (320-250) proposed that the Sun instead of the Earth is in the center of the solar system. The Heliocentric model was later celebrated by Nicolaus Copernicus (1473-1543) in the text *De Revolutionibus* and Johannes Kepler (1617–1621) text *Astronomia nova*. In 350 BC Aristotle (384-322 BC) proved that the Earth as a spherical shape as already proposed by Pythagoras. Among one of the important contributions, due to the Greeks, is the first known star catalog of 850 stars (129 BC), made by the Greek astronomer Hipparchus (190-120 BC), later celebrated by Ptolemy (87-165). Meanwhile, astronomers began to understand that the universe is an hierarchical composition of different structures also called islands. In particular a milky patch of sky that rings the Earth, known in latin by *Via Lactea* which translates to road of milk, was of particular interest. This name was given due to the pale band of light formed by stars, gas and dust in the galactic plane as seen from Earth.

Eighteen-century astronomers were the first to realize that we make part of an enormous disk of stars, gas and dust which appears as a band around the sky due to the edge-on view from inside this disc. The Sun location in this structure was one of the first questions that arose. The first attempt to deduce the Sun location has been made by William Herschel (1738-1822). Around 1785 the first systematic survey of the sky was made by Herschel and his sister Caroline (1750-1848) in an attempt to deduce the structure of the Milky Way. The technique of star counts was being used for the first time and it was done for 683 regions of the sky. He reasoned that towards the galactic center the density of stars, compared with the average density, should be higher and towards the edge of the Galaxy should be lower. Figure 2.1 shows the map constructed by William and Caroline Herschel. They noticed that the lower density regions were outside the Milky Way which means that the shape is a disc. Because the density of stars was the same in all directions he concluded wrongly that the Sun is in the center of the Galaxy.

Later Jacobus Kapteyn (1851-1922) used observations *fairly well represented, at least up to galactic lat. 70°* (Kapteyn 1922) that he called 'Selected Areas' to produce a catalog which he used to construct a higher precision map of the Milky Way than Herschel. Kapteyn introduced, in the catalog, motion, density, and luminosity to the Herschel's star counts map. Figure 2.2 shows the Kapteyn's map of the Milky Way.

The map shows that the Milky Way has a flattened disc with a radius of 8.0 kpc. The Sun is represented by a large circle around 2.0 kpc. Both, Herschel and Kapteyn, agree that the Milky Way is a flat structure with the Sun placed near the center but nevertheless the enormous

---

<sup>4</sup>URL: <http://casswww.ucsd.edu/archive/public/tutorial/History.html>

<sup>5</sup>URL: <http://image.gsfc.nasa.gov/poetry/ask/a11846.html>

<sup>6</sup>URL:<http://casswww.ucsd.edu/archive/public/tutorial/History.html>

---

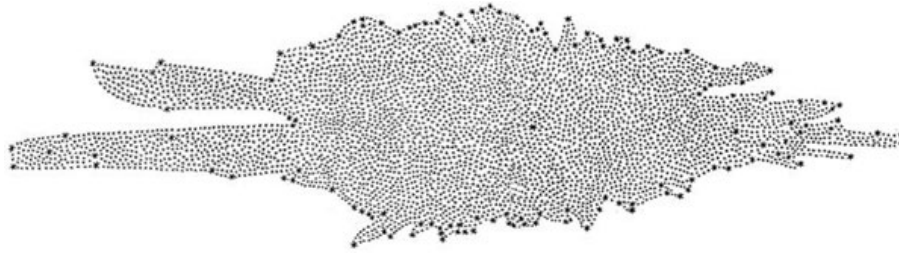


Figure 2.1: Herschel map of the Milky Way. The darker black point near the center of the map is the Sun position. Source: On the Construction of the Heavens. By William Herschel, Esq. F. R. S. Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society of London, Vol. 75. (1785), pp. 213-266.

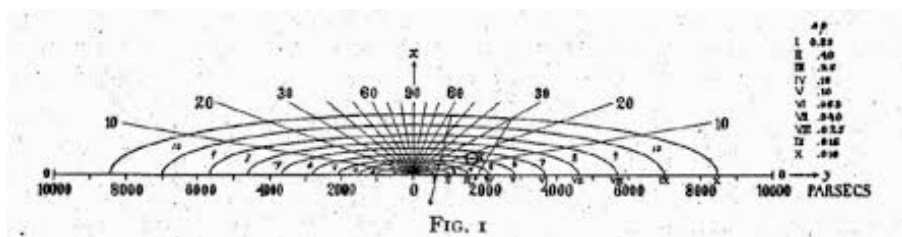


Figure 2.2: Kapteyn's map of the Galaxy. Source: Kapteyn (1922)

effort made by both the results were skewed because the authors were not aware of the strong extinction effect. In effect they were looking only to the nearest stars and had no idea about the actual size of the Galaxy. Later Harlow Shapley (1885-1972) analysing globular clusters RR Lyrae variables, computed distances and charted the distribution of globular clusters. He discovered that the Milky Way was at least two times larger than supposed by Kapteyn and that the globular clusters and stars in general orbited a common center far from the Sun in the direction of the Sagittarius constellation. In 1924, Edwin Hubble (1889-1953) at Mount Wilson made observations of Cepheids in the Andromeda Nebula and realized that it was too distant to be part of the Milky Way. It was demonstrated that the Milky Way is just one Galaxy among others in a large scale structure. This epoch defines the beginning of cosmology as a scientific area and of particular interest the formation of Galaxy's in a large scale structure as the Universe.

## 2.2 Galaxy formation in a $\Lambda$ cold dark matter scenario

The  $\Lambda$  cold dark matter scenario (hereafter  $\Lambda$ CDM) (e.g. Blumenthal et al. (1984), Springel et al. (2006), and references therein) is the most accepted scenario for the formation of the Universe. The haloes of CDM were formed from the density fluctuations after de Big Bang and its imprints remain visible in the Cosmic Microwave Background (hereafter CMB). Figure 2.3 show how the imprints from the early universe and specially the Baryon Acoustic Oscillations (BAO) are related with the large scale structure (Boughn & Crittenden 2004; Springel et al. 2006).



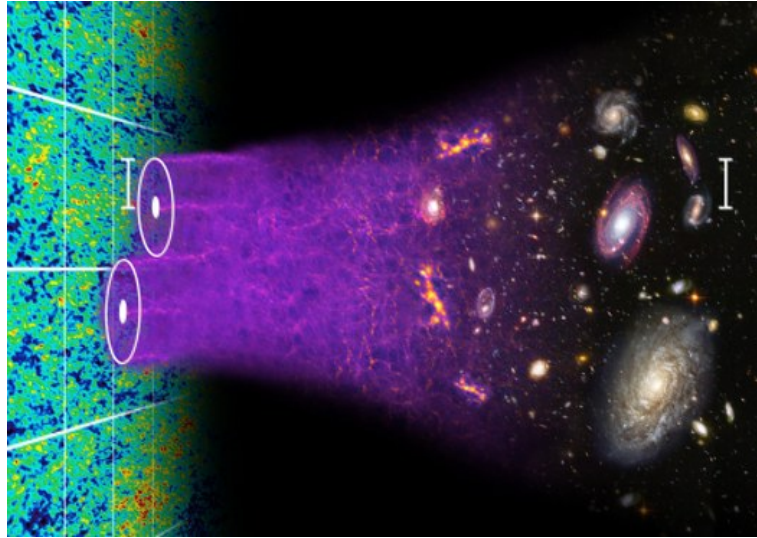


Figure 2.3: An illustration of the concept of baryon acoustic oscillations, which are imprinted in the early universe and can still be seen today in Galaxy surveys like the Baryon Oscillation Spectroscopic Survey (BOSS; Schlegel et al. 2009). Image Credit: Chris Blake and Sam Moorfield in <https://www.sdss3.org/surveys/boss.php>

The visible structures of the universe are made of baryonic mass accreted in these haloes. At around  $Z \sim 10$  star formation begins which drives gas out from the protogalactic dark matter mini-halos (e.g., Springel & Hernquist 2003; Schultz et al. 2014). These first stars will belong to the stellar halo and are among the oldest stars in galaxies. As the time goes the hot gas, around the Galaxy, that is cooling and falling into the plane, gives rise to a rotating disc which at the beginning probably increases the Star Formation Rate. This scenario is well in agreement with large scale observations as the CMB provided by WMAP (Wilkinson Microwave Anisotropy Probe) (Spergel et al. 2007) but there are numerous predictions, at the scale of the Milky, which are not observed. We will briefly review few of them.

- **Structure of the inner dark halo - A core or cusp shape?:** The cuspy-halo problem arose in the early 1990s, when the first N-body simulations became available (Dubinski & Carlberg 1991; Navarro et al. 1996, 1997). The simulations were better described by a steep power-law mass density distribution, like a cuspy distribution (Dubinski & Carlberg 1991), instead of the observed core like behavior (see; de Blok 2010, for a general review).
- **Number of predicted satellites (MSP):** From predictions, a Galaxy as the Milky Way, should have around 500 satellites with masses higher than  $10^8 M_{\odot}$  (Moore et al. 1999). These objects were not still found in large numbers either in HI or visible studies. Lately there are some very faint satellite galaxies and dwarf spheroidal satellite galaxies which are dominated by dark matter being discovered (Mateo 1998; The Fermi-LAT Collaboration et al. 2013) but they are unlikely to arrive to the hundred. The large predicted number of satellites should leave a large number of debris of accreted satellites in the stellar disk and halo. An example of the active ongoing accretion history are stellar streams (Newberg et al. 2002; Belokurov et al. 2007) which were minor satellites disrupted by tidal forces.

Several studies (Toth & Ostriker 1992; Kormendy & Fisher 2005; Kautsch et al. 2006; Stewart et al. 2008) showed that a large accretion activity, in particular the possibility of the interaction with a large merger, may be in disagreement with the presence of a strong disc as the Milky Way disc while Bournaud & Elmegreen (2009) and Dekel et al. (2009) predict the stabilization (we mean in terms of its existence) of the disc after  $z \sim 1$ .

- **Forming disks with small bulges in  $\Lambda$ CDM:** In the  $\Lambda$ CDM scenario the formation of bulges is critical because its very difficult to generate galaxies without or with a very small bulge (van den Bosch 2001). Some recent advances have been made in this field. Brook et al. (2011) showed that in order to generate bulgeless disc galaxies the Galaxy has to expell large amounts of low angular momentum gas during merger events at early epochs which modifies the shape of the angular momentum distribution of baryons, from the original one given by the parent dark matter haloes, allowing the creation of smaller bulges.
- **Angular momentum catastrophe (AMC):** The lack of angular momentum of baryons (around 10%), for SPH simulations of galaxies, in comparison with real galaxies and the predicted smaller disc sizes in comparison with real discs is called “angular momentum catastrophe” (Navarro & Benz 1991; Navarro & Steinmetz 1997; Sommer-Larsen et al. 1999; Navarro & Steinmetz 2000).
- **The Too Big to Fail problem:** The Too Big to Fail problem (hereafter TBTF) is a particular case of the MSP. In simulations, where just Dark Matter is taken in account the central densities in subhalos are larger than the ones observed (Del Popolo et al. 2014).

Several individual solutions have been proposed for the listed problems. More recently Del Popolo et al. (2014), using the Del Popolo (2009) model, showed that the jointly small scale problems (cusp/core problem, MSP, TBTF problem, and the AMC) of the CDM scenario may be reconciled with observations by taking a semi-analytical model which takes in account, for the first time, *the effect of ordered and random angular momentum, adiabatic contraction, dynamical friction, and the exchange of angular momentum between baryons and Dark Matter* Del Popolo et al. (2014).

## 2.3 Structure of the Milky Way

The Milky Way is a barred spiral Galaxy composed of a disc (thin and thick disc), a bulge and a halo (stellar and dark matter halo) as showed in figure 2.4 (Buser 2000). The formation of the protogalaxy is still under debate but the most accepted scenario is one where the formation is hierarchical i.e. the halo is formed by satellite Galaxy accretion (Blumenthal et al. 1984; Springel et al. 2006), and references therein) (see section 2.2). The Milky Way has of the order of  $1.0 - 2.0 \times 10^{11}$  stars and the dark matter halo can extend at least to 100 kpc possibly being in contact with other galaxies dark matter haloes like Andromeda. Last measurements of the virial mass indicate values around  $(1.26 \pm 0.24) \times 10^{12} M_{\odot}$  and total stellar mass around

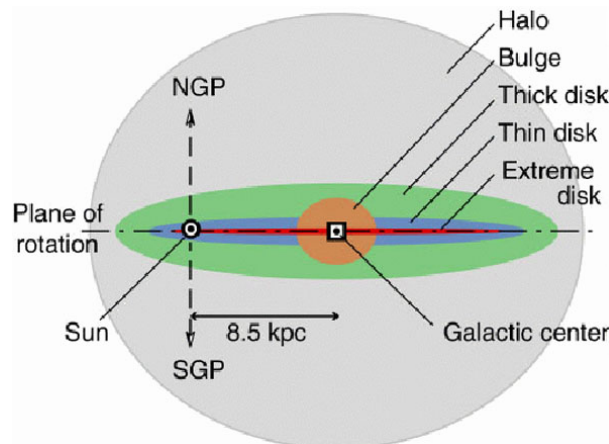


Figure 2.4: The Milky Way edge-on view showing the different components of the Milky Way with the Sun position indicated. Image Credit: R. Buser. Hurt

$(6.43 \pm 0.63) \times 10^{10} M_{\odot}$  (McMillan 2011). The disc is not axisymmetric and the spiral arms nature, long-lived or transient, is still under debate. In recent past the disc was thought to be composed by two main arms (Perseus and Scutum-Centaurus arms) (Grabelsky et al. 1988), but the quantity of recent works indicating that the Milky Way have instead 4 arms increased to around 80% of the published papers on this question (Vallée 2014). The possible existence of 4 arms was first given from the analysis of HII regions (Georgelin & Georgelin 1976) and more recently Vallée (2014) from a meta-analysis. The Sun is located in the range of 8.0 kpc (Reid 1993; Brunthaler et al. 2011) to 8.5 kpc (IAU value) from the galactic center and 15 pc above the galactic plane (Hammersley et al. 1995; Freudenreich 1998; Drimmel & Spergel 2001) as showed in figure 2.5. The artist also places the Galactic bar and a hypothetical second bar.

The edge of the disc is detected at a galactocentric distance of about 14 kpc in some analysis (Robin et al. 1992; Ruphy et al. 1996; Minniti et al. 2011) but it is a scenario still under debate (Carraro 2014).

The nature and formation of the bulge of the Milky Way are still under debate. The bulge is elongated as a bar (Stanek et al. 1994; Dwek et al. 1995) and is inclined by an angle ( $\sim 25^{\circ}$ ) with respect to the line of sight. The side nearest to us is at positive galactic longitudes and the boxy bulges, as in our Galaxy, are associated with bars formed from bar-buckling instability of the disc (Saha & Gerhard 2013).

Galaxies have also a large content of dark matter which was first proposed due to the Galaxy rotation problem. The discrepancy between theoretical predictions, assuming that the total mass is the sum of all the luminous components masses, and observations at large galactocentric radius lead to conclude the existence of a not luminous mass which was called dark matter (Rubin et al. 1978, 1980). Figure 2.6 shows the predicted and observed rotation curve for the M33 Galaxy. The discrepancy between the expected rotation from the visible matter and the observed one appears at larger radii.

The inclusion of a dark matter halo solves the question has seen in figure 2.7.

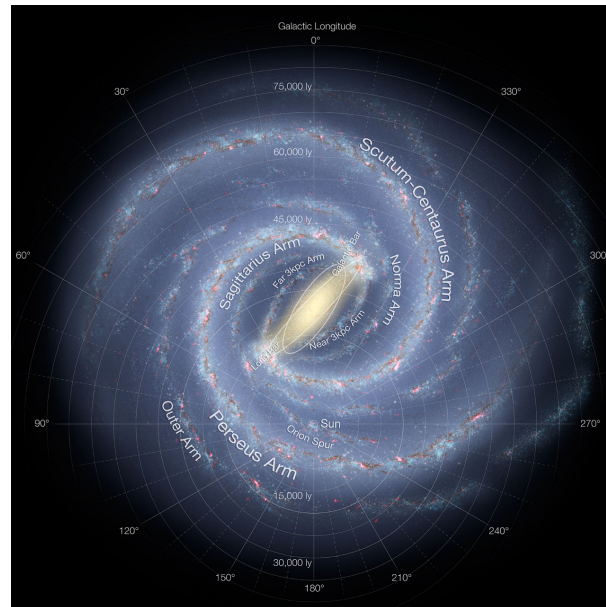


Figure 2.5: The Milky Way face-on view with the Sun position indicated. Artist's impression of the Milky Way. Image Credit: NASA/JPL-Caltech/ESO/R.

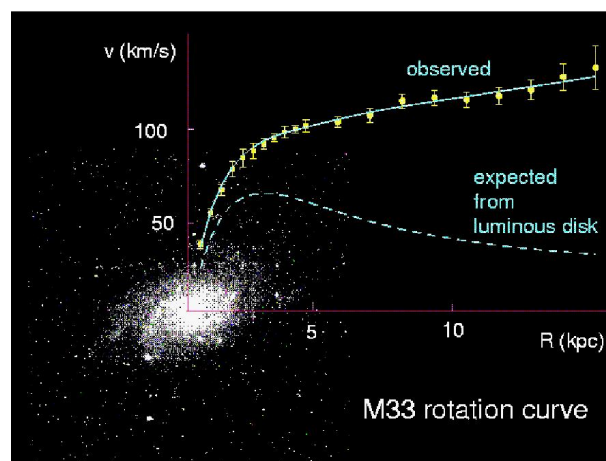


Figure 2.6: The observed and predicted rotation curve of the Galaxy M33. Image credit: University of Sheffield.

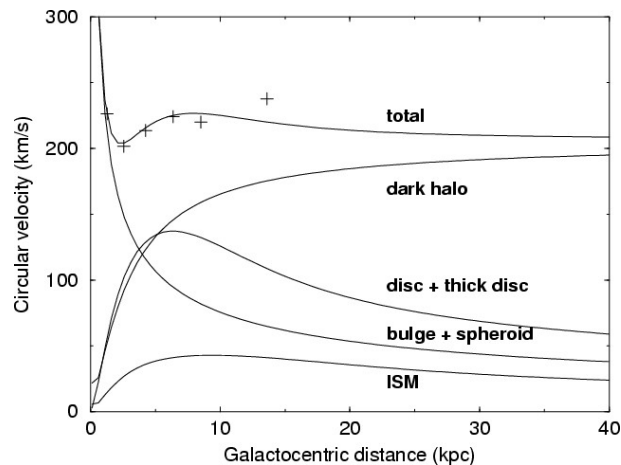


Figure 2.7: The predicted rotation curve from the self-consistent model of the Milky Way Robin et al. (2003). The contributions from each component of the Milky Way is also visible. The observations are from Caldwell & Ostriker (1981)

## 2.4 Galactic populations

Working at Mount Wilson Observatory outside of Los Angeles and taking advantage of the Los Angeles blackouts during the second world war Walter Baade (1893–1960) resolved for the first time Andromeda Galaxy and both companions Messier 32 and NGC 205 (Baade 1944). Baade found that the stars fall into two different groups which he called population I and population II and concluded that population I stars, which are found in the solar neighbourhood, are mainly younger stars and can be found in sub-structures as open clusters while population II are found mainly in globular clusters. It is in 1957 in the Vatican conference that the definition of the two population was set. Stars from population I are younger more metal rich stars and seem to be constrained into the disc. Population II is composed of old metal poor stars that are homogeneously distributed in a sphere. The dynamics from both populations is also different as population I have circular orbits with small eccentricity and confined to the disc while population II stars have highly eccentric and inclined orbits (Figure 2.8). Later a population III was proposed for even older stars probably connected with the reionization epoch. The term stellar populations has evolved with time and nowadays, instead of classify stellar classes as decreasing metallicity and increase age (Ivezić et al. 2012), the term stellar population means *a collection of stars which has a common spatial, kinematic, chemical, luminosity, and/or age distributions* (Ivezić et al. 2012).

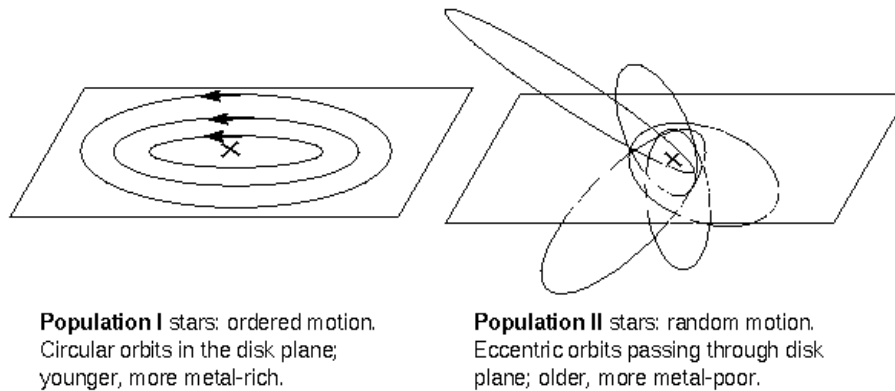


Figure 2.8: A scheme showing the orbits of population I and II. Image credit: Nick Strobel at [www.astronomynotes.com](http://www.astronomynotes.com).

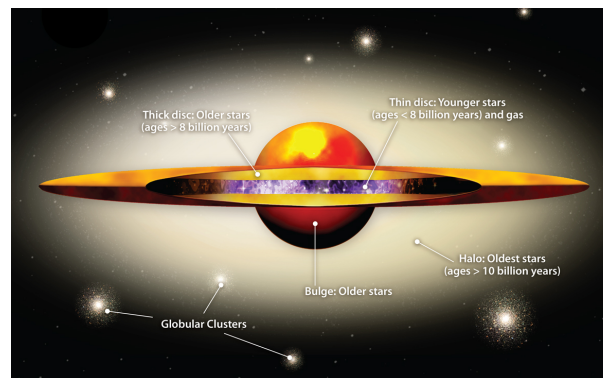


Figure 2.9: Schematic representation of a disc structure. Artist's impression of the Milky Way. Image Credit: Amanda Smith, IoA graphics officer

## 2.5 Disc of the Milky Way

The disc contains most of the dust, gas and stars of the Milky Way. The disc is flat, supported by rotation and shows a spiral structure delineated by gas and young stars. The stellar, gas and dust orbits lie in the plane of the Galaxy defined by the disc. Stars in the disc show a large range of ages and the mean peculiar motions of gas, dust and stars are small. The disc is the component of the Milky Way where the density of stars is higher. The stellar disc has a diameter of around 30 kpc and the Sun is around 8 kpc from the galactic center and 15 pc above the galactic plane. The total mass of the disc is around  $6.5 \times 10^{10} M_{\odot}$  (e.g., Flynn et al. 2006; Sofue et al. 2009; McMillan 2011). The local dark matter density is around  $0.40 \pm 0.04 \text{ GeV cm}^{-3}$  (McMillan 2011). The existence of two components in the disc is still under debate although it is generally accepted that there is a younger component formed essentially of population I stars called the thin disc and an older component, the thick disc, composed essentially of an intermediate population between population I and II stars. Figure 2.9 shows the decomposition of the disc into two different components as explained above. This decomposition is also seen in disc galaxies as showed in figure 2.10.

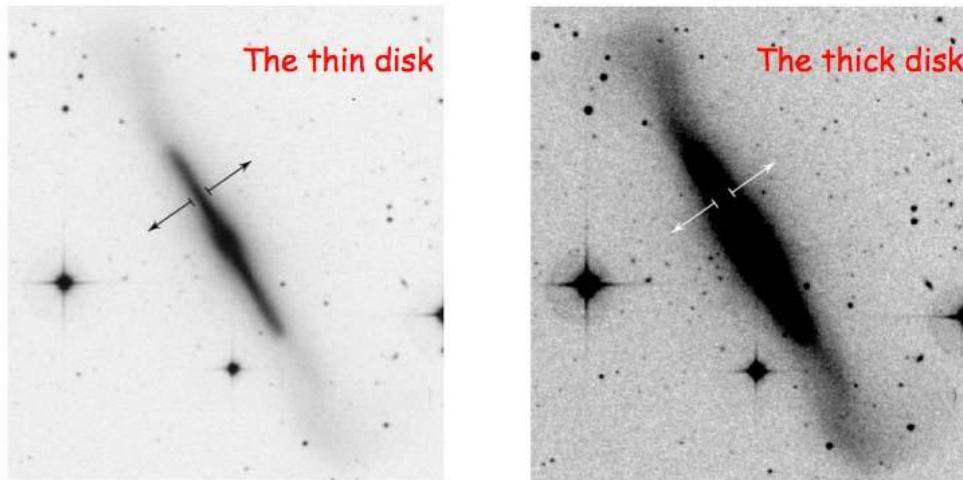


Figure 2.10: The NGC 4762 Galaxy, in different filters (B and V filters), showing a thin and a thick disc (Tsikoudi 1980). The image is taken from <http://arxiv.org/ps/astro-ph/0208106v1> figure 3 in Freeman & Bland-Hawthorn (2002)

### 2.5.1 Thin disc

The thin disc, contrary to the thick disc, has in its composition, apart of stars, large quantities of gas and dust. Stars in the thin disc have a wide range of ages from 0 Gyr to 10 Gyr either in open clusters or field stars (Bensby et al. 2003; Schuster et al. 2006; Haywood 2006a). The range of metallicities is  $-1 < [Fe/H] < 0.4$  dex and the distribution peaks at the solar metallicity or slightly subsolar position ( $[Fe/H] \sim -0.05$  dex) (Haywood 2001, 2002; Taylor & Croxall 2005; Luck & Heiter 2006; Fuhrmann 2008; Ivezić et al. 2008; Casagrande et al. 2011). In contrast other analysis obtained a lower metallicity peak in the range -0.2 to -0.1 (Wyse & Gilmore 1995; Rocha-Pinto & Maciel 1996; Allende Prieto et al. 2004; Nordström et al. 2004; Holmberg et al. 2007). This component has currently the highest SFR of the Galaxy, specially in the arms of the Galaxy which triggered star formation in molecular clouds and open clusters. Therefore gas and young stars are very useful tracers of the younger populations of the thin disc contrary to older stars that suffered perturbations and moved away from their original circular orbit. These young tracers are confined to 100 parsec above and below the plane and in particular OB spectral type stars can be found normally in open clusters or associations due to the larger mass needed to form these spectral types and smaller life-time (Carraro 2014). It is in the outer disc that we can find the older clusters ( $\sim 5$  Gyr) of the thin disc due to the larger stability and less interactions possible within that regions (Carraro et al. 2013, and references therein).

The thin disc scale length is still matter of debate with published values between 2 and 4 kpc. The scale height is around 250 pc (Kent et al. 1991; López-Corredoira et al. 2002; Jurić et al. 2008; McMillan 2011) which makes it a flattened structure. Table 2.1 resumes some values from the literature.

Table 2.1:  
Thin disc scale length and scale height values from the literature.

Author	scale length kpc	scale height pc	Comments
Kent et al. (1991)	3.0±0.5	~247 at $R_{\odot}$ kpc ~165 at $R_{GC} = 5$	The Infrared Telescope (IRT) (Koch et al. 1982; Melnick et al. 1987)
(Ojha et al. 1994)	2-2.5		star-count samples at low-galactic latitude
Chen et al. (1999)	2.250±0.05		4 star-count samples at low-galactic latitude
Ojha et al. (1999)		240±20	14 star-count samples at low-galactic latitude
Siegel et al. (2002)	2-2.5	~280	70000 stars in seven Kapteyn selected areas
López-Corredoira et al. (2002)	3.3±0.5	285 <sup>+8</sup> <sub>-12</sub>	low galactic latitudes from 2 MASS survey
Bilir et al. (2006)	1.9	~221	intermediate galactic latitudes from the SDSS survey
Jurić et al. (2008)	2.6 ± 0.52	300±60	High galactic latitudes ( $ b  > 25^{\circ}$ ) from the SDSS survey
McMillan (2011)	3.0±0.22		MASER observations
Bensby et al. (2011)	3.8		20 giants of the Magellan telescopes
Chang et al. (2011)	3.7 ± 1.0	360 ± 10	High galactic latitudes ( $ b  > 30^{\circ}$ ) from 2MASS survey
Robin et al. (2012)	2.2±0.165		2MASS data
Bovy et al. (2012b)	2.0 - 4.5	200 - 1000	SEGUE G-dwarf sample
Cheng et al. (2012a)	3.4 <sup>+2.8</sup> <sub>-0.9</sub>		MSTO stars low latitudes from the SDSS survey
Bovy & Rix (2013)	2.15±0.14		SEGUE G-dwarf sample
Polido et al. (2013)	2.120 ± 0.2	205 ± 40	All sky from the 2MASS survey
Lopez-Corredoira & Molgo (2014)	2.0 <sup>+0.3</sup> <sub>-0.4</sub>	240 <sup>+0.12</sup> <sub>-0.01</sub>	$ l  > 50^{\circ}  b  < 23^{\circ}$ from the SEGUE SDSS survey

Stars in the thin disc have high rotational velocities, low vertical velocities and quasi-circular orbits. The circular velocity of the group of stars, moving with the Sun, at the solar position is defined to be the Local Standard of Rest velocity ( $V_{LSR}$ ). This is computed by taking the mean of the group of stars and is about  $220 \text{ km s}^{-1}$  (e.g. Kerr & Lynden-Bell 1986; Dehnen & Binney 1998) with small dispersion velocities of around  $25 \text{ km s}^{-1}$  (Gomez et al. 1997). The asymmetric drift is the tendency, for a group of stars, with a mean rotation velocity around the galactic center, to lag behind stars from the local standard of rest. The asymmetric drift equations have been derived by Mihalas & Binney (1981); Binney & Tremaine (2008a). See Rix & Bovy (2013) for a general review about the thin disc.

## 2.5.2 Thick disc

The question about the existence of an intermediate population (between pop II (the halo) and pop I (thin disc)) arose in the 40's with Baade (1944) and further Baade (1958), using disc globular clusters. Later, Gilmore & Reid (1983) and Robin & Crézé (1986) showed evidences for the existence of this intermediate population in contrast with Bahcall & Soneira (1984) who argued that observations could be explained without the need of a thick disc population. Since this epoch a number of evidences in favor of the thick disc have been found. Several works noticed that the galactic disc is the sum of two components with different chemical compositions, structure and kinematics (e.g., Gilmore et al. (1995), Chiba & Beers (2000), Bensby et al. (2003, 2004a,b,c), Ivezić et al. (2008)).



## Shape

The shape of the thick disc depends on the density decrease as a function of the distance from the galactic center and perpendicular distance to the galactic plane. The shape of the thick disc may be modelled by an exponential or a  $\text{sech}^2$  law. The value of the scale length is still under debate with the existence of a large range of values in the literature but the latest results point to a scale length comparable with the old thin disc one, about 2 kpc, while the younger thin disc has a larger scale length as visible in table 2.2. The scale height is less than half the scale length and the dispersion in the cited values is also large with values ranging between 500 pc to 1500 pc (Table 2.2). It has been claimed in the past that the thick disc is a separate population from the thin disc with a different formation scenario. In a more recent paper Bovy et al. (2012a) claimed that there is a continuity between thin and thick discs. They found a continuous distribution of scale heights for the disc which indicates a smooth transition between the two populations and disfavours a bi-modal composition of the disc. The source of the disagreement between works can be due to the difficult separation between thin and thick disc on one side and thick disc and halo on the other side.

## Age

In the literature the formation of the thick disc has values in the range of 8 Gyr (Ibukiyama & Arimoto 2002) to 13 Gyr (Pettinger et al. 2001). The duration of the thick disc formation may have been short (Mashonkina & Gehren 2001) (not longer than 1 Gyr) but several recent results (Bovy et al. 2012b; Haywood et al. 2013, among others) claim a longer thick disc formation period (4-5 Gyr). Therefore the thick disc has an age that is intermediate between of the older halo and the younger thin disc.

## Kinematics

Stars of the thick disc have more eccentric inclined orbits and lower rotational velocities as compared to the thin disc. Ojha et al. (1996, 1999) derived velocities for the thick disc component from a UBV photo-astrometric survey in three different directions (center, anticenter and rotation) at intermediate latitudes. The derived velocity dispersions were higher compared with the ones from the thin disc. The high rotational lag of about  $53 \text{ km s}^{-1}$ , found in this work as in more recent analysis (Soubiran et al. 2003) is a proof of the kinematical difference between thick and thin disc components. In the past the thick disc was tentatively distinguished by its kinematics (e.g. Bensby et al. (2003), Soubiran et al. (2003)), but it appears most recently, thanks to high resolution spectroscopy, that the thick disc can be better distinguished from the thin disc by its  $\alpha$  abundance (e.g. Bensby et al. (2011), Adibekyan et al. (2013)).

---

Table 2.2:  
Thick disc scale length/height values from literature

Author	$H_R$ (kpc)	$H_z$ (pc)
Gilmore & Reid (1983)		1350
Reid (1993)		1500
Soubiran (1994)		700
Robin et al. (1996)	2.8	760
Spagna et al. (1996)		1137
Buser et al. (1999)	3.0	910
Chiba & Beers (2000)	4.5	
Ojha (2001)	3.7	860
Vallenari et al. (2006)	2.5	900
Du et al. (2006)		600-1000
Girard et al. (2006)		1500
Robin et al. (2007)		1200
Jurić et al. (2008)	3.6	900
Veltz et al. (2008)		1048
Carollo et al. (2010)	2.2	510
de Jong et al. (2010)	4.1	750
Kordopatis et al. (2011)	3.4	694
Bovy et al. (2012b)	1.96	655
Cheng et al. (2012a)	1.8	
Lopez-Corredoira & Molgo (2014)	2.5	710
Robin et al. (2014) (12 Gyr)	2.3	535
Robin et al. (2014) (Old thick disc - 12Gyr)	3.0	800
Robin et al. (2014) (Young thick disc - 10Gyr)	2.0	350

## Metallicity and Chemical abundances

The metallicity of the thick disc has been studied in different works and there is indication of a mean metallicity value around -0.5 dex and the non existence of a radial metallicity gradient. The metallicity dispersion is also large, around 0.30 dex and there are stars that may have a very low metallicities around -1.5 dex. Table 8.14 shows mean metallicity and radial gradients in the thick disc from the literature. The chemical abundances are also different from the ones of the thin disc.  $\alpha$  elements are elements with  $Z \leq 22$  (C, N, O, Ne, Mg, Si, S, Ar, Ca, Ti) which are synthesized by triple-alpha process (produce carbon and some oxygen) or alpha capture. For a determined metallicity stars that belong to the thick disc will have a larger alpha over iron value compared to thin disc stars (e.g. Bensby et al. 2011; Adibekyan et al. 2013) which suggest a older and fast formation of the thick disc (not much longer than 1 Gyr from the [Eu/Mg] values (Mashonkina & Gehren 2001)). The thick disc, compared with the thin disc, follows a distinct sequence in most  $\alpha$  elements (Oxygen, magnesium, calcium among others). The different chemical abundances for these two components are linked with different star formation histories because the star chemical composition is equal to the interstellar matter chemical composition from which stars are born. In this sense the chemical composition in old low-mass stars is a good tracer of the early interstellar medium chemical composition. Moreover, the chemical composition of the interstellar medium changes with time due to the release to the interstellar medium of different chemical elements produced in stars with different masses. The iron is mainly and in large quantities produced in supernovae type Ia, which in general is the explosion in a binary system composed by a white dwarf and a giant (can be other type of star) (For a review: Nomoto et al. 1994). The white dwarf may accrete material from the companion until the Chandrasekhar limit is reached giving rise to an explosion which releases iron in the interstellar medium. This type of supernovae expels iron in the interstellar medium at longer time scales (Nomoto et al. 1997) than the supernovae type II which inject  $\alpha$  elements at shorter time scales because this elements are produced in very massive stars with short life-times (Arnett 1996) changing the chemical composition of the interstellar medium with time. There are also the asymptotic giant branch stars (AGB) which produce and inject elements in another time scale (Simmerer et al. 2004). Therefore, in the early times, the interstellar medium is enriched with  $\alpha$  elements and less with iron which results on a large  $\alpha$  over iron ratio and a low metallicity for the born stars. As the age of the Milky Way increases the quantity of expelled iron increases and the ratio between  $\alpha$  elements and iron becomes smaller and the metallicity increases. Therefore, older stars have lower metallicities and higher  $[\alpha/Fe]$  ratios and younger stars with higher metallicities and lower  $[\alpha/Fe]$  ratios. Therefore, the  $[\alpha/Fe]$  vs  $[Fe/H]$  sequence gives informations about the SFH, and give constraints on to differentiation of the thin and thick discs which means that the sample selection by elemental abundance e.g.  $[\alpha/Fe]$  and  $[Fe/H]$  select stars independently from there kinematical or positional properties. This new criteria can help us to understand better the formation and evolution processes of the Milky Way.

## Formation Scenarios

If the thick disc is identified to be a distinct population from the thin disc, it implies different formation scenarios for both components. There are several scenarios to explain the formation and evolution of the thick disc, here we refer to the five most accepted. Two of these scenarios require the presence of extragalactic mergers. (1) The first of these scenarios is direct accretion of stars from satellites (e.g., Statler 1988; Toth & Ostriker 1992; Quinn et al. 1993; Velazquez & White 1999; Abadi et al. 2003). (2) The second is the vertical heating, of a pre-existing thin disc, by minor mergers (e.g., Kazantzidis et al. 2008; Read et al. 2008; Villalobos & Helmi 2008; Purcell et al. 2009; Bird et al. 2012). Cosmological simulations show that the mergers necessary to support these scenarios are very common. Observational evidences for the possibility of mergers in the Milky Way are given by the detection of streams in the halo (e.g., Newberg et al. 2002; Belokurov et al. 2007). (3) One scenario that does not require the presence of extragalactic mergers is in situ formation of the thick disc from homogeneous gas. High gas accretion rates can create an early turbulent disc phase. As a result a well mixed primordial gas disc can rapidly form stars at an efficient rate at early times forming a chemically homogeneous thick disc (e.g., Brook et al. 2004; Bournaud et al. 2009). (4) A scenario that has been extensively proposed in the literature is the thin disc thickening by bar and/or spiral instabilities. Spitzer & Schwarzschild (1951, 1953); Eggen et al. (1962); Dennis (1966); Wielen (1977) observed the age-velocity dispersion correlation in solar neighbourhood stars originated by the scattering of stars from their initial circular orbits into more eccentric and inclined orbits. To explain the vertical heating of the thin disc some mechanisms were proposed like molecular clouds (e.g., Mihalas & Binney 1981; Jenkins & Binney 1990; Jenkins 1992), along with a transient spiral structure (e.g., Barbanis & Woltjer 1967; Sellwood & Carlberg 1984) or along with halo black holes (e.g., Hänninen & Flynn 2002, 2004; Carlberg & Sellwood 1985), black holes (Lacey & Ostriker 1985), dark clusters (Carr & Lacey 1987), infall of satellite galaxies (Velazquez & White 1999), through 'popping' star clusters (Kroupa 2002), interaction of multiple spiral density waves (Minchev & Quillen 2006) and spirals along with a bar (Minchev & Famaey 2010). (5) Sellwood & Binney (2002) suggest that radial migration can redistribute stars in the disc. In this case the thick disc formation is the result of a secular process related to the spiral arms and the bar (Schönrich & Binney 2009a,b) (hereafter SB09a,b). Some observational works invoked radial migration in order to explain stellar properties at the solar neighbourhood (e.g., Haywood 2008; Loebman et al. 2011).

Chemical and kinematic properties are true witnesses of galactic evolution. Chemodynamical models (e.g., Schönrich & Binney 2009a,b; Minchev et al. 2011, 2012, 2013) are efficient tools to understand radial migration. However various approaches give contradictory results. For example in Minchev series of articles, in contradiction with SB09a,b, it is demonstrated that radial migration is inefficient to promote disc thickening. It contributes only for the formation of a flared disc. According to the latter authors there are two oversimplifications made in SB09a,b which affected their results and conclusions: The not inclusion of a central bar (1) and the conservation of the vertical energy for migrating objects (2). The former oversimplification results in a lack of momentum changes at short scale-lengths. Nevertheless, in their model, the radial migration efficiency extends to short galactocentric distances ( $R < 2$  kpc) which mimics the effect of a bar. The latter affects one of their main conclusions, the thick disc can emerge in



Figure 2.11: Warp of the spiral Galaxy ESO 510-13. Image Credit: NASA's Hubble Space Telescope

an isolated disc.

### Warp of the Milky Way

The warp of the disc is a distortion in the external disc of the Milky Way, present in many external galaxies (Bosma 1991), as showed in figure 2.11. The warp has been studied by diverse authors and evidences point for a warp, as a structure, existent in all Milky Way components, dust, gas and stars.

The gas (atomic hydrogen) warp was first reported in works from Henderson et al. (1982), Burton & de Lintell Hekkert (1986) and Diplas & Savage (1991) and more recently discussed in Nakanishi & Sofue (2003) and Levine et al. (2006) using radio observations. The method consisted in observing the 21 cm line of atomic hydrogen in order to project in the galactic plane the surface density of HI gas and compute the HI distribution as a function of the distance above the plane. Results showed the lack of symmetry in the surface density which is a consequence of a warping disc. Nakanishi & Sofue (2003) found that the HI warp is asymmetric, because it goes higher above the galactic plane in the northern hemisphere. Levine et al. (2006) described the gas warp using a superposition of Fourier modes. For galactocentric distances smaller than 15 kpc the first mode has more power. The mode equals to zero and two rule for galactocentric distances superiors to 15 kpc which results in an asymmetric warp.

The dust warp was first detected by Freudenreich et al. (1994) using the Diffuse Background Experiment (DIRBE) of the cosmic Background Explorer (COBE) (Hauser et al. (1991), Boggess et al. (1992), Silverberg et al. (1993)). Later, Drimmel & Spergel (2001) used the same experiment to model the dust distribution and concluded the presence of a warp in dust and stellar components which starts at the solar circle. In Drimmel & Spergel (2001) the author assumes that the warp is well described by a quadratic function. Marshall et al. (2006) used The Two Micron All Sky Survey (2MASS: Skrutskie et al. (2006)) along with the Besançon Galaxy Model

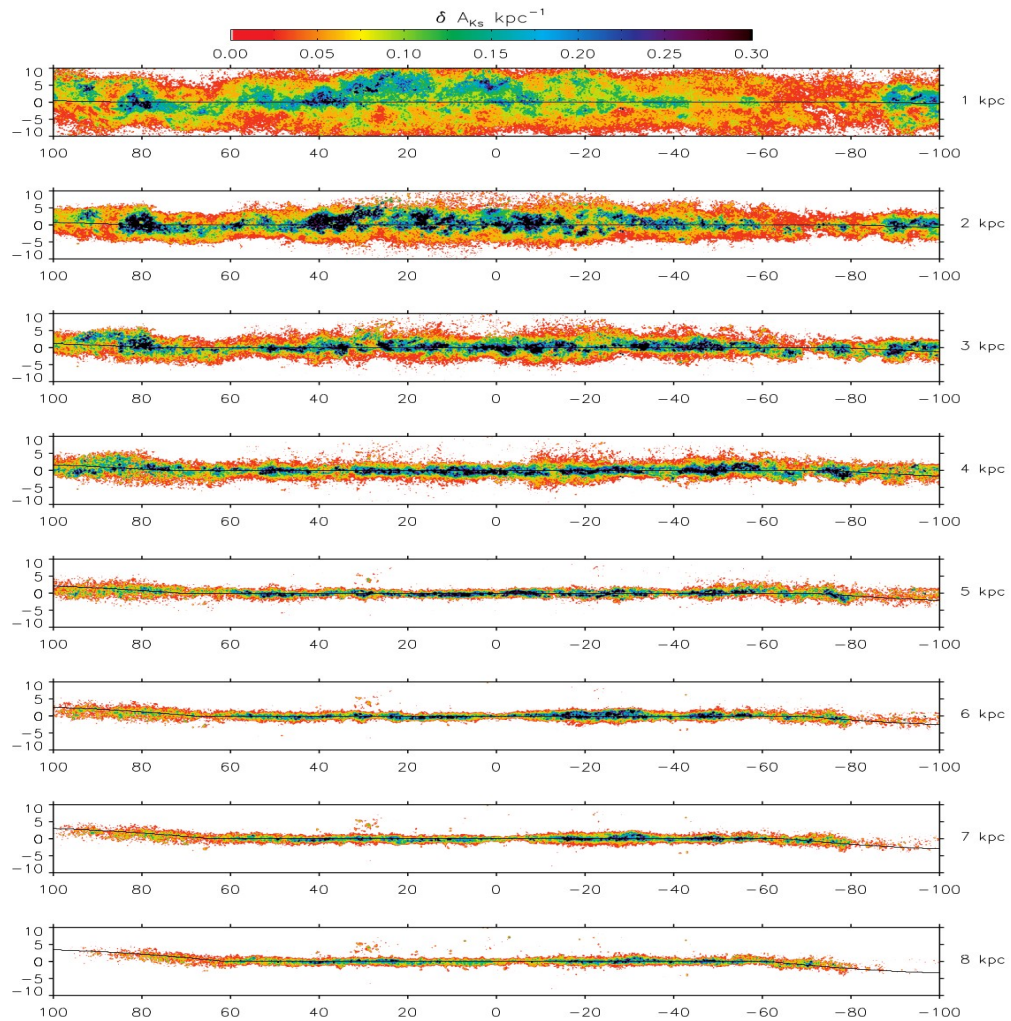


Figure 2.12: The dust warp, in galactic coordinates, as traced by extinction from figure 8 of Marshall et al. (2006). Each panel describes the extinction at 1 kpc intervals from the nearest (top panel) to the further (bottom panel) distance. The black line indicates the position of the mid plane as given by the stellar warp formula in Robin et al. (2003).

to develop a 3D extinction map to know what was the density distribution of absorbing material across the plane of the Milky Way (Fig 1 Marshall et al. (2006)). They concluded that, as the CO and HI observations of the ISM (Nakanishi & Sofue 2003), the dust distribution is found *asymmetrically warped*. In figure 2.12 Marshall et al. (2006) showed the dust warp as traced by extinction.

The warp in stars was first investigated in Djorgovski & Sosin (1989) using the Infrared Astronomical Satellite (IRAS: Neugebauer et al. (1984)). Gyuk et al. (1999) used the Wide Field Camera from Hubble Space telescope (HST: Santiago et al. (1996), Mendez & Guzman (1998), Gould et al. (1998)) and found that in order to make models consistent with observations the warp has to be very asymmetric. Later Alard (2000) used 2MASS and concluded that the stellar disc warp has a similar behavior compared to the gas warp. From the analysis of star

counts in the DENIS survey (Epchtein et al. 1999), Derriere & Robin (2001) noticed also the existence of a warp and a flare in the stellar disc. López-Corredoira et al. (2002) used the 2MASS survey and noticed the existence, in the old stellar population, of a warp which has an amplitude similar to the gas warp. Reylé et al. (2009) using the 2MASS survey along with the Besançon Galaxy model (Robin et al. 2003) found that at positive longitudes the galactic warp is well reproduced by a S-shaped model but at negative longitudes no simple model can reproduce well the observations. This was interpreted as a feature of the asymmetric warp. The amplitude of the asymmetry in the warp seems to be dependent of the component one is analysing. The dust warp seems to be less pronounced (e.g. Drimmel & Spergel (2001), Marshall et al. (2006)) than the stellar warp (e.g. Drimmel & Spergel (2001), López-Corredoira et al. (2002)) which is less pronounced than the gas warp (e.g. Nakanishi & Sofue (2003), Levine et al. (2006)).

The origin of the warp is still unknown but there are different scenarios that try to give an explanation. (1) Tidal forces originated from nearby galaxies, like the Magellanic clouds or the Sagittarius dwarf (Weinberg & Blitz 2006), (2) infalling intergalactic gas (López-Corredoira et al. 2002) or (3) a misalignment of the angular momenta between the dark halo and the disc (e.g. Bailin (2003) Bailin & Steinmetz (2003)). Gaia will measure the stellar kinematics in the region of the warp, allowing to constrain the dynamics of the stellar disc warp (Perryman et al. 2014).

### Modeling the stellar warp

Different authors tried to model the warp using different shapes and parameters. In the S-shaped warp tilted ring model from Porcel et al. (1997), the distance of the true mid-plane to the plane defined by latitude  $b=0^\circ$  is computed using eq. 2.1, where  $h_{warp}$  is a linear function of the galactocentric radius. This is the model implemented in the Besançon Galaxy Model and it will be better explained in section 3.2.2. The stellar warp described in Drimmel & Spergel (2001) assumes a quadratic function of the galactocentric distance. They defined  $Z_{warp}$  as the vertical displacement of the warp.

$$Z_{warp} = h_{warp}(r) \sin(\phi - \phi_{warp}) \quad (2.1)$$

where  $\phi_{warp}$  is the phase of the warp and the amplitude  $h_{warp}(r)$  is described by

$$h_{warp}(r) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } r \leq r_{warp} \\ a_{warp} \times (r - r_{warp})^2 & \text{if } r > r_{warp} \end{cases} \quad (2.2)$$

$r_{warp}$  is the galactocentric distance at which the warp starts and  $a_{warp}$  is an amplitude parameter equal to  $27.4 \text{ pc kpc}^{-2}$  (Table 2: Drimmel & Spergel 2001) for the stellar warp. At a galactocentric distance equal to 12 kpc, the maximum height above the plane is equal to 685 pc. López-Corredoira et al. (2002) assumed a different shape of the warp, fitted of 2MASS data. At 10 kpc Lopez-Corredoira's warp goes up to 214 pc while DS warp goes to 110 pc.

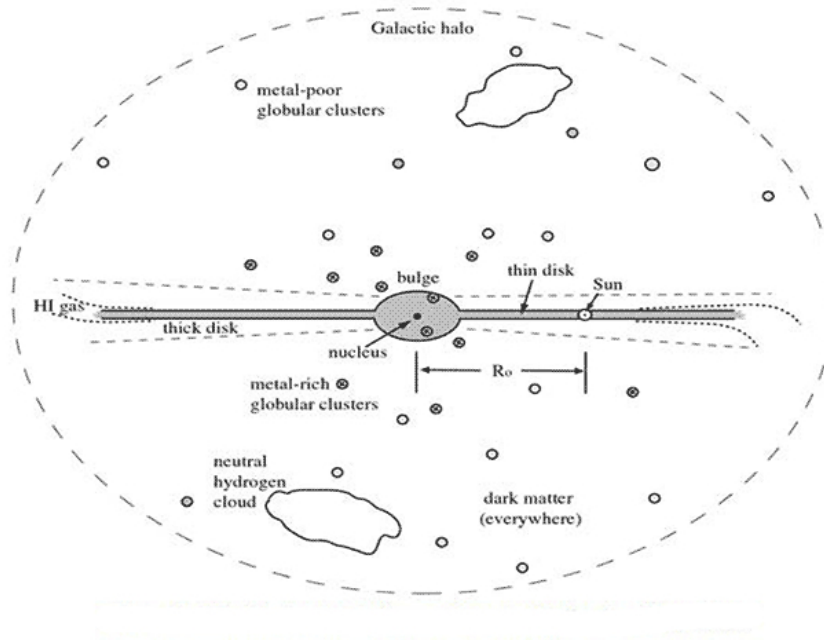


Figure 2.13: Schematic representation of the galactic structure. The flare is represented by the discontinuous line representing the thick disc which increases scale height as a function of the galactocentric radius. Image Credit: Gaia-ESO Survey

## 2.6 Flare

The flare is the increase of the scale height of the disc as a function of the galactocentric radius (Gyuk et al. 1999) as showed in figure 2.13. In this schematic representation we can see also the representation of the warp distortion at large distances from the galactic center.

The possibility of the existence of a flare in the gas was first reported in Henderson et al. (1982) and followed by Burton & te Lintel Hekkert (1986) where the authors could not explain easily the origin of microlensing events toward the Large Magellanic Cloud (LMC). Later, the flare was studied by Gyuk et al. (1999) using star counts from the HST and Derriere & Robin (2001) with DENIS survey. The later stated that the minimum radius for the flare depends on galactic longitude but in average is equal to 9.5 kpc. López-Corredoira et al. (2002) results show a variation of the scale height due to the flare given by:

$$h_Z(R) = h_Z(R_\odot) e^{\frac{R-R_\odot}{(12-0.6R)}} \quad (2.3)$$

for  $R < 15$  kpc where  $R$  is given in kpc,  $R_\odot = 7.9$  kpc and  $h_Z(R_\odot) = 285 \pm 12$  pc.



Reyl e et al. (2009) fitted the 2MASS survey with simulations from the Besan on Galaxy Model, which model the flare as Gyuk et al. (1999) (See section 3.2.2).

$$K_{flare}(R) = 1 + \gamma_{flare}(R - R_{flare}) \quad (2.4)$$

where  $\gamma_{flare}$  is the amplitude of the flare,  $K_{flare}$  is the factor to increase the scale heights and  $R_{flare}$  is the galactocentric distance where the flare starts. The amplitude is assumed equal to  $5.4 \times 10^{-5} \text{ pc}^{-1}$  and the starting radius is in the Sun position. In section 3.2.2 we will describe, how it is implemented in the Besan on Galaxy Model.

## 2.7 Stellar halo

The halo is thought to be the oldest (age  $\geq 13$  Gyr), and most extended component of the galaxies. The age of the halo has been obtained in different analysis. Sneden et al. (1996) obtained an age of  $15.2 \pm 3.7$  Gyr, while Cayrel et al. (2001) obtained  $14 \pm 3$  Gyr and Frebel et al. (2007) derived 13.2 Gyr. Nevertheless, more recently, ages lower than 13 Gyr were obtained in De Angeli et al. (2005) and Hansen et al. (2013) for globular clusters and Kalirai (2012) for white dwarfs. A compilation of 41 globular clusters studied by Schiavon et al. (2005) is made in Roediger et al. (2014) who found a strong peak in the age distribution at 12.5-13.0 Gyr.

Carollo et al. (2007, 2010, 2014) claimed that the stellar haloes can have two different components. One inner component which dominates at shorter distances from the galactic center, in the range from 10 kpc to 15 kpc, flatter ( $q \sim 0.6$ ), with slightly higher orbital eccentricities, a smaller prograde rotation (between 0 and 50  $\text{km s}^{-1}$ ) and a metallicity distribution that peaks at -1.6 dex. One outer halo which begins to dominate at larger distances from the galactic center between 15 and 20 kpc, which is more spherical ( $q \sim 0.9 - 1.0$ ), covering a wide range of orbital eccentricities, from circular to very eccentric, and a retrograde rotation (between -40 and -70  $\text{km s}^{-1}$ ) (Carollo et al. 2010; de Jong et al. 2010; Beers et al. 2012). The metallicity distribution peaks at -2.2 dex with a strong lower metallicity tail. This scenario is contested by Sch onrich et al. (2011) which stated that if there is an outer halo component it has to be less strong than predicted by the above cited works. More recently Robin et al. (2014) showed that if there is an inner-outer halo transition it cannot be at smaller distances than 30 kpc. Assuming a density which has a power-law shape a value of  $q = 0.7$  is obtained and if an Hernquist shape is assumed the value of the axis ratio becomes equal to 0.77. The stellar halo has a total mass around  $1 \times 10^9 M_{\odot}$  (Carney et al. 1990) inside a dark matter halo of around  $1 \times 10^{12} M_{\odot}$  (Finkbeiner 2012).

The stellar halo extension in the Milky Way is still unknown but old bright stars like RR Lyrae and blue horizontal branch stars (BHB) have been used as tracers of the halo component. They reach distances of 115 kpc from the galactic center (Clewley et al. 2005) and beyond. The dark halo is more extended and its half-mass radius is of 150 kpc (Klypin et al. 2002; Battaglia et al. 2005, 2006). Complete reviews of the halo component can be found in Freeman & Bland-Hawthorn (2002) and Helmi (2008).

## 2.8 Bulge

The bulge region contains a sum of different components among which :

- The inner disc
- The bar
- The inner part of the thick disc
- Possibly a small classical bulge (under discussion)

The bulge stars have ages around  $10 \pm 2.5$  Gyr (Ortolani et al. 1995; Zoccali et al. 2003). The structure is like a boxy bulge with a possible orientation of 13-45 degrees with the nearest side located at positive longitudes (Rattenbury et al. 2007). Different analysis obtained lower values as 20 degrees (e.g. Freudenreich 1998; Bissantz & Gerhard 2002, among others) used in Pichardo et al. (2004) models or 13 degrees using the Besançon Galaxy Model (Robin et al. 2012). More recent analysis towards the bulge region claim that the Milky Way bulge is X-shaped (McWilliam & Zoccali 2010; Zoccali 2010; Nataf et al. 2010; Saito et al. 2011).

The metallicity distribution is asymmetric in the range of  $-1.5$  dex to  $0.5$  dex and with a mean of  $-0.26$  dex but results in these regions may be largely contaminated by other components like the inner disc, the bar or the thick disc (Zoccali et al. 2008). So, the MDF of the bulge was found to be a more complex structure which can have from two (e.g. Babusiaux et al. 2010; Hill et al. 2011; Rojas-Arriagada et al. 2014) up to five components (Ness et al. 2013). The bulge is rotating with a peak at  $75 \text{ km s}^{-1}$  (e.g. Minniti et al. 1992; Ibata & Gilmore 1995; Minniti 1996; Rich et al. 2007, among others) and a large velocity dispersion (Terndrup et al. 1995; Ibata & Gilmore 1995; Minniti 1996) that decreases with Galactocentric distance. Figure 2.14, taken from Minniti & Zoccali (2008) shows the velocity dispersion and mean velocity as a function of the galactic longitude.

The total mass has been calculated in some works which obtained  $\sim 1.0 \times 10^{10} M_{\odot}$  (Matsumoto et al. 1982; Kent 1992), or larger values around  $1.6 \times 10^{10} M_{\odot}$  (Allen & Santillan 1991; Dwek et al. 1995; Bissantz & Gerhard 2002; Gerhard 2006; Sumi et al. 2006; Sofue et al. 2009), around  $2.0 \times 10^{10} M_{\odot}$  (Zhao & Mao 1996; Wang et al. 2012). Weiner & Sellwood (1999) obtained a bar mass of  $9.8 \times 10^9 M_{\odot}$  and a bulge mass of  $5.4 \times 10^9 M_{\odot}$  which gives a total mass of  $1.52 \times 10^{10} M_{\odot}$ ,  $5.18 \times 10^9 M_{\odot}$  (Binney & Tremaine 2008b) and  $6.1 \times 10^9 M_{\odot}$  for the sum of two components (Robin et al. 2012).

The bulge formation is still under debate and is possible that *Milky Way mass galaxies having no classical bulges are common in the nearby Universe*. (Laurikainen et al. 2014). Simmons et al. (2014) shows that bars are present in 25%-50% of the locally analysed disc galaxies. There are three scenarios that are invoked. (1) in situ formation due to gas collapse from a protogalactic gas cloud (Eggen et al. 1962; Samland & Gerhard 2003). (2) The  $\Lambda$ CDM, a hierarchical scenario, where the accretion of substructures like satellites or Galaxy mergers drives the growth

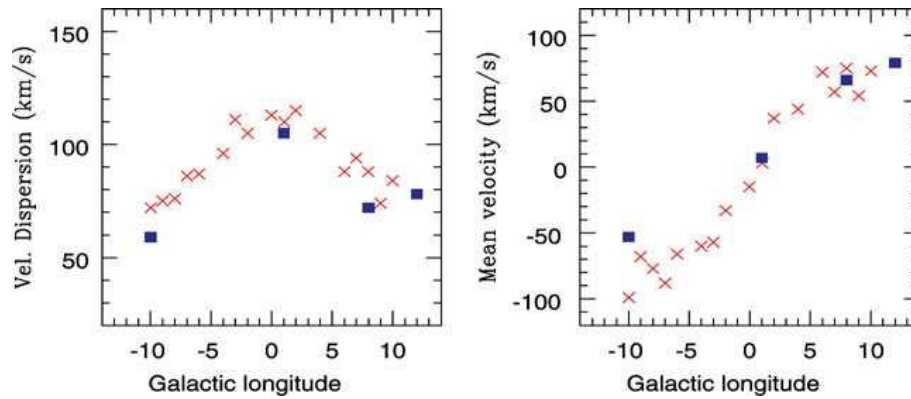


Figure 2.14: Figure from Minniti & Zoccali (2008). The velocity dispersion and mean velocity as a function of the galactic longitude in the bulge component. Blue squares are K giants measured by Minniti (1996) and red crosses are M-giants measured by Rich et al. (2007) and which were corrected for the solar motion around the Galaxy.

of a bulge (Aguerri et al. 2001; Scannapieco & Tissera 2003; Immeli et al. 2004) (See section 2.2). (3) Secular formation due to the bar-buckling instability and not mergers which drive the growth of a boxy bulge (Saha & Gerhard 2013). In early times the bar can be formed in a secular process related to disc instability which redistributes energy and angular momentum between the disc, dark matter halo and classical bulge in a more efficient way (Combes & Sanders 1981; Pfenniger & Norman 1990; Raha et al. 1991; Debattista & Sellwood 2000; Athanassoula 2003; Martinez-Valpuesta & Shlosman 2004; Kormendy & Kennicutt 2004; Debattista et al. 2006; Saha et al. 2012). The boxy bulges as the one observed in the Milky Way are believed to be formed by bar-buckling instability as the bar goes stronger. The different scenarios can co-exist to explain the formation and evolution of the bulge.

## Chapter 3

# The Besançon Galaxy Model

### 3.1 Introduction

For this analysis we use the Besançon Galaxy Model (hereafter BGM) to produce simulations. The model aims at producing simulations, compare with observations and test different scenarios of Galaxy formation and evolution. The BGM has been constructed and developed in a series of published releases since Robin & Crézé (1986) until the last improvement made in Robin et al. (2014). The model includes the bar and spiral arms are not modelled, in the current version (the spiral structure is under study). The model gathers dynamical constrains, models of stellar atmospheres and theories of stellar formation and evolution where the link between the Galactic evolution and dynamics is given by the stellar ages. The main idea is to start with a series of assumptions, our a priori knowledge, simulate the Galaxy, compare it with a large number of observational data in a wide range of Galactic longitudes and latitudes and constrain several parameters involved in the BGM construction. We can use this tool to compare with photometric, astrometric and spectroscopic data to provide better constrains about the structure and dynamics of our Galaxy and to understand better the formation and evolution of the Milky Way. We use a population synthesis approach which takes into account biases by simulating observational errors and by comparing the observations with simulations in the space of observables.

The version used for the BGM assumes that stars belong to 4 different populations: the thin disc, the thick disc, the stellar halo and the bulge/bar. Furthermore, the thin disc is divided in seven different sub-populations of different ages. Each of these populations is characterized by an initial mass function (IMF), a star formation rate (SFR), density laws, kinematics, age-metallicity relation and chemical distributions. Separately, the white dwarfs population is taken into account and it is included in the dynamical considerations. The density laws (in particular the scale heights) are constrained (see section 3.2.4) through the Boltzmann equation, by using the potential of the Galaxy and assuming an empirical age-velocity dispersion relation (Bienaymé et al. 1987). In the following subsections we describe the BGM in more details.

---

## 3.2 The overall structure

The thin disc is assumed to be divided in seven different subpopulations according to their ages has shown in table 3.1. The warp and flare structures included are discussed in Reylé et al. (2009) and will be presented in section 3.2.2. To compute the number of stars, in the Milky Way, for a given direction the model uses the fundamental equation of stellar statistics

$$A(m) = \sum_{i=M_{vmin}}^{M_{vmax}} \int_0^r \phi(M)\rho(r)r^2\omega dr \quad (3.1)$$

where  $A(m)$  is the number of stars with apparent magnitude  $m$  inside a solid angle  $\omega$ ,  $M$  is the absolute magnitude and  $r$  is the heliocentric distance. Equation 3.1 is the product between the luminosity function ( $\phi(M)$ ) and the density law ( $\rho(r)$ ). For each component (halo, bulge, thin and thick disc), are assumed different luminosity functions and density laws. In Galactic coordinates one obtain

$$A(m) = \sum_{i=1}^4 \sum_{a=M_{vmin}}^{M_{vmax}} \sum_{b=T_{effmin}}^{T_{effmax}} \sum_{c=age_{min}}^{age_{max}} \int_0^r \int_{b_{min}}^{b_{max}} \int_{l_{min}}^{l_{max}} \phi_i(M_v, T_{eff}, age)\rho_i(R, \theta, Z, age)r^2 \cos(b) dl db dr \quad (3.2)$$

$\phi_i(M_v, T_{eff}, age)$  refers now to the ‘‘Hess diagram’’ which is the density of stars (stars  $\text{pc}^{-3}$ ) in a point of the 3 dimensional space given by the absolute magnitude, effective temperature and age. It defines the stellar content in the solar neighbourhood. It has been computed from the stellar evolution model described in Haywood et al. (1997a,b). One can extend this information outside the solar neighbourhood. The subindex  $i$  refers to the Galactic population,  $M_v$  is the absolute magnitude in band V,  $T_{eff}$  is the effective temperature,  $R$  is the galactocentric distance and  $Z$  is the height from the plane. The overall structure of the algorithm is presented in the organigram shown in figure 3.1 (Robin & Cr ez e 1986).

### 3.2.1 The luminosity function and Hess diagram

The luminosity function gives the number of stars by magnitude interval. The mass distribution, for one specific epoch is given by the Initial Mass Function (IMF) defines the way the stars are distributed in the H-R diagram represented in a ‘‘Hess diagram’’ constructed based on the IMF, SFR and evolutionary tracks sets fixed by fitting to the observational data (Haywood et al. 1997b). The IMF and the SFR for each component are given in table 3.1. The SFR was defined to be constant and a two slope IMF was defined for the thin disc as  $\propto m^\alpha$  where  $\alpha = -(1 + x) = -1.6$  for stars with masses lower than  $1 M_\odot$  and  $\alpha = -3$  otherwise.

The thick disc was assumed to have a single epoch of star formation (The thick disc formation period is short in comparison with the age of the Galaxy), and an age of 12 Gyr. The IMF for the thick disc was assumed to be  $\propto m^{-1.5}$ .

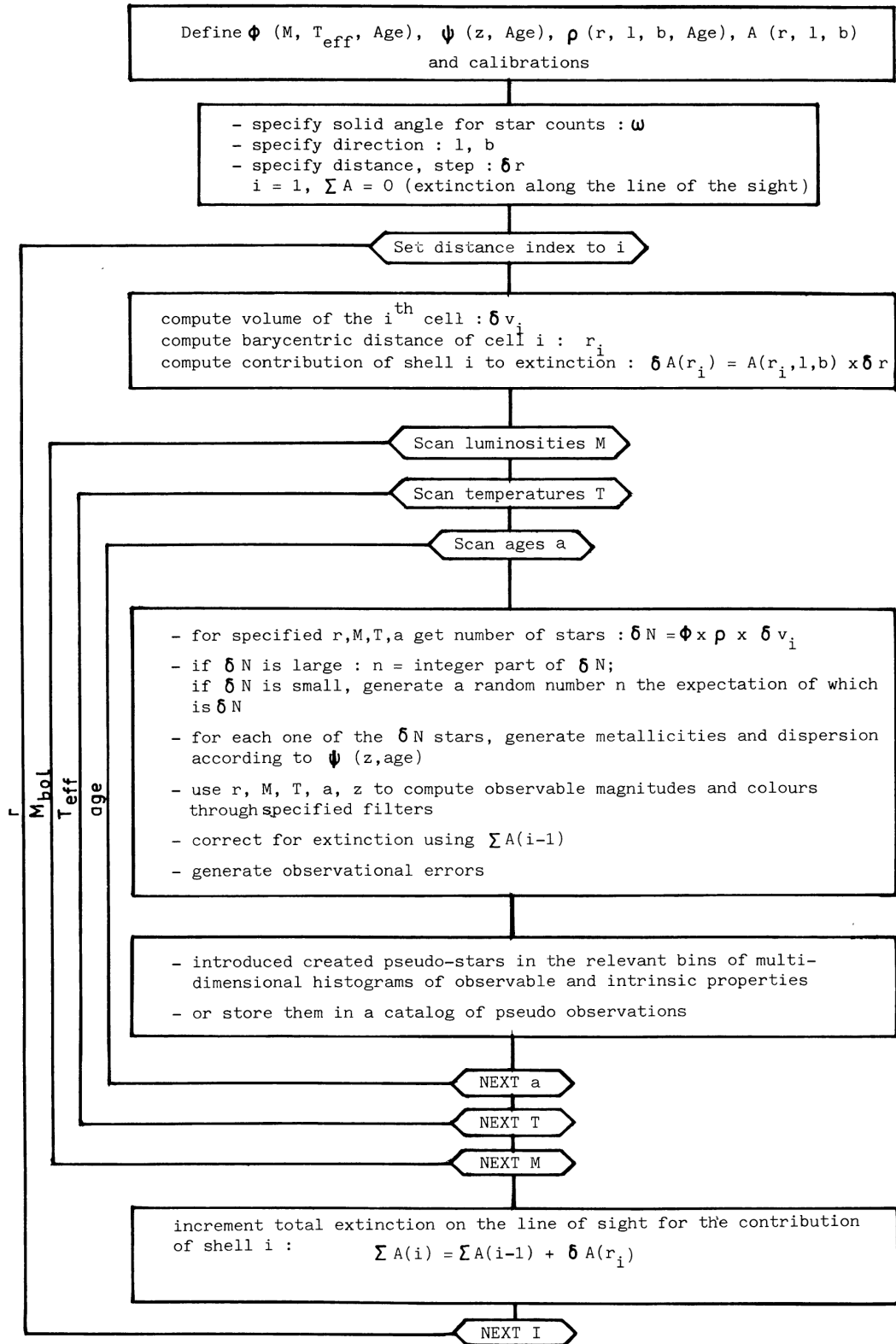


Figure 3.1: Figure 1 of Robin &amp; Cr ez e (1986). Flowchart of the algorithm.

Table 3.1:

Table 1 from Robin et al. (2003). Defined initial mass function (IMF) and star formation rate (SFR) for all the model components

Pop	Age (Gyr)	IMF ( $\alpha$ )	SFR
Thin disc	0 - 0.15	$\frac{dn}{dm} \propto m^\alpha$ $\alpha = -1.6$ for $m < 1M_\odot$ $\alpha = -3.0$ for $m > 1M_\odot$	constant
	0.15 - 1.0		
	1.0 - 2.0		
	2.0 - 3.0		
	3.0 - 5.0		
	5.0 - 7.0		
	7.0 - 10.0		
Thick disc	12.0	$\frac{dn}{dm} \propto m^{-1.5}$	one burst
Halo	14.0	$\frac{dn}{dm} \propto m^{-1.5}$	one burst

The halo also has one single epoch of star formation, an age of 14 Gyr and the IMF of the halo is assumed to be  $\propto m^{-1.5}$ .

### 3.2.2 Density laws

The density distribution is constrained by assuming density laws, suitable for each Galactic component, and by combining this information with the local density. The total local mass density is the sum of the different mass components in the Milky Way (thin and thick disc and stellar halo), the interstellar medium (ISM) and the dark matter halo. The local mass density in stars value is around  $0.045 M_\odot \text{ pc}^{-3}$  (Wielen 1974a) but Jahrei & Wielen (1997) found  $0.039 M_\odot \text{ pc}^{-3}$ . For main sequence stars only Reid et al. (2002) cite a value of  $0.033 M_\odot \text{ pc}^{-3}$ . The ISM contributes with  $0.021 M_\odot \text{ pc}^{-3}$  (Dame 1993). Adding the local mass density from stars with the interstellar medium and the local contribution of the dark matter Robin et al. (2003) obtained values in agreement with the total mass density determined dynamically (Crz et al. 1998).

The thin disc density law is sliced into two density laws, with different scale length, based on the age of the population. The density laws are simple Einasto profiles with parameters defined as a scale length  $h_{r+}$ , a hole scale length  $h_{r-}$  and  $\epsilon$  which is the eccentricity of the ellipsoid.

The model assumes, for the thick disc, a shape for the density law which decomposes vertically into two different mathematical laws according to the distance from the plane. A parabola at short distances, followed by an exponential at larger distances (Equation 3.3).

$$\rho(R, Z) = \begin{cases} \rho_0 \times \exp\left(-\frac{R-R_\odot}{h_R}\right) \times \left(1 - \frac{\frac{1}{h_Z}}{\xi \times (2 + \frac{\xi}{h_Z})} \times Z^2\right) & \text{if } |Z| \leq \xi \\ \rho_0 \times \exp\left(-\frac{R-R_\odot}{h_R}\right) \times \exp\left(-\frac{|Z-Z_0|}{h_Z}\right) & \text{if } |Z| > \xi \end{cases} \quad (3.3)$$

where  $\rho_0$  is the local density at the solar position (The distance of the Sun to the Galactic center is assumed to be 8.0 kpc (Reid 1993; Brunthaler et al. 2011) and the assumed distance to the Galactic plane is  $Z = 15$  pc) (Hammersley et al. 1995; Freudenreich 1998; Drimmel & Spergel 2001),  $h_R$  the scale length,  $h_Z$  the scale height and  $\xi$  is the distance from the plane at which the density law changes. The scale length of the thick disc is 2355 pc (Robin et al. 2014) and the scale height is 533 pc.

### Warp in the BGM

The warp has been included in the BGM (Robin et al. 2003) as a S-shape warp tilted ring model (Porcel et al. 1997). The authors computed the height  $Z_{warp}$  above the plane  $b = 0^\circ$  as a function of the cylindrical coordinates.

$$Z_{warp}(R) = \gamma_{warp}(R - R_{warp}) \times \sin(\phi - \phi_{warp}) \text{ if } R \geq R_{warp} \quad (3.4)$$

where  $Z_{warp}$  is the distance in  $Z$  of the mid-plane to the plane defined by  $b=0^\circ$ ,  $\gamma_{warp}$  is the slope of the warp,  $R_{warp}$  the galactocentric distance where the warp starts,  $\phi$  is the Galactic azimuth and  $\phi_{warp}$  is the angle where the warp is maximum. Robin et al. (2003) followed Burton (1988) which assumed, as other works, that the Sun lies on the line of the nodes of the warp ( $\phi_{warp} = 0^\circ$ ). The authors used  $R_{warp} = 8.4$  kpc (Derriere & Robin 2001) and an amplitude of  $\gamma_{warp} = 0.18$  in agreement with Gyuk et al. (1999). More recently Reyl   et al. (2009) revised the parameters of the warp testing different shapes and parameters for the warp. The authors assumed  $R_{warp} = 8.4$  kpc has a best value (Derriere & Robin 2001), and tried two different sets of values for the slope of the warp and for the scale length. The two sets are  $(\gamma_{warp}, h_R) = (0.18, 2530)$  and  $(\gamma_{warp}, h_R) = (0.09, 2200)$ .  $\phi_{warp}$  is assumed to be equal to zero. It was also tried to fit a two Fourier-mode warp model from Levine et al. (2006) with their best set of parameters. The best fit has been achieved with a linear increase of the warp with the following set of parameters:  $(\gamma_{warp}, h_R) = (0.09, 2200)$ , but the authors noticed that while the fit was satisfactory at positive longitudes, it was not the case for negative longitudes, where the warp appears not symmetrical with regard to the other side of the Milky Way.

### Flare in the BGM

In the BGM the flare is modeled as in Gyuk et al. (1999) by increasing the scale height by a  $k_{flare}$  factor beyond the galactocentric radius  $R_{flare}$  where the flare starts.

$$K_{flare}(R) = 1 + \gamma_{flare}(R - R_{flare}) \text{ if } R \geq R_{flare} \quad (3.5)$$



Table 3.2:

Table 4 from Robin et al. (2003). Age-velocity relations for the different components of the model.

Pop	Age (Gyr)	$\sigma_U$ (Km $s^{-1}$ )	$\sigma_V$ (Km $s^{-1}$ )	$\sigma_W$ (Km $s^{-1}$ )	$V_{ad}$ (Km $s^{-1}$ )	$d\sigma_U/dR$ (Km $s^{-1}$ Kpc $^{-1}$ )
Thin disc	0 - 0.15	16.7	10.8	6	3.5	
	0.15 - 1.0	19.8	12.8	8	3.1	
	1.0 - 2.0	27.2	17.6	10	5.8	
	2.0 - 3.0	19.5	10.8	13.2	7.3	-0.2
	3.0 - 5.0	36.7	23.7	15.8	10.8	
	5.0 - 7.0	43.1	27.8	17.4	14.8	
	7.0 - 10.0	43.1	27.8	17.5	14.8	
Thick disc	12.0	67	51	42	53	0

where  $\gamma_{flare}$  is the slope of the flare and  $R_{flare}$  is the galactocentric distance where the flare starts. In the BGM (version Robin et al. (2003)) the starting position of the flare is assumed to be 9.5 kpc following (Derriere & Robin 2001) and the factor that modifies the scale heights is assumed to be  $5.4 \times 10^{-4}$  kpc $^{-1}$  from the Hubble Space Telescope (HST) observations (Gyuk et al. 1999). A shorter  $R_{flare}$  of 8.4 kpc, proposed in Derriere & Robin (2001), has been tested in Reyl e et al. (2009) but without improvements in the comparison between observations and simulations.

### 3.2.3 Model kinematics

The age-velocity dispersion relation used for the thin disc has been deduced from Hipparcos data (Gomez et al. 1997). In table 3.2 we show the age-velocity relations for the thin and thick disc. In the model N-body simulations are used to define the kinematics of the stars in the bar at different positions. The model uses alternatively Fux (1997, 1999) or Debattista (2006) simulations R1 and B3 (according to Gardner et al 2013). In one of the possible applications Gardner et al. (2014) used the BGM to study the X-shape of the Milky Way's bulge against BRAVA observations (Bulge Radial Velocity Assay, Kunder et al. 2012) obtaining a best fit for a bar angle of 15°. The Sun velocities are  $U_{\odot} = 11.0$  Km  $s^{-1}$ ,  $V_{\odot} = 12.0$  Km  $s^{-1}$ ,  $W_{\odot} = 7.0$  Km  $s^{-1}$  and  $V_{LSR} = 226.5$  Km  $s^{-1}$ , with U positive in the direction of the Galactic center, V positive in the direction of Galactic rotation, and W positive in the direction of the North Galactic Pole.

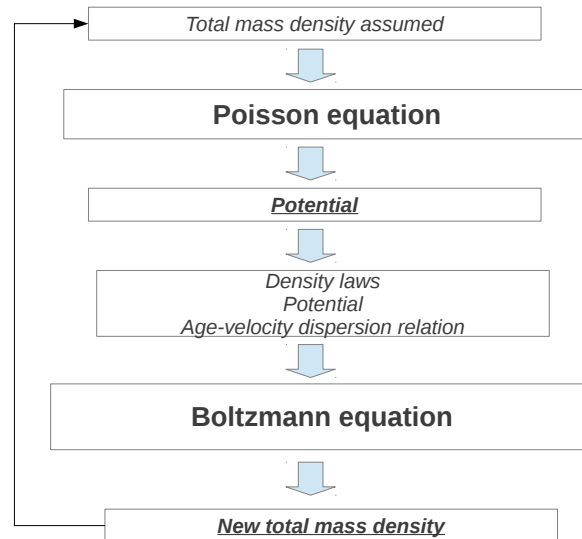


Figure 3.2: Scheme of the algorithm to compute the dynamical self-consistency. Ingredients for the equations are shown in italic, equations are shown in bold and results from equations are underlined.

### 3.2.4 The dynamical self-consistency

The originality of the BGM, in comparison with other population synthesis models is the dynamical self-consistency (Bienaymé et al. 1987). One can compute the potential using Poisson’s equation by adding up the densities of the four different populations in addition to the dark matter halo and the interstellar medium. If one assumes that all sub-populations of the thin disc, less the younger one, are isothermal and relaxed the individual velocity dispersion is set up by the age-velocity dispersion. One can constrain the scale height from the Galactic potential and from the velocity dispersion using the Boltzmann equation. From the density laws one can compute a new mass density and a new potential by Poisson’s equation. The process is iterated until the Galactic potential and scale heights converge (change less than 1%). Figure 3.2 shows the scheme used to compute the dynamical self-consistency.

## 3.3 The metallicity distribution

For the thin disc an age-metallicity relation according to Haywood (2006b) is assumed (table 3.3). We assume gradients and a gaussian distribution centered on the mean metallicity and a dispersion for each age bin. For the thick disc a mean metallicity of -0.7 dex with a dispersion of 0.3 dex around this value (Bensby et al. 2007; Fuhrmann 2011), and no radial and vertical

gradient are assumed. In the thick disc and halo components the distribution of stars is computed from alpha-enhanced isochrones (Bergbusch & Vandenberg 1992) for an age range from 10 Gyr to 12 Gyr in the standard model. The halo metallicity was assumed to be -1.78 dex with a dispersion of 0.5 dex (Ivezić et al. 2008), with no gradient, and simulated using same  $\alpha$ -enhanced isochrones. Table 3.3 summarizes the metallicity distribution for each population used in the simulations, before fitting.

Table 3.3:

Table 1 from Robin et al. (2003). Metallicity distributions assumed in original simulations: Age, mean metallicity, radial metallicity gradient and dispersion for each population.

Pop	Age (Gyr)	[Fe/H] <sub>⊙</sub> (dex)	$\frac{d[Fe/H]}{dR}$ (dex/kpc)	Dispersion (dex)
Thin disc	0 - 0.15	0.01		0.10
	0.15 - 1.0	0.00		0.11
	1.0 - 2.0	-0.02		0.12
	2.0 - 3.0	-0.03	-0.07	0.13
	3.0 - 5.0	-0.05		0.14
	5.0 - 7.0	-0.09		0.16
	7.0 - 10.0	-0.12		0.18
Thick disc	12.0	-0.78	0.00	0.30
Halo	14.0	-1.78	0.00	0.50

### 3.4 A revised model for the thin disc

In this analysis we have used two revised versions (model A and model B, where A and B refer to the alternative models of the BGM (Czekaj et al. 2014) along with the standard version. The main changes made in this work are the inclusion of binarity from Arenou (2011), new evolutionary tracks, new atmosphere models, new age-metallicity relation, new dynamical mass, and the use of different IMF and SFR. The SFR in the standard model was assumed to be constant, but in the new version it is assumed to be decreasing with time, following Aumer & Binney (2009) prescription. Czekaj et al. (2014) tried various IMF, combining different slopes in different mass ranges. They conclude that Tycho data favor two kind of IMF, a so-called Haywood-Robin for Model A, well in agreement with data in the place, and Kroupa-Haywood(V6) for model B, well suited for higher latitudes. The two kind of IMF are given in Table 1.4 (see their paper for more details). They will be tested alternatively with the standard model in our analysis.

Table 3.4:  
SFR and IMF parameters in the standard and revised versions of the BGM.

Model	SFR	IMF ( $\alpha$ )
Model Standard	Constant	1.6 for $M \leq 1M_{\odot}$ 3.0 for $M > 1M_{\odot}$
Model A	Decreasing	1.6 for $M \leq 1M_{\odot}$ 3.0 for $M > 1M_{\odot}$
Model B	Decreasing	1.3 for $0.09M_{\odot} < M < 0.5M_{\odot}$ 1.8 for $0.5M_{\odot} < M < 1.53M_{\odot}$ 3.2 for $1.53M_{\odot} < M < 120M_{\odot}$

### 3.4.1 Atmosphere models

The atmosphere models used in the standard model are the BaSeL 2.2 library from Lejeune et al. (1998). In the new model one can choose between BaSeL 2.2 and BaSeL 3.1 atmosphere models. The BaSeL 2.2 stellar library is the compilation of different atmospheric models (Kurucz (1995), Bessell et al. (1989), Bessell et al. (1989), Fluks et al. (1994), Allard & Hauschildt (1995) for M dwarfs). The BaSeL 2.2 was only calibrated from solar metallicity data which implied the presence of some problems at low metallicities ( $[Fe/H] < -1.0$  dex). This weakness has been corrected in Westera et al. (2002) and following this correction it was created the new library BaSeL 3.1 used in model A and B.

### 3.4.2 Evolutionary tracks

The evolutionary tracks used in the standard model (see Haywood et al. (1997a) for a more detailed description) have been revised for model A and B. In the low mass regime the standard model uses Vandenberg (private communication) whereas the new versions use Chabrier & Baraffe (1997). For higher masses the standard model uses Schaller et al. (1992) tracks whereas the new versions use Bertelli et al. (2008, 2009) and in model B Bertelli et al. (1994) for masses larger than 20 solar masses. Table 3.5 shows a comparison between the versions. See Czekaj et al. (2014) for a more detailed description.

Table 3.5:

Table 2 of Czekaj et al. (2014). Evolutionary tracks for the standard and revised versions of the BGM

Model	evolutionary tracks references
Model Standard	Vandenberg (private communication) for $M < 1 M_{\odot}$ Schaller et al. (1992) for $M > 1 M_{\odot}$ Castellani et al. (1992) for helium-burning stars at masses 1 - 1.7 $M_{\odot}$
Model A	Chabrier & Baraffe (1997) for $M < 0.6 M_{\odot}$ Bertelli et al. (1994) for $M > 0.6 M_{\odot}$
Model B	Chabrier & Baraffe (1997) for $M < 0.7 M_{\odot}$ Bertelli et al. (2008, 2009) for $0.7 M_{\odot} < M < 20 M_{\odot}$ Bertelli et al. (1994) for $M > 20 M_{\odot}$

### 3.4.3 Binarity

The binarity is included in the revised version implementing the scheme used in Arenou (2011) where the probability of the existence of a binary star is related to the mass and luminosity class of the primary object. If the star belongs to the main sequence the probability depends on the mass of the primary star

$$p(M) = 0.85 \times \tanh(0.55M + 0.095) \quad (3.6)$$

where  $M$  is the mass of the object. If the primary star is a giant it has 60% of being a binary. The separation of the system depends on the luminosity class (Arenou 2011).

### 3.4.4 Age-metallicity relation

The age-metallicity relation also suffered a modification from the standard to the revised model. In the revised version we use the age-metallicity relation from Haywood (2006a). The scheme to assign the metallicity to stars has changed. In the revised model metallicity and dispersion are now computed following equations 3.7 and 3.8 where the equations are a fit to Haywood (2006b) values from the GCS (Nordström et al. 2004) data.

$$[Fe/H] = -0.077 \times age + 0.156 \quad (3.7)$$

$$\sigma_{[Fe/H]} = 0.010 \times age + 0.1192 \quad (3.8)$$

Table 3.6:  
Table 5 from Czekaj et al. (2014). Ingredients of the standard and revised simulations

Ingredients	Standard model	Model A	Model B
SFR	constant	decreasing $\exp(-0.12 \tau)$ Aumer & Binney (2009)	decreasing $\exp(-0.12 \tau)$ Aumer & Binney (2009)
IMF	Haywood-Robin	Haywood-Robin	Haywood-Robin v6
Age-metallicity relation	Twarog (1980)	Haywood (2006a)	
atmosphere models	BaSeL 2.2	BaSeL 3.1	BaSeL 3.1
binarity	no	yes - scheme adopted from Arenou (2011)	yes - scheme adopted from Arenou (2011)
age of the thin disc	10 Gyr	10 Gyr	10 Gyr
thick disc parameters	$h_R = 2355$ pc $h_Z = 533$ pc density = $8.33 \times 10^{-3} \text{ */pc}^3$	$h_R = 2355$ pc $h_Z = 533$ pc density = $8.33 \times 10^{-3} \text{ */pc}^3$	$h_R = 2355$ pc $h_Z = 533$ pc density = $8.33 \times 10^{-3} \text{ */pc}^3$
extinction model	Drimmel & Spergel (2001)	Marshall et al. (2006) + Drimmel & Spergel (2001)	Marshall et al. (2006) + Drimmel & Spergel (2001)
total dynamical mass	Crézé et al. (1998)	van Leeuwen (2007)	van Leeuwen (2007)
local stellar mass density	Wielen (1974b)	Wielen (1974b)	Jahreiß & Wielen (1997)
local stellar mass density	Robin et al. (2003)	Binney & Tremaine (2008b)	Binney & Tremaine (2008b)
Age-velocity relation	Gomez et al. (1997)	Gomez et al. (1997)	Gomez et al. (1997)
Warp and flare	Reylé et al. (2009)	Reylé et al. (2009)	Reylé et al. (2009)
scale length	young disc $h_R = 5000.0$ pc old disc $h_R = 2400.0$ pc	young disc $h_R = 5000.0$ pc old disc $h_R = 2400.0$ pc	young disc $h_R = 5000.0$ pc old disc $h_R = 2400.0$ pc

### 3.4.5 Dynamical mass

The dynamical mass has also been revised in the new configuration. The original one was Crézé et al. (1998), but van Leeuwen (2007) computed a new reduction of the Hipparcos data that leads to a new total dynamical mass of  $(0.122 \pm 0.019)M_{\odot} \text{ pc}^{-3}$  that is 60% higher than the one assumed by Crézé et al. (1998) of  $(0.076 \pm 0.015)M_{\odot} \text{ pc}^{-3}$ . In order to use the new dynamical mass the interstellar medium mass density has been increased to the value proposed by Binney & Tremaine (2008b) of  $0.05M_{\odot} \text{ pc}^{-3}$ .

The following table 3.6 based in the table 5 of Czekaj et al. (2014) gives a summary of the main changes introduced in the revised models in comparison with the standard model.

### 3.5 A new thick disc in the BGM

So far the BGM have assumed a single epoch formation for the thick disc but several recent results (Bovy et al. 2012b; Haywood et al. 2013, among others) claim a longer thick disc formation period (4-5 Gyr). In Robin et al. (2014) new thick disc parameters have been tested and fitted to photometric data (SDSS and 2MASS). The thick disc was tentatively divided into two parts of different ages in order to check for a longer epoch of star formation. This implementation results in a better fit than the original single thick disc epoch formation. The older part of the thick disc has 12 Gyr, a scale length of about 3 kpc and a scale height of 800 pc (assuming a  $\text{sech}^2$ ). The younger part has an age of 10 Gyr, a scale length of 2 kpc and a scale height of about 350pc. The young thick disc metallicity distribution was assumed to have a mean metallicity of -0.5 dex in agreement with recent works from the literature presented in Table 8.14 and from the SEGUE analysis presented further in this work. The mean metallicity of the old thick disc was assumed to be equal to -0.78 dex in agreement with the values used in the description of the BGM (See section 3.3). Both components of the thick disc were assumed to have a dispersion of 0.30 dex and no radial or vertical metallicity gradients. In section 9 we discuss the results of the fit of this version of the model with Gaia-ESO survey data.

---

# Chapter 4

## Surveys

### 4.1 Introduction

Spectroscopic surveys, in last decade, evolved from the study of a few hundred of stars to the analysis of large samples of stars for which one can compute distributions and trace properties of populations. Looking at the present and future observational projected surveys we see that there is a golden era for Galactic surveys data mining. The first large spectroscopic survey which showed the importance of these kind of observations was the Geneva Copenhagen Survey (Nordström et al. 2004) which, among other discoveries, allowed the study of chemical distributions, velocity distributions and ages in the solar neighbourhood. The development of the multi-object spectroscopy allowed to extend observations, outside the solar neighbourhood, to study large sample of stars in the different components of the Milky Way. The scientific community taking advantage of the technical developments in instruments gave rise to different Galactic surveys. In this chapter we will do a short review about few of the most important spectroscopic surveys in the past, present and future in astronomy.

### 4.2 Geneva-Copenhagen survey

The Geneva-Copenhagen survey (Nordström et al. 2004) was the first homogeneous spectroscopic survey which observed more than 1000 stars with the *Danish 1.5-m telescope at ESO, La Silla, Chile, and with the Swiss 1-m telescope at Observatoire de Haute-Provence, France*. It observed around 13 000 stars in the solar neighbourhood, i.e. in a few hundreds of parsecs. The observed radial velocities combined with  $ubv\gamma\beta$  photometry (which allows measurements of spectral parameters as metallicity or effective temperature), parallaxes from Hipparcos and proper motions from Tycho-2, are part of the catalog of about 14 000 F and G dwarfs in the solar neighbourhood (few hundreds of parsecs).

---



## 4.3 SDSS-II/III

The Sloan Digital Sky Survey (SDSS; York et al. 2000) multi-fiber imaging and spectroscopic survey uses the 2.5 meters wide-angle telescope at Apache Point Observatory in New Mexico (Gunn et al. 2006) supported by the Alfred P. Sloan Foundation. The last SDSS data release (DR10) (Ahn et al. 2014) covers 14 555 square degrees and it has 736 484 Optical stellar spectra and 57 454 Infrared stellar spectra. Figure 4.1 show the sky coverage of the full SDSS survey imaging which uses the Sloan photometric system (u,g,r,i and z). The whole SDSS program consists of several surveys but we will just refer to two (SEGUE and APOGEE) of the most important surveys for our present and future work.

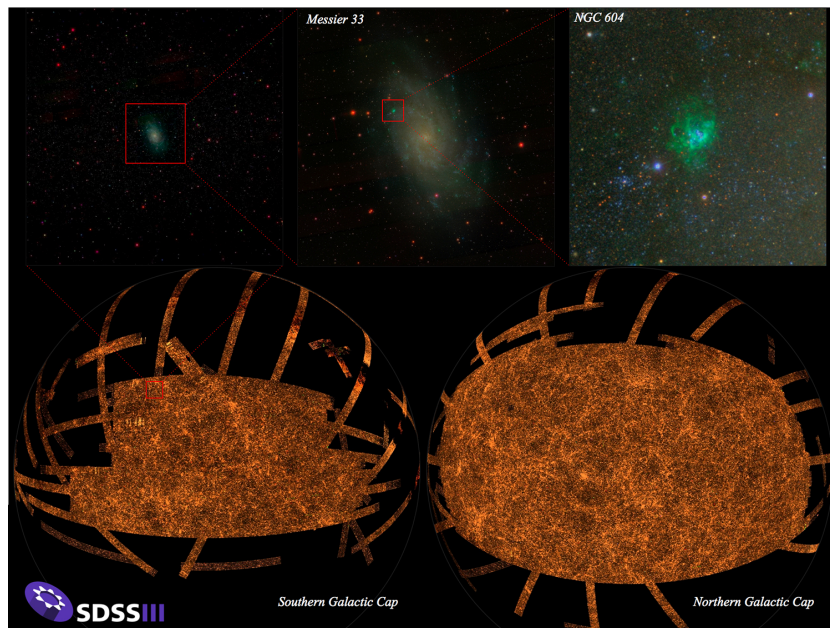


Figure 4.1: The SDSS sky coverage in the southern and northern Galactic cap. Image credit: <http://www.sdss.org/sdss-surveys/>

### 4.3.1 SEGUE/SEGUE2

The Sloan Extension for Galactic Understanding and Exploration (SEGUE) (Yanny et al. (2009); Eisenstein et al. (2011)) is a part of SDSS-II which obtained ugriz imaging data at moderate to low Galactic latitudes ( $|b| < 35$  degrees) and spectroscopy of selected stellar targets over the wavelength range 385 nm to 920 nm in order to investigate Milky Way structure. It covered around 3500 square degrees of imaging data and produced 240 000 medium resolution ( $R \sim 2000$ ) spectra of stars with a typical signal to noise ratio of 25 to magnitude  $g=19$  in 1438 square degrees. In our analysis we have used this survey and specially we used the low latitude fields of this program. After the success of the survey a follow up survey (SEGUE-2) has been conceived to specially observe the halo component at high latitude fields. It observed around 119 000 stars to magnitude  $g=19$  in 1317 square degrees. The combination of the two surveys

creates one of the largest spectroscopic samples which combines kinematic and chemical information essential to understand the history of the Milky Way. Figure 4.2 show the spatial coverage of the spectroscopic sample for both surveys.

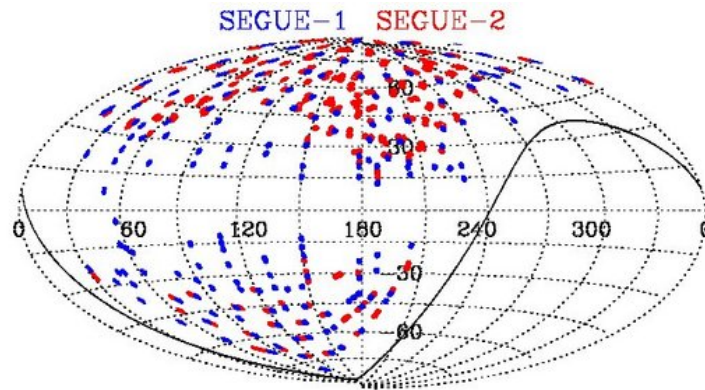


Figure 4.2: The SEGUE in blue and SEGUE-2 in red sky coverage in Galactic coordinates.  
Image credit: M. Strauss in <http://www.sdss3.org/surveys/segue2.php>

### 4.3.2 APOGEE

The APO Galactic Evolution Experiment (APOGEE; Majewski et al. 2010) uses high-resolution ( $R \sim 22\,500$ ), high signal-to-noise ( $S/N > 100$ ) infrared spectroscopy which allows to study in detail the halo, disc and the most inner regions of the Milky Way, like the bulge, due to the lower dependence in extinction at infrared wavelengths. The survey observes around 100 000 giant stars with limiting magnitude which depends on the fields (there are fields going to  $H=13.8$  and fields (like the bulge) which go to  $H=11$ ). The survey measures spectroscopic parameters as the metallicity, effective temperature, surface gravity, and abundance of 15 different chemical species with very high precision. Figure 4.3 show the spatial coverage of the APOGEE DR10 release in Galactic coordinates and, in contrast to SEGUE, the observations are mainly located in the Galactic plane which complements SEGUE observations.

## 4.4 RAVE

The RAVE survey (the RAdial Velocity Experiment) (e.g. Steinmetz et al. (2006), Zwitter et al. (2008), Siebert et al. (2011)) was a 10 years survey (2003-2013) which gather 574 630 spectra for 483 330 stars. RAVE used a multi-fiber spectroscopic facility at the 1.2m UK Schmidt telescope of the Anglo-Australian Observatory in Siding Spring, Australia and it is magnitude limited in the range  $9 < I < 13$ . For dwarf stars the survey is limited to distances between 50 and 250 pc but for giants it can reach to 3.0 kpc. The survey covered 20,000 square degrees of the sky in the southern hemisphere. Figure 4.4 shows the sky coverage of the survey along with the stellar heliocentric radial velocities. The catalog has accurate radial velocities ( $\sim 2$  km

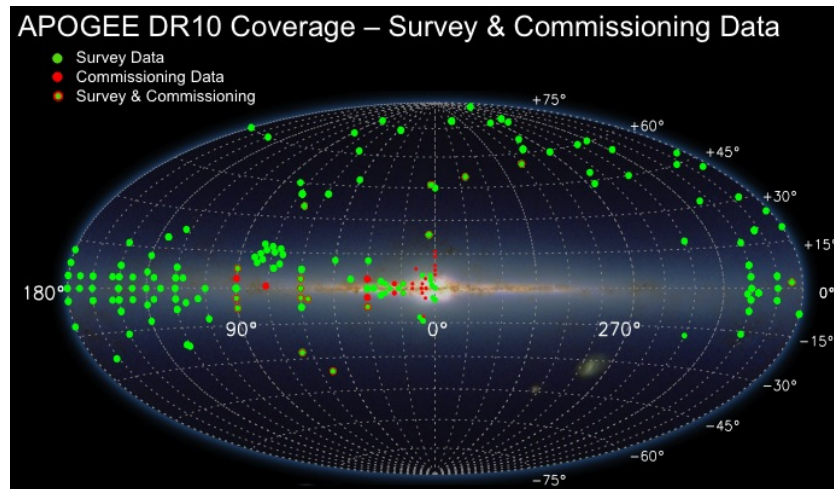


Figure 4.3: The APOGEE sky coverage, from DR10, in Galactic coordinates. Image credit: in <http://www.sdss3.org/dr10/>

$s^{-1}$ ), stellar parameters as metallicity, effective temperature, surface gravity, elemental abundance and photometric parallaxes. The last data release (DR4) is described in Kordopatis et al. (2013a).

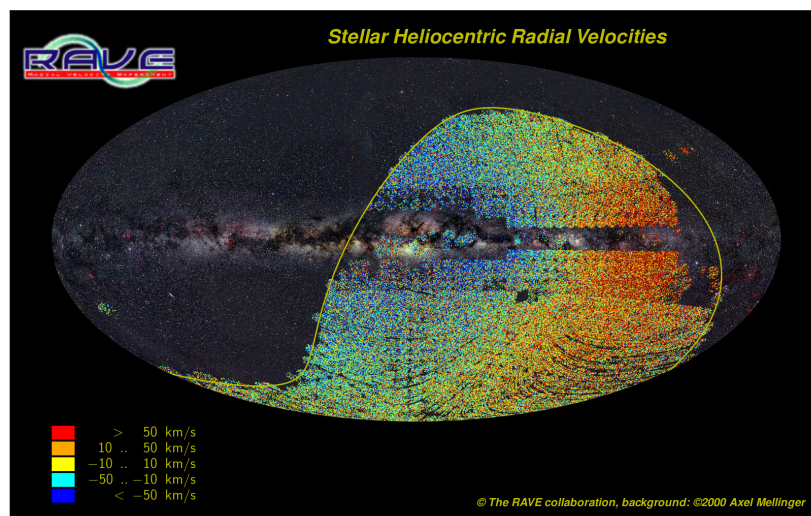


Figure 4.4: The RAVE sky coverage where color are the stellar heliocentric radial velocities. Image credit: Axel Mellinger at <http://www.rave-survey.aip.de/rave/pages/project/index.jsp>

## 4.5 LAMOST

The Large Sky Area Multi-Object Fiber Spectroscopic Telescope (LAMOST: Cui et al. (2012), Zhao et al. (2012)) located in Xinglong Station of national Astronomical Observatory, China and operated by National Astronomical Observatories, Chinese Academy of Sciences (NAOC) uses a 4m Xinglong Schmidt telescope with limiting magnitude of  $g < 20$ . The LAMOST experiment for Galactic Understanding and Exploration (LEGUE: Deng et al. (2012)), has similar objectives as SEGUE, like study structure in the disc and Galactic halo or compute the metallicity distribution function in the different components. The advantage is its large aperture with a wide field of view which allows a large focal surface to accommodate up to 4000 fibers. Nevertheless, its lower resolution ( $R = 500$  up to  $R = 1800$ ) and the lower S/N produced by the instrument (due to the poor atmospheric conditions and light pollution) produce lower quality data compared with SEGUE.

## 4.6 Gaia

Gaia (Perryman et al. 2001) is an ESA mission launched in the end of 2013 and will have a five year duration. The main goal of the mission is to do the largest, more complete and more precise three-dimensional map of the Milky Way by obtaining astrometric distances from parallaxes and spectroscopic data for  $V < 16$ , which combined with spectroscopic surveys such as the Gaia-ESO survey among others, will allow to study in great detail the structure and history of the Milky Way. It will observe more than one billion stars about 1% of the total Galactic population. In comparison the previous astrometric mission (Hipparcos Space Astrometry Mission) observed just 118 218 stars (Perryman et al. 1997) i.e. around 0.012% of the final Gaia catalog. Figure 4.5 show the Galactic plane coverage of Gaia. The mission will observe the whole sky as the Two Micron All Sky Survey (2MASS; Skrutskie et al. 2006), but contrarily to the spectroscopic surveys.

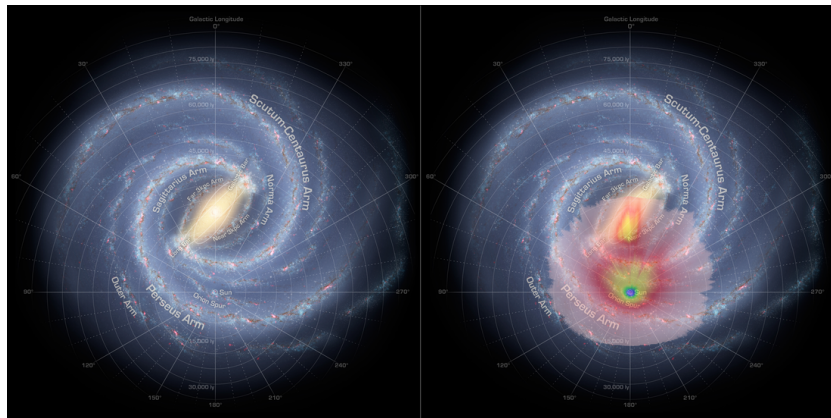


Figure 4.5: Simulation of the Gaia Galactic coverage. Image credit: X. Luri & the DPAC-CU2

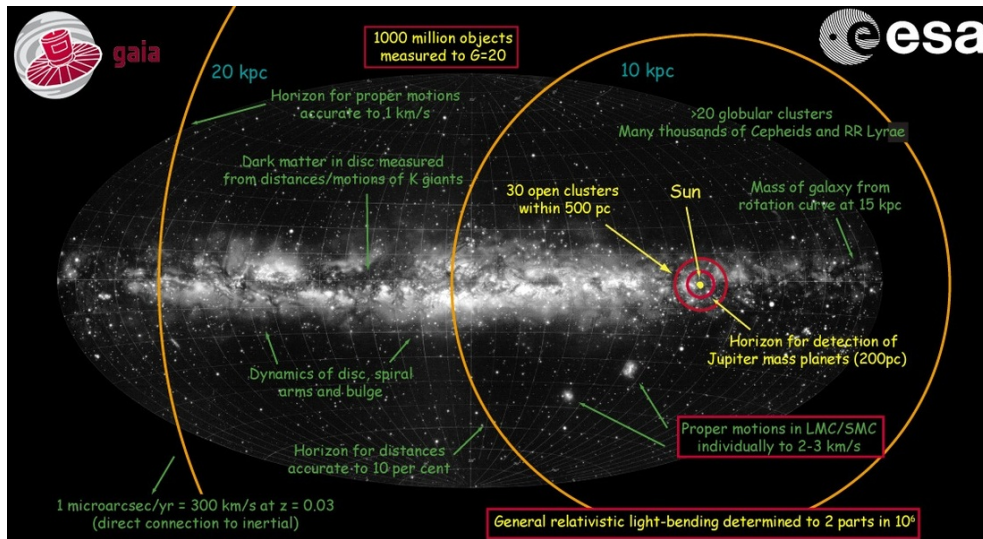


Figure 4.6: The Gaia Galactic coverage where the smaller and larger circles indicate the radius at which distances are accurate to 10% and the tangential velocities accurate to  $1 \text{ km s}^{-1}$ .

Image credit: ESA/Lund

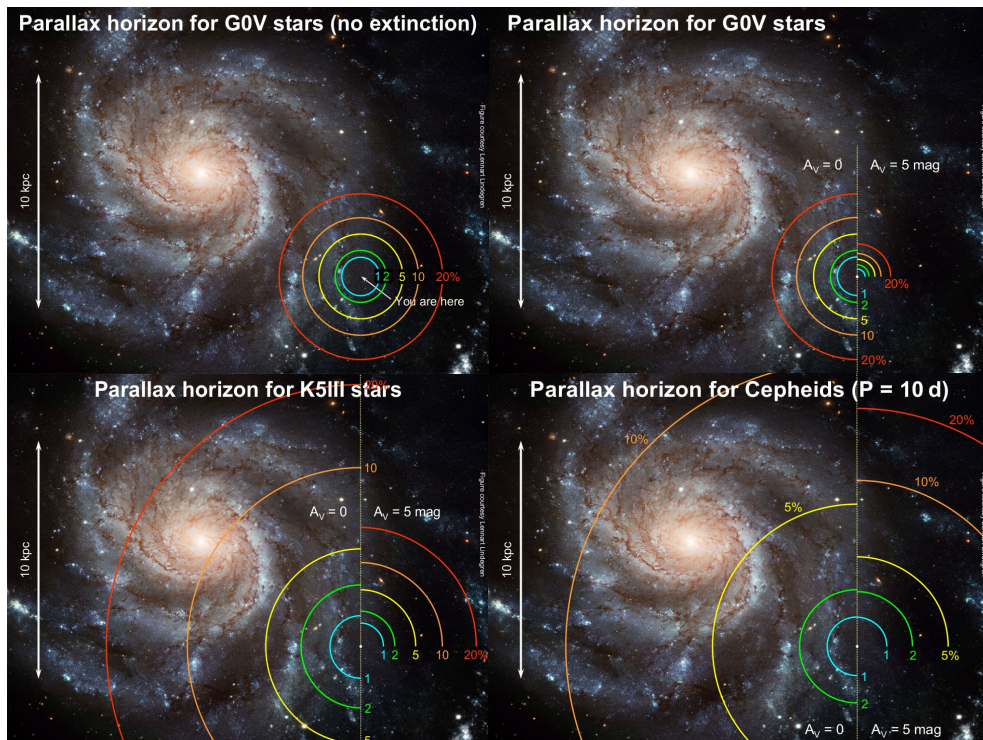


Figure 4.7: The Gaia parallax errors. Top left panel: The G0V stars parallax error distribution without extinction. Top right panel: The G0V stars parallax error distribution with extinction. Bottom left panel: The K5III stars parallax error distribution with extinction and no extinction.

Bottom right panel: The Cepheids stars parallax error distribution with extinction and no extinction. Image credit: Lennart Lindegren

The mosaic of CCDs (the largest ever in space) has a large area dedicated to astrometric measurements and smaller areas dedicated to detection, photometry and radial velocity. The Spectroscopic instrument RVS (Radial Velocity Spectrometer) will provide radial velocities with a precision estimated before the launch, of  $2\text{-}10\text{ km s}^{-1}$  (for stars with  $V \leq 15$  mag). Positions and parallaxes will have an estimated precision of  $10\text{ }\mu\text{arcsec}$  for bright stars ( $V \sim 13$ ),  $300\text{ }\mu\text{arcsec}$  for a G2V spectral type star at  $V \sim 20$  mag and proper motions a precision of  $20\text{ }\mu\text{arcsec yr}^{-1}$ . Figure 4.6 shows the Galactic coverage along with errors in distance and proper motions. There is a first circle at 10 kpc where it will have distances accurates to 10% and a second circle at 20 kpc with tangential velocities better than  $1\text{ km s}^{-1}$ .

The estimated errors in distance will depend on the source. Figure 4.7 shows the error estimate spatial distribution for different spectral types. G dwarfs will get accurate distances for distances as far as 4 kpc and K giants and Cepheids distances as accurate as 20% and 10% respectively for stars in the opposite side of the Milky Way. The figure shows that there is a large difference when the extinction is present which means that stars in the Galactic plane will have distances less precise that stars at larger distances from the plane.

The photometric precision of both photometers will be  $\sim 5$  mmag for the brighter objects ( $V \sim 15$ ) and  $\sim 50$  mmag for fainter stars ( $V \sim 20$ ). This high precision will produce low resolution spectrum which allows the derivation of spectral parameters such as the metallicity, effective temperature and surface gravity. It will produce a multi dimensional high precision catalog specially for bright stars. Ground based spectroscopic surveys, such as Gaia-ESO survey and 4-MOST, have selected sub-samples in many directions which will complement Gaia for fainter stars.

## 4.7 Gaia-ESO

The Gaia-ESO survey (GES: Gilmore et al. (2012)) is a common effort of different groups in Europe in order to produce a large sample of high resolution data, selected using VISTA (Visible and Infrared Survey Telescope for Astronomy) photometry, to combine later with the Gaia catalog. The combination of both catalogs will produce a large sample of astrometric, photometric and spectroscopic quality data. It uses FLAMES (Fibre Large Array Multi Element Spectrograph) mounted at the UT2 telescope at VLT, Chile. FLAMES is a multi-object spectrograph with 25 arcmin in diameter which feeds two different spectrograph: The high resolution spectrograph UVES ( $R \sim 47000$ ) in the wavelength range 370-950 nm and the intermediate resolution spectrograph GIRAFFE ( $R \sim 25000$  or  $R \sim 10000$ ) with central wavelength of 520, 580 and 860 nm depending on the setup. It dedicates, per field, up to 8 fibers to UVES and up to 130 fibers to GIRAFFE. The GES survey proposed to observe more than  $10^5$  stars in a 5 year period covering all the populations of the Galaxy plus clusters which will allow a homogeneous analysis of the chemistry and kinematics of all components. Figure 4.8 shows the map of observed targets in the data release 1 (DR1) (Recio-Blanco et al. 2014) for the different observed target groups. The first observation was made in 31 December 2011 and in total GES will observe the sky during 300 nights divided in 9 periods plus 3 in the fourth year for compensation time and

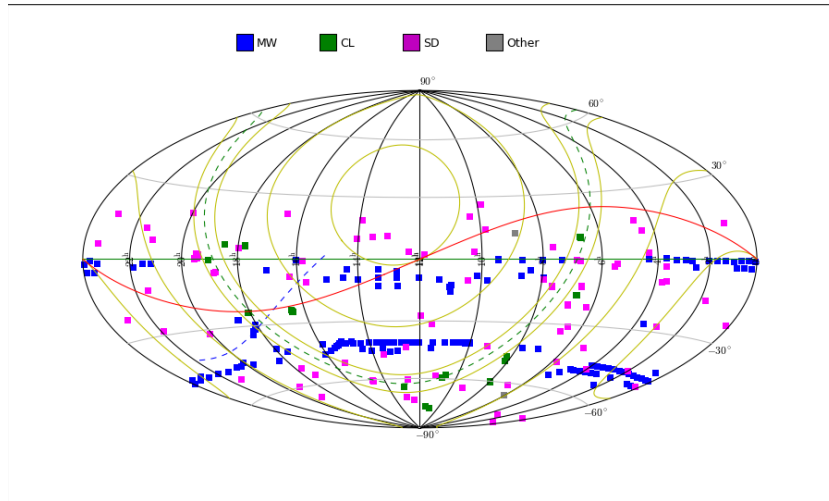


Figure 4.8: Sky coverage of the observed targets in DR1 data release. Color indicates the different target groups. MW: Milky Way fields; CL: Clusters; SD: Standard Image credit: provided by Cambridge Astronomy Survey Unit (CASU) - <http://casu.ast.cam.ac.uk/gaiaeso/overview>

review to assess a fifth year (Gilmore et al. 2012).

## 4.8 GALAH

The GALactic Archaeology with HERMES (GALAH: Zucker et al. 2012) is a stellar survey to observe about one million stars which uses the HERMES instrument with the Anglo-Australian Telescope of the Australian Astronomical Observatory. The survey has a limiting magnitude of  $V=14$  mag and will observe half of the accessible sky for latitudes larger than  $|b| > 10^\circ$  in high resolution ( $R \sim 28000$  and  $R \sim 45000$ ). HERMES has 390 fibers distributed in  $\pi$  square degrees and covers wavelengths in the range 4718 to 7890 Å. This set allows HERMES to obtain precise chemical abundances for 15 different elements and radial velocities. The main targets of the selection sample have a fractional contribution, as given by the GALAXIA code (Sharma et al. 2011), for the thin (0.58 dwarfs and 0.19 giants), thick (0.11 dwarfs and 0.07 giants) disc and halo (0.02 dwarfs and 0.03 giants) and are selected using the 2MASS survey (Table 2: Zucker et al. 2012). Observations (around 63,892 stars over 180 fields until August 2014) for the pilot survey and GALAH Survey are being made and the data is being processed by the survey team. The First Data Release is expected in January 2015.

## 4.9 LSST

The Large Synoptic Survey Telescope system (LSST: LSST Science Collaboration et al. 2009) is a very deep (from  $r < 24.5$  in a single observation to  $r < 27.5$  in the final release) wide-field survey of the southern sky which will use a 8.4m primary mirror telescope in the proposed site, Cerro Pachón in Northern Chile. In ten years it will observe each path of the sky about 1000 times. It will obtain quality imaging (using SDSS photometric system) and astrometry for a large field of view of 9.6 square degrees (diameter is equal to 3.5 degrees) made by the world largest digital camera with 3200 Megapixels. To reach high precision astrometry it has to maintain the limit set by the atmosphere at 10 mas per observation which will allow to obtain a precision in parallaxes around 1 mas and a proper motion uncertainty of  $0.2 \text{ mas yr}^{-1}$ . In this sense it is going to complement the Gaia survey with similar accuracies but at much fainter magnitude.

## 4.10 WEAVE

The WEAVE (A new wide-field multi-object spectrograph for the William Herschel Telescope) survey (Dalton et al. 2012) is planned for the 4.2-m William Herschel Telescope at the Observatorio del Roque de los Muchachos, on La Palma in the Canary Islands. Each exposure can observe up to 1000 objects which feed a single spectrograph with resolutions of  $R \sim 5000$  for stars fainter than  $V = 17.0$  mag and  $R \sim 20000$  for stars brighter than  $V = 18$  mag (Dalton et al. 2012). The low-resolution mode will observe more than  $\sim 10^6$  stars with a radial velocity precision better than  $5 \text{ km s}^{-1}$  in the range  $17.0 < V < 20.0$ . The high-resolution mode will provide chemical abundances for most of the elements with an accuracy of  $\sim 0.1$  dex. WEAVE will be complemented by the 4-MOST survey which will cover the southern sky which is inaccessible to WEAVE. Science operations are schedule to start around 2017.

## 4.11 4MOST

The 4-metre Multi-Object Spectroscopic Telescope (4MOST: de Jong et al. 2012) is a survey using the Visible and Infrared Survey Telescope for Astronomy (VISTA) 4.1 metre telescope, located at the Paranal Observatory in Chile. The instrument has a large field-of-view and will cover the southern sky by obtaining spectra of around 2400 objects distributed over an area of 4 square degrees. The survey will probably begin to observe in 2019 and in the final 5 years period it should deliver around 30 million spectra covering from 15000 to 20000 square degrees. It will measure abundances up to 15 elements for stars brighter than 16 V-mag. The low resolution spectrograph goals are a resolution larger than 5000 over the full wavelength range (390-1050 nm) and larger than 7000 at 800 nm. The high resolution goals are a resolution larger than 18000 for a range of wavelength between 390 nm and 456.5 nm and larger than 20000 in average for a wavelength range of 585–677 nm (de Jong et al. 2012). Its high resolution makes

---



it the natural successor of the Gaia-ESO survey and the ideal complement of Gaia survey which overlaps it in magnitude limits.

## 4.12 MOONS

The Multi-Object Optical and Near-infrared Spectrograph (MOONS: Cirasuolo et al. 2012) consists in  $\sim 1000$  fibers distributed in a large field of around 500 square arcminutes which will use the 8.2m Very Large Telescope (VLT). The instrument has a medium resolution mode ( $R \sim 4000-6000$ ) which covers the wavelengths from  $0.8 \mu\text{m}$  to  $1.8 \mu\text{m}$  and a high resolution mode which allows to measure radial velocities ( $R \sim 8000$  around the CaII triplet) and detailed measurements of chemical abundances ( $R \sim 20000$ ) for more than 2 million stars ranging from  $\sim 14.5$  mag to  $\sim 20.5$  mag in V band. These requirements make this survey a complement to APOGEE survey by covering fainter magnitudes in the near-infrared. The instrument will be operational by 2019.

---

## Chapter 5

# Photometric and spectroscopic sample

The objective of our work is to understand the structure formation and evolution of the Milky Way. The model can give constraints on the formation and structure by comparing simulations with real data. For this study we use the SEGUE (Yanny et al. (2009); Eisenstein et al. (2011)) sample, part of the Sloan Digital Sky Survey (York et al. 2000). We use 10 low latitude fields which have bright ( $g=15-18$  mag) and faint plates ( $g=17.5-19.5$  mag) presented in table 5.1. We have two fields in the inner disc direction, five at intermediate longitudes and three at the anticenter direction. These fields cover a small range of galactic latitudes from  $| 8.0 |$  to  $| 16.0 |$  but are located at directions where we can have a significant thick disc contribution. The photometric data will provide constrains on the shape and structure of the Milky Way while the spectroscopic sample contributes to study the formation and evolution of the Milky Way by constraining the metallicity distribution and how this distribution changed with time. We have used two different processes to select the photometric sample and the spectroscopic sample. In the next section we will describe how we have selected the photometric sample. Section 5.2 describes the method used to select the spectroscopic sample.

### 5.1 Selecting the photometric sample from SEGUE

We retrieved data using the SDSS database accessible on line at `casjobs`<sup>1</sup>. For each field we selected targets from the Sloan Digital Sky Survey Data Release 9 (DR9; Ahn et al. 2012) in a radius of 90 arcmin of the plate center. We use the function `fGetNearbyObjEq()` to get objects. If we do not want to have all objects but just stars we have to specify using `plmatch.type=6`. We can match up and retrieve the photometric information for each star from `PhotoObjAll`. We also remove all duplicate observations checking a variable called “mode”, or equivalently doing `(resolve_status & survey_PRIMARY) !=0`. The sample is cleaned from regions around bright sources, because nearby stars can have unreliable photometry, and we checked for quality flags. After a study about the flags we decided to exclude four flags in two different bands, `g` and `i`

---

<sup>1</sup><http://casjobs.sdss.org/CasJobs/>

Table 5.1:  
SEGUE survey plates used for the present analysis

Plate bright/faint	l ( $^{\circ}$ )	b ( $^{\circ}$ )	Ra ( $^{\circ}$ )	Dec ( $^{\circ}$ )
2534/2542	50	14	277.60	21.33
2536/2544	70	14	286.66	39.11
2537/2545	110	10.5	334.17	69.39
2538/2546	110	16	323.07	73.64
2554/2564	94	14	302.97	60.01
2555/2565	94	8	312.39	56.59
2556/2566	94	-8	330.15	45.06
2668/2672	187	-12	79.49	16.61
2678/2696	187	8	98.13	26.67
2681/2699	178	-15	71.50	21.98

Table 5.2:  
Photometric flags used

Flag	Description
EDGE	Stars are too close to the edge of the frame
EGHOST	Electronic ghost from a bright star
SATURATED	Saturated pixels from a bright star
NOTCHECKED	Stars weren't checked for peaks by deblender
BINNED1	Select stars with a peak detection > 5 sigma in the original imaging frame
NOPROFILE	Select stars with NOPROFILE=0

and used two flags to select stars. First, we don't want stars that are too close to the edge of the frame to be measured, so we removed stars associated with the flag "EDGE". We also do not want objects associated with the flags "EGHOST" and "SATURATED", because it can have respectively a electronic ghost or saturated pixels from a bright star. Stars that have not been checked ("NOTCHECKED") for peaks by deblender are removed because the deblending may be unreliable.

Furthermore, we selected stars using the flag "BINNED1" to select only stars with a peak detection higher than 5 sigma in the original imaging frame. The last flag used was the "NOPROFILE" from which we select stars with not NOPROFILE (flag equal to zero) because the photometric quantities measured from it are likely to be suspect due to the invalid radial profile. Table 5.2 summarizes the photometric flags used.

We estimated the completeness of the sample to be between 14.0 and 19.5 mags in g band. We then plotted colour-colour diagrams (g-r vs r-i), for the observations, and noticed that the locus was slightly enlarged compared with simulations in a few CCD frame of the mosaic. We disregarded the photometry from these CCD frames. This procedure was done for all plates and in more than half of them we found this effect. The effective area for each plate is around 85% – 90% of the plate area.

## 5.2 Selecting the spectroscopic sample from SEGUE

The spectroscopic sample is selected using different flags than the photometric one. The Spectroscopic data used in this work are from the SEGUE survey Data Release 8 (DR8; Aihara et al. (2011))<sup>2</sup>. We selected stars that do not have a critical flag category (Table 5.3) by the SEGUE Stellar Parameter Pipeline (SSPP; Lee et al. (2008a,b); Allende Prieto et al. (2008)).

Table 5.3:  
Spectroscopic flags used

Flag	Description
D	Likely white dwarf
d	Likely sdO or sdB
H	Hot star $T_{eff} > 10000K$
h	Helium line detected, possibly very hot star
E	Emission lines in the spectrum
S	Sky spectrum
V	No radial velocity information
B	Too blue $g - r < -0.3$
R	Too red $g - r < 1.3$
X	No parameters estimate

The pipeline SSPP was made to analyze high galactic latitude observations and it uses photometry corrected using the reddening maps from Schlegel et al. (1998). Cheng et al. (2012b) showed that the  $T_{eff}$  estimates from SSPP pipeline which use photometric information are systematically higher than the value obtained from the spectrum only when extinction is high. So, using a similar approach, we computed a new  $T_{eff}$  from a weighted average over spectroscopic methods. The methods used to compute the new corrected effective temperature are ki13, ANNSR, ANNRR, NGS1 and HA24 (See Lee et al. (2008a) for details about the methods). For stars with temperatures lower than 5000 K it is more robust to use alone the NGS1 method (Private communication from Young Sun Lee). The weights for each method are based on the error associated to each method. In figures 5.1 and 5.2 we plot the difference between

<sup>2</sup><http://casjobs.sdss.org/CasJobs/>

the SSPP temperature estimates and the corrected values as a function of the SSPP temperature estimates and of the extinction  $E(B-V)$  respectively. We can see in figure 5.1 a discrepancy between temperatures, for  $T_{\text{eff}} < 4900$  K. For safety we choose to use only data with  $T_{\text{eff}} > 4900$  K.

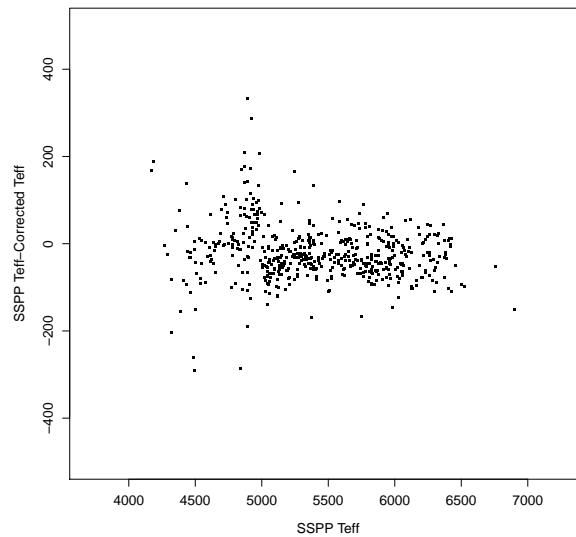


Figure 5.1: Difference between the SSPP temperature estimates and the corrected values as a function of the SSPP temperature estimates for plate 2536  $(l,b)=(70^\circ, 14^\circ)$ .

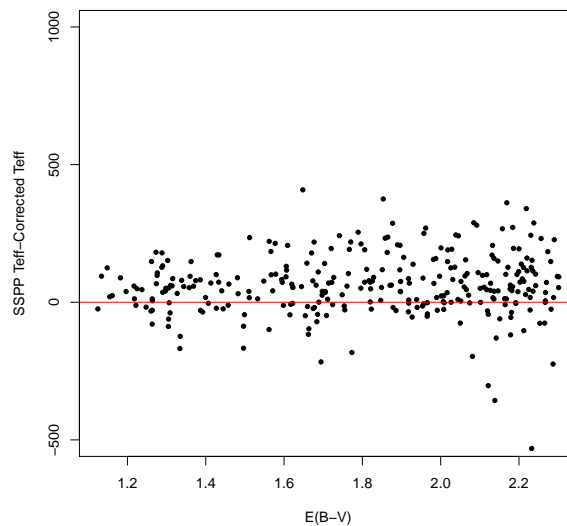


Figure 5.2: Difference between the SSPP temperature estimates and the corrected values as a function of the extinction  $E(B-V)$  for plate 2555  $(l,b)=(94^\circ, 8^\circ)$ .

# Chapter 6

## Simulations

### 6.1 Masking the simulations

The simulated catalogs were obtained from the Besançon galaxy model by doing a rectangular selection in galactic coordinates with center on the center of the field. We apply cuts in magnitude (g band), color (g-r) and coordinates on the simulated catalogues as has been done on the observations. The simulated stars are placed randomly in the field in contrast with the observed data (Fig 6.1).

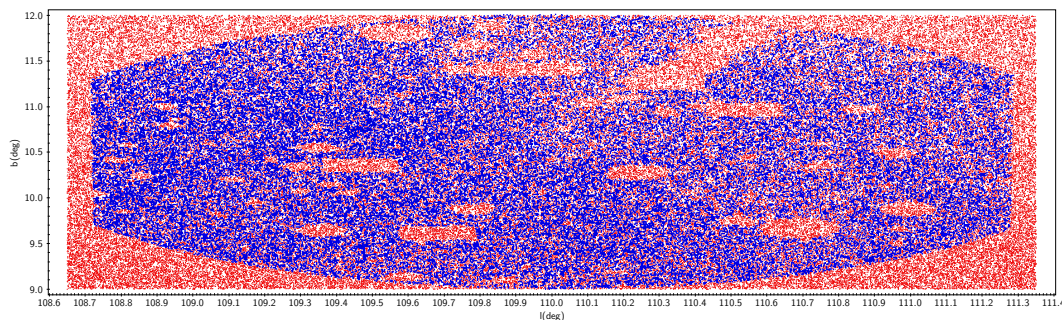


Figure 6.1: Distribution in (l,b) of the simulated stars (red points) and observed ones (blue points) for the field 2537.

A masking code has been developed and applied to the simulations to take into account the empty regions around bright stars and CCD frames discarded. The masking code is based on a simple galactic coordinate binning. We bin, with a step (between  $0.02^\circ$  and  $0.04^\circ$ ) that depends on the field, all stars from the data catalogue and we obtain the number density, for each of these squares. We proceed in the same way for the simulated catalogue and we reject stars that are inside squares of null density. We show in figure 6.2 the result of the masking on field 2537. We check that the processes do not eliminate stars in regions outside the holes.

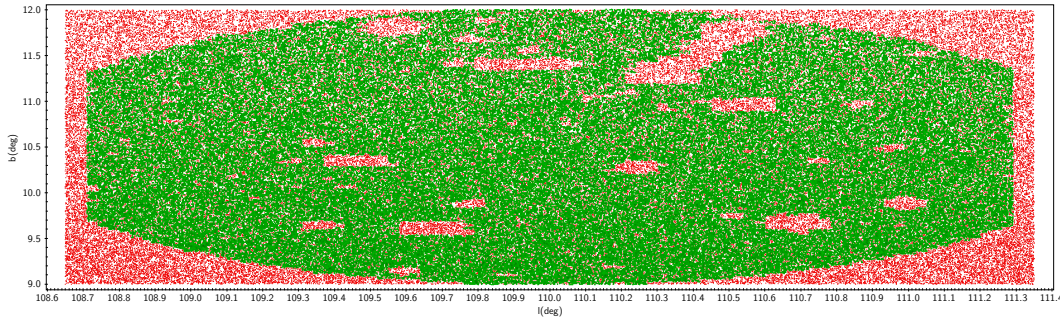


Figure 6.2: The green points are the masked simulation and the red points are the full simulation for the field 2537.

## 6.2 Extinction

From figure 6.1 we see the difference in star density between the right and left side of the observed field due to extinction in these low latitude fields. The next step was to overcome the extinction effects.

Simulated stars have to be reddened accordingly to real data. To simulate extinction, we considered 3 extinction models:

- Schlegel et al. (1998) (hereafter SFD maps) is a full-sky map based in COBE/DIRBE and IRAS/ISSA maps. Since it gives the total line of sight extinction it overestimates the extinction of stars which are at short distances.
- Drimmel & Spergel (2001) (hereafter DS maps) a complex model of the extinction which takes into account spiral arms, including the local arm, and is calibrated on SFD maps for the total extinction.
- Marshall et al. (2006) is a 3D extinction model based on the Besançon Galaxy model. Unfortunately the maps have been done for low latitudes only ( $|b| < 10$ ) and cannot be used in the majority of the fields described in this work.

We inspected the extinction distribution across the different fields in the SFD maps. We noticed that the extinction is highly variable across the fields in the total extinction in g band ( $A_g$ ). In the most favorable case the extinction range can be of 1 magnitude, but in some fields it can reach 4 to 8 magnitudes. In figures 6.3 and 6.4 we map the Schlegel et al. (1998) extinction in galactic coordinates, which allows to inspect the large extinction variation.

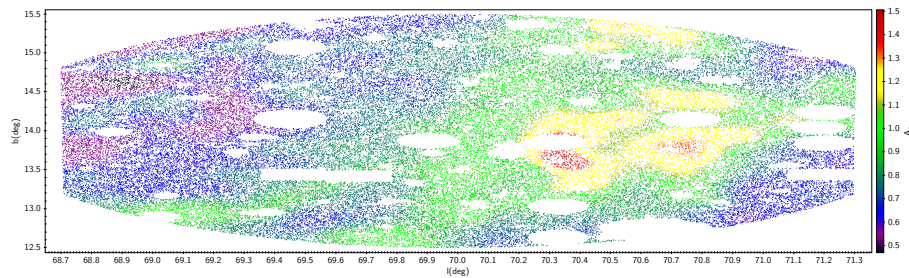


Figure 6.3: Map of the Schlegel et al. (1998) extinction in the g band for the field 2536. We can see in this figure regions where the extinction is homogeneous and low and regions where the extinction is higher.

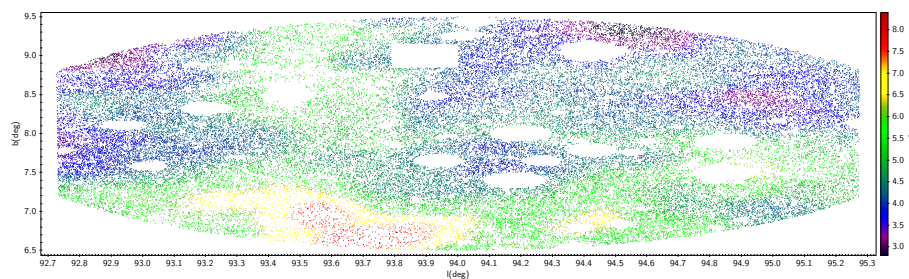


Figure 6.4: Map of the Schlegel et al. (1998) extinction in the g band for the field 2555. We can see in this figure regions where the extinction in g band can reach 8 magnitudes.

The most suitable extinction model for our purpose is the Drimmel & Spergel (2001) (hereafter DS) model because it is a 3D full-sky extinction model. However DS maps have lower resolution than SFD maps. In figure 6.5 we present the field 2536, in galactic coordinates where absorption is color coded. The squares mark the spatial resolution of the model. Although there is not a smooth transition, compared to Schlegel et al. (1998), between regions we still recover the regions where the extinction has a maximum in the Schlegel et al. (1998) extinction maps.

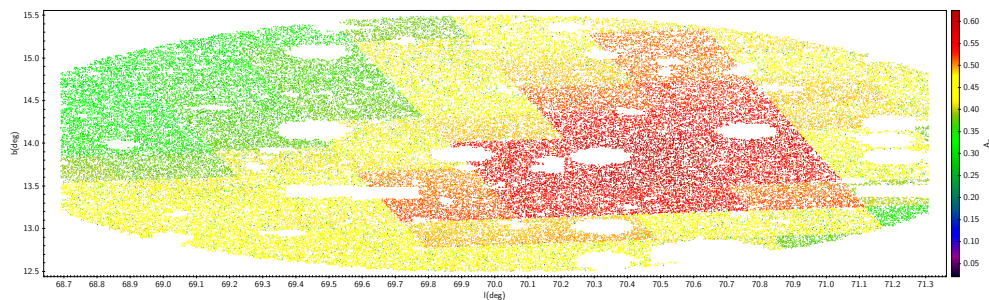


Figure 6.5: Map of the Drimmel & Spergel (2001) extinction model in the g band for the field 2536.



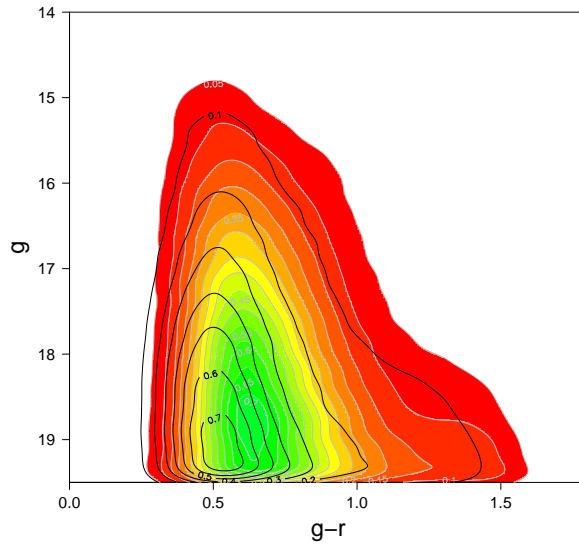


Figure 6.6: Color magnitude diagram for the field 2536 (l,b)=(70°,14°). Density map along with grey contours are observations. Black contours are simulations.

The relation between the extinction and reddening is given by  $E(B-V) = A_V/R_V$  where  $R_V = 3.1$  is a single extinction law assuming a diffuse gas with reasonably uniform dust properties in the visible (Schultz & Wiemer 1975; Schlegel et al. 1998).  $R_V$  can take values in the between 2.5 and 6 for different lines of sight but in general  $\sim 3.1$  is correct. The reddening is related with extinction in the Sloan photometric system by the following equations 6.2 (Table 22 from Stoughton et al. (2002)).

$$\begin{aligned}
 A_u &= 5.155 \times E(B - V) \\
 A_g &= 3.793 \times E(B - V) \\
 A_r &= 2.751 \times E(B - V) \\
 A_i &= 2.086 \times E(B - V) \\
 A_z &= 1.479 \times E(B - V)
 \end{aligned}
 \tag{6.1}$$

After applying the DS maps to our simulations we plotted the CMD for the different fields. We compare the density in the simulation with SDSS data for two fields in figures 6.6 and 6.7. Figure 6.6 shows a small shift of the turnoff color of the simulated CMD by an amount of 0.15 at maximum in g-r. Figure 6.7 compares the star density in the CMD for field 2555 where the extinction is larger. The model is clearly too blue by  $\sim 0.6$  mag because DS map underestimates extinction in this field.

We developed a method to correct the magnitudes and color of stars in the simulated catalogue after the application of the Drimmel & Spergel (2001) extinction model. We estimated the color peak in g-r and r-i in each g magnitude bin and we minimized the distance between

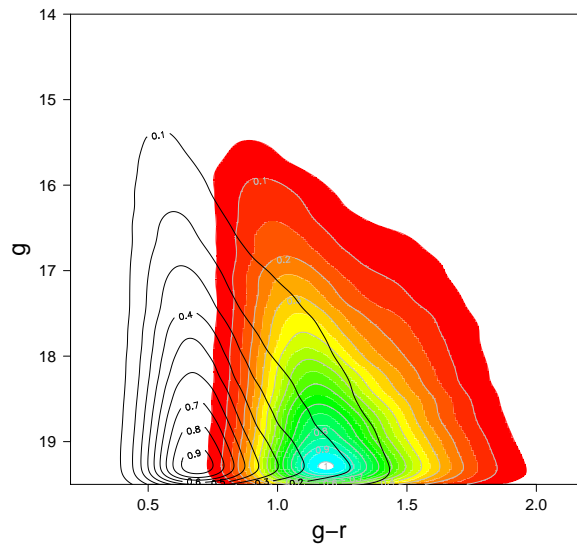


Figure 6.7: Color magnitude diagram for the field 2555 (l,b)=(94°,8°). Density map along with grey contours are observations. Black contours are simulations.

the color peaks of the simulations and observations. To correct the extinction we assumed that the correction depends on the distance by minimizing the deviation as a first order polynomial and we constraint the coefficients.

$$y_{star}(d) = b_0 + a_1 d \quad (6.2)$$

where  $y_{star}(d)$  is the correction applied to each star  $b_0$ ,  $a_1$  are the parameters to constrain and  $d$  is the distance in kpc. To obtain the best solution we use a modified  $\chi^2$  minimization. The result was not satisfactory when using the whole field, because different parts of the fields required different corrections. Considering that the majority of the low latitude fields is highly inhomogeneous, as shown above, we have divided each field in 9 areas. The total  $A_v$  as a function of the distance to the star before and after correction is shown for all fields from figure 6.8 to figure 6.17. Table 6.1 shows measures of central tendency (Mean and Mode) and of dispersion (Standard deviation) of the DS ( $d$ ) and DS with correction ( $dc$ ) extinction distribution for each field. The extinction dispersion is larger after the correction. The results show fields, as the field 2555, which needed a larger extinction correction and fields, as the 2556 and 2678, which the DS extinction model corrects better. We show in Table 6.2 the results for the coefficients for one simulation by field for a correction to the DS extinction model.

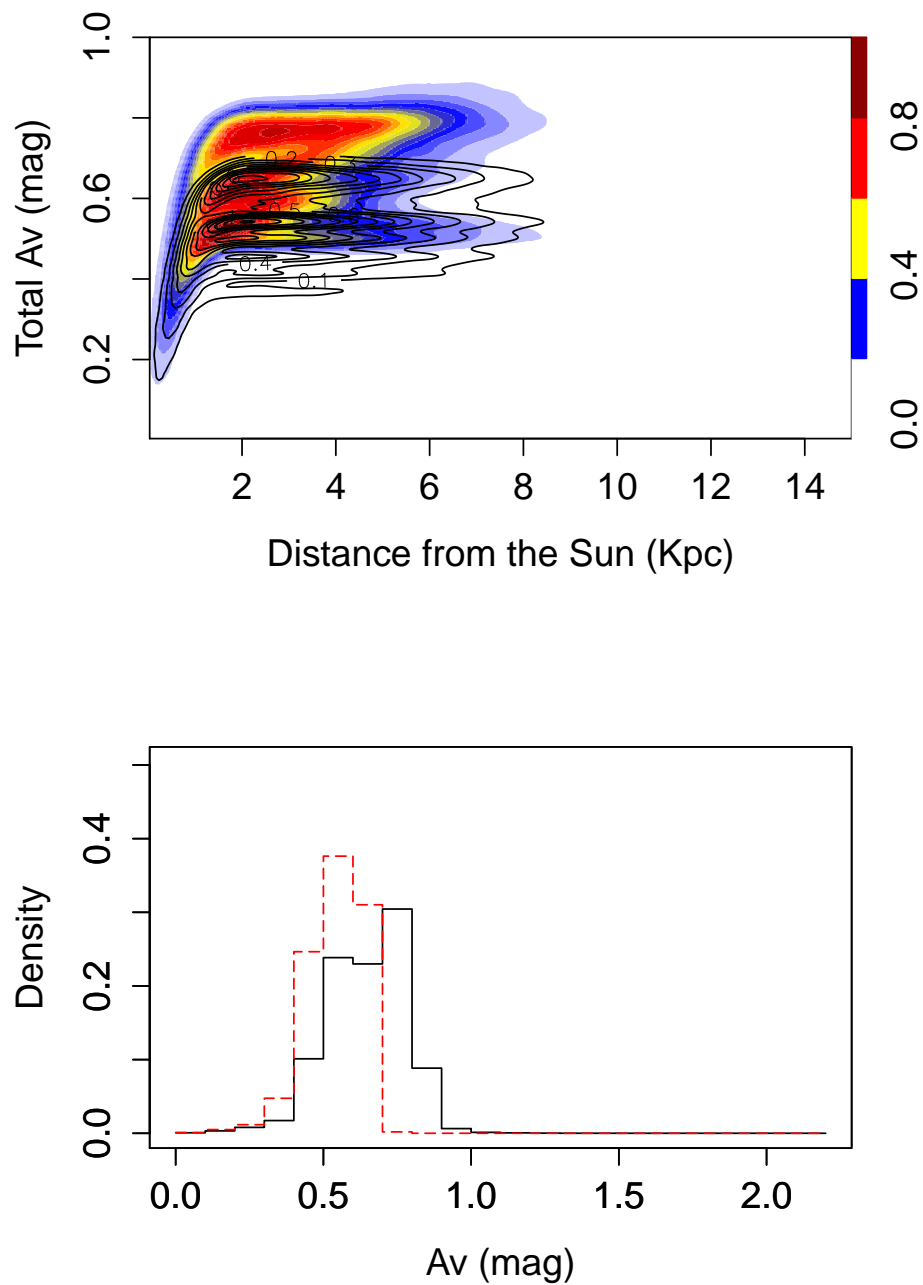


Figure 6.8: Top panel: Total  $A_v$  as a function of the distance from the Sun for field 2534  $(l,b)=(50^\circ,14^\circ)$ . Density contours are the total  $A_v$  after correction and black contours are before the correction. Bottom panel: Total  $A_v$  distribution before (red dashed line) and after correction (solid black line).

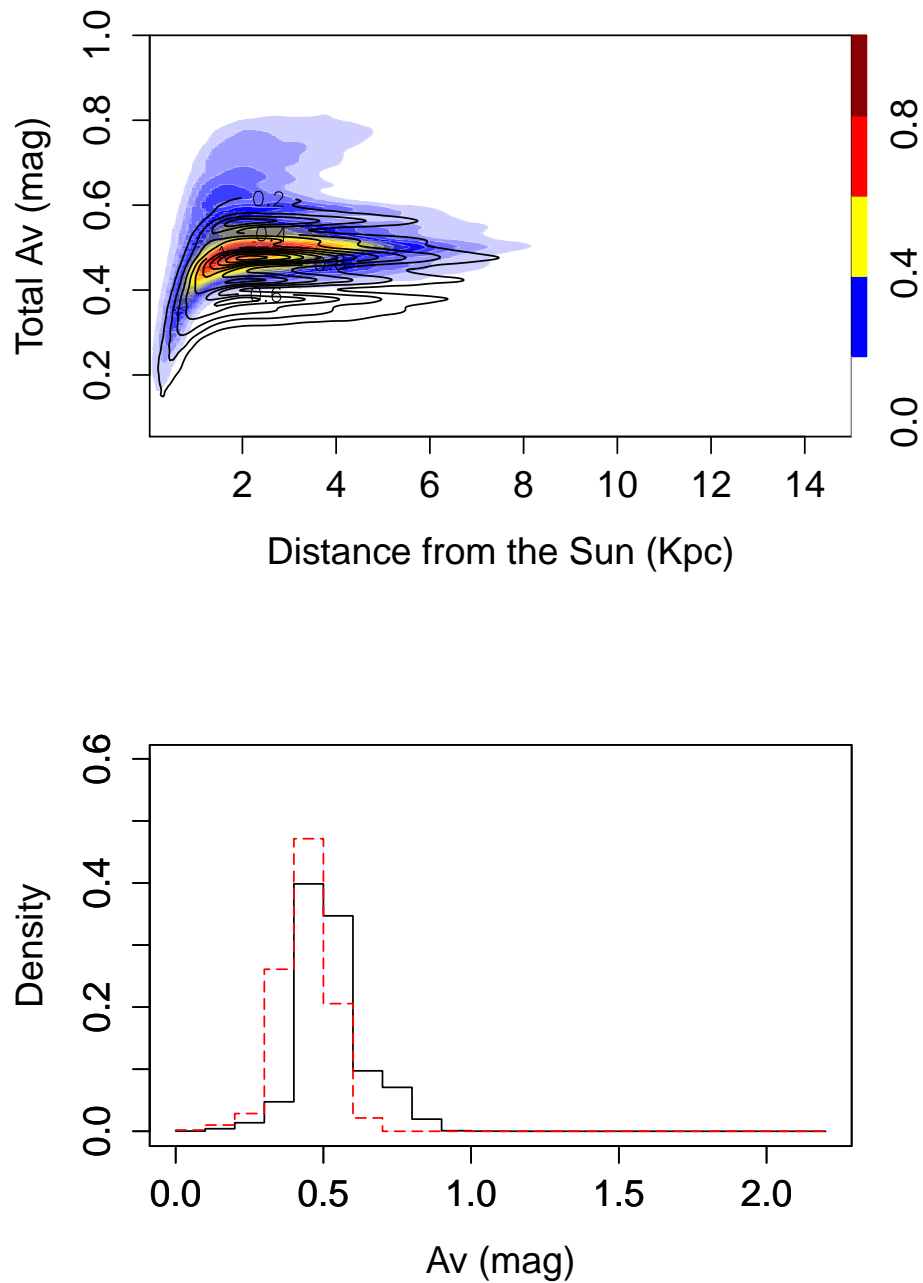


Figure 6.9: Total  $A_v$  as a function of the distance from the Sun for field 2536 (l,b)=(70°,14°). Density contours are the total  $A_v$  after correction and black contours are before the correction. Bottom panel: Total  $A_v$  distribution before (red dashed line) and after correction (solid black line).

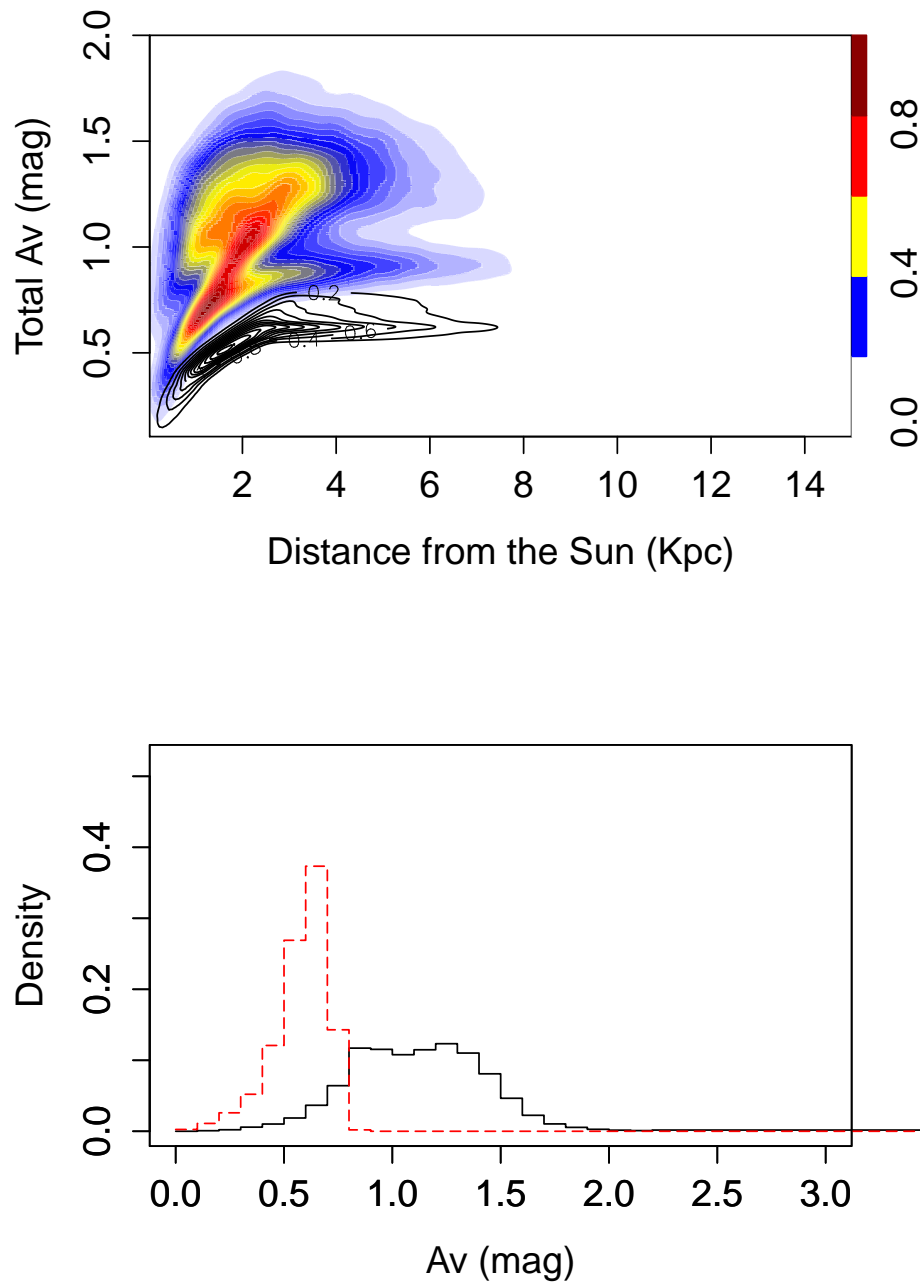


Figure 6.10: Total  $A_v$  as a function of the distance from the Sun for field 2537 (l,b)=(110°,10.5°). Density contours are the total  $A_v$  after correction and black contours are before the correction. Bottom panel: Total  $A_v$  distribution before (red dashed line) and after correction (solid black line).

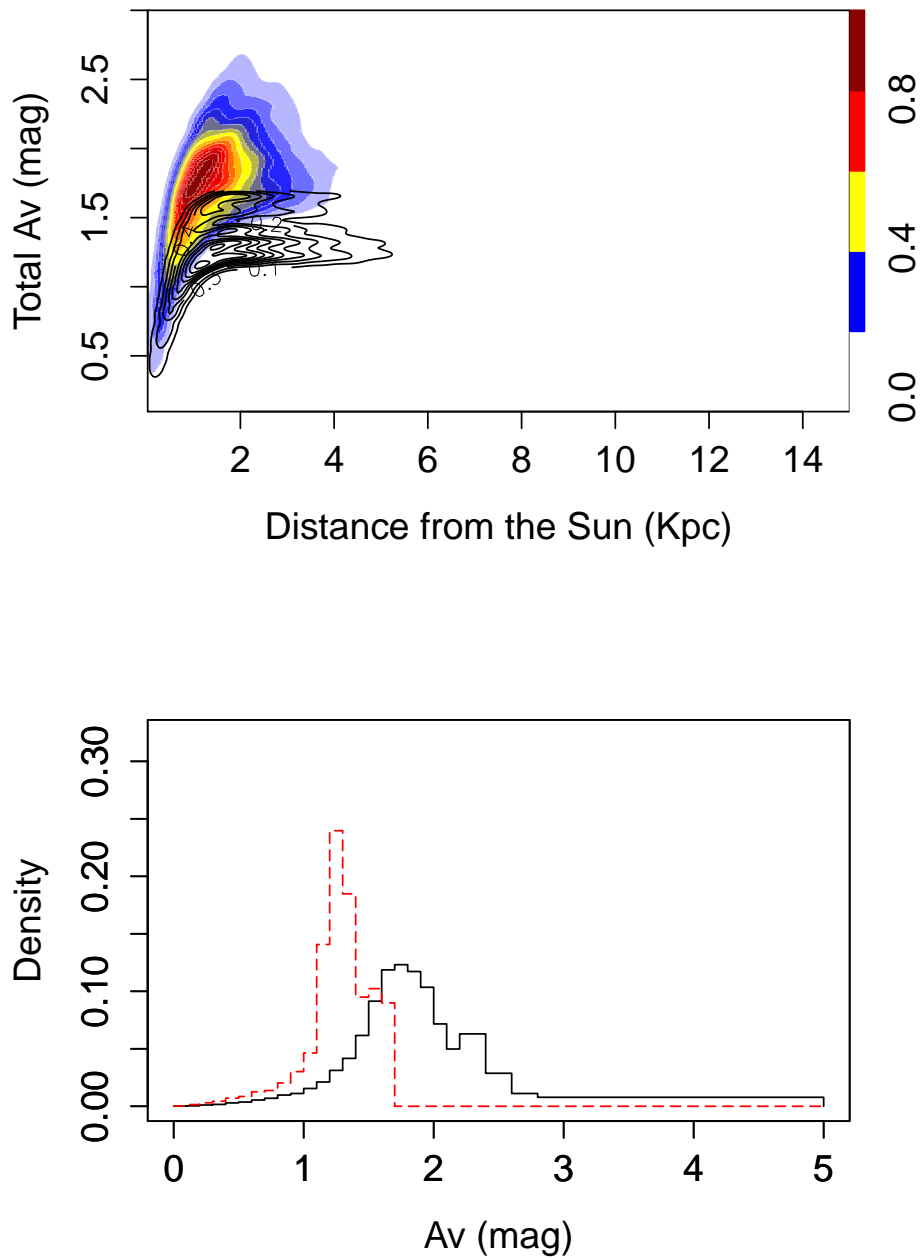


Figure 6.11: Total  $A_v$  as a function of the distance from the Sun for field 2538  $(l,b)=(110^\circ,16^\circ)$ . Density contours are the total  $A_v$  after correction and black contours are before the correction. Bottom panel: Total  $A_v$  distribution before (red dashed line) and after correction (solid black line).

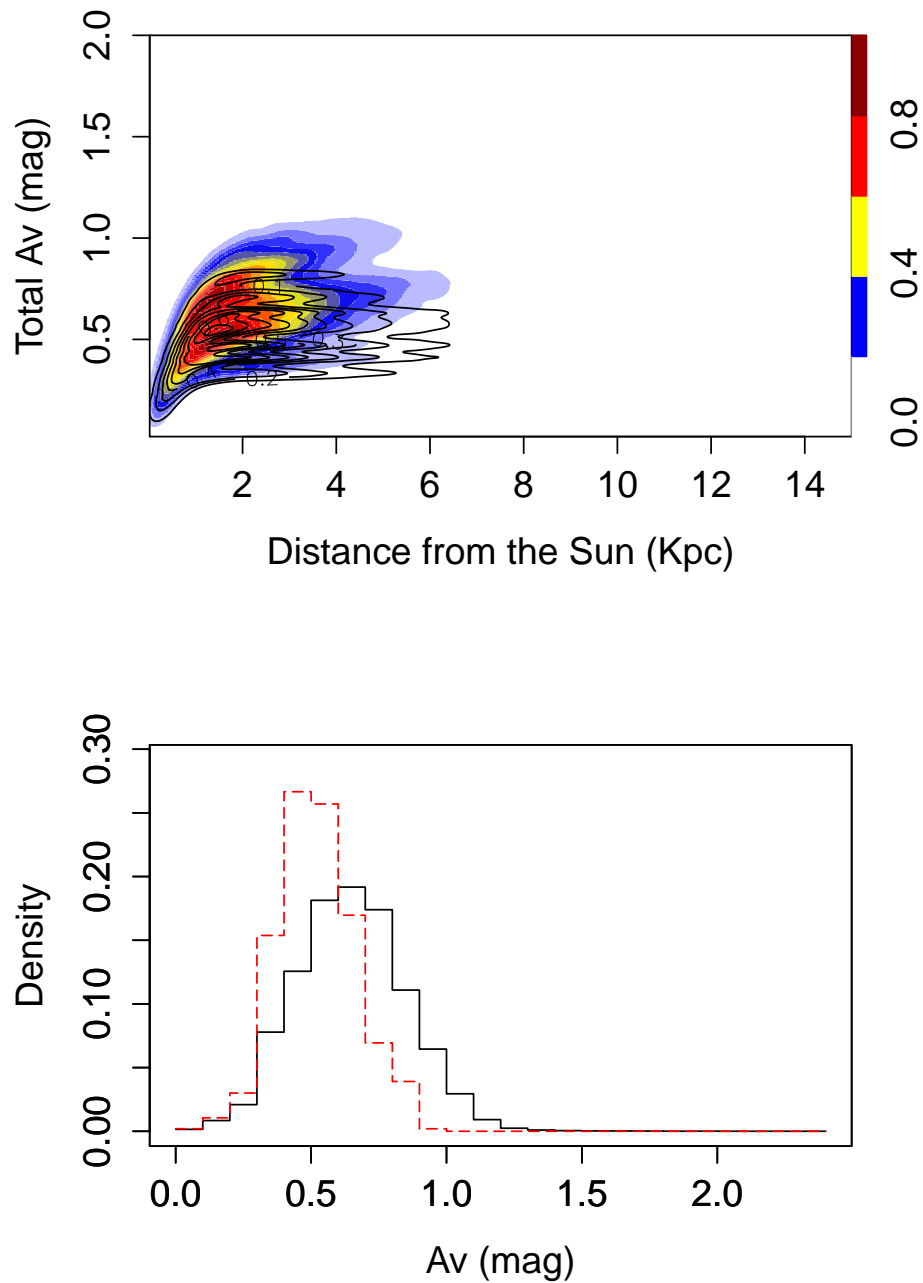


Figure 6.12: Total  $A_v$  as a function of the distance from the Sun for field 2554 (l,b)=(94°,14°). Density contours are the total  $A_v$  after correction and black contours are before the correction. Bottom panel: Total  $A_v$  distribution before (red dashed line) and after correction (solid black line).

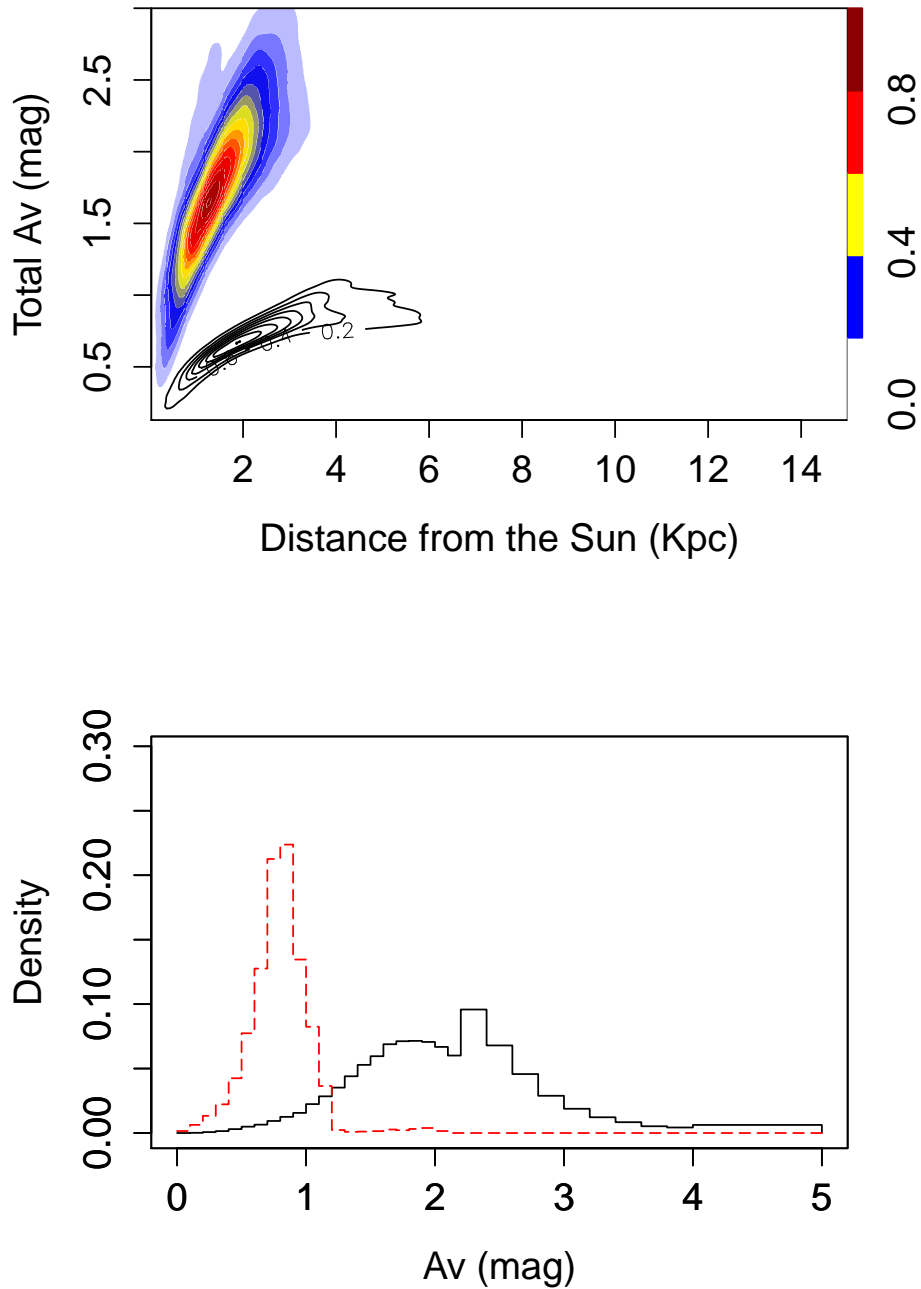


Figure 6.13: Total  $A_v$  as a function of the distance from the Sun for field 2555 (l,b)=(94°,8°). Density contours are the total  $A_v$  after correction and black contours are before the correction. Bottom panel: Total  $A_v$  distribution before (red dashed line) and after correction (solid black line).



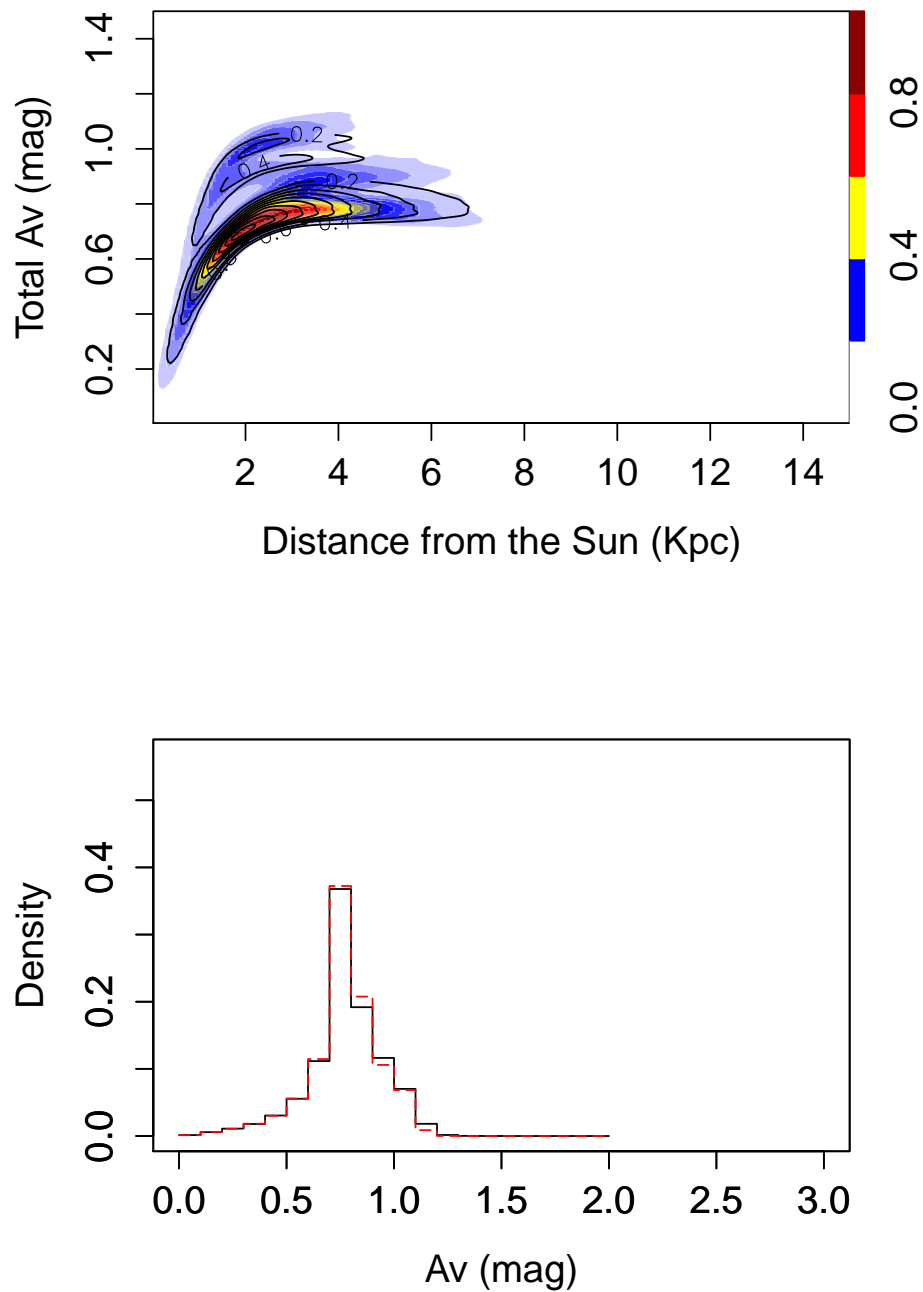


Figure 6.14: Total  $A_v$  as a function of the distance from the Sun for field 2556 (l,b)=(94°, -8°). Density contours are the total  $A_v$  after correction and black contours are before the correction. Bottom panel: Total  $A_v$  distribution before (red dashed line) and after correction (solid black line).

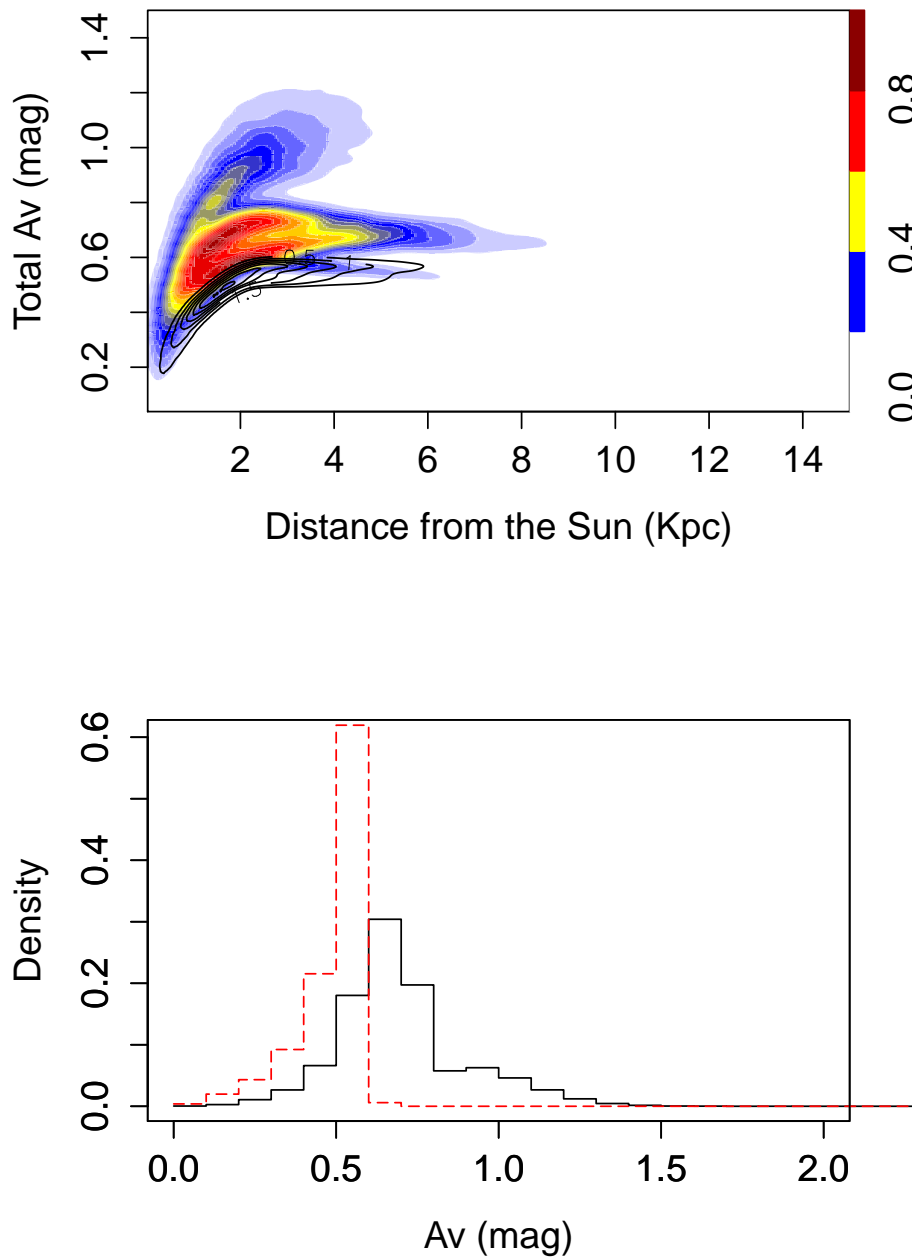


Figure 6.15: Total  $A_v$  as a function of the distance from the Sun for field 2668 (l,b)=(187°,-12°). Density contours are the total  $A_v$  after correction and black contours are before the correction. Bottom panel: Total  $A_v$  distribution before (red dashed line) and after correction (solid black line).

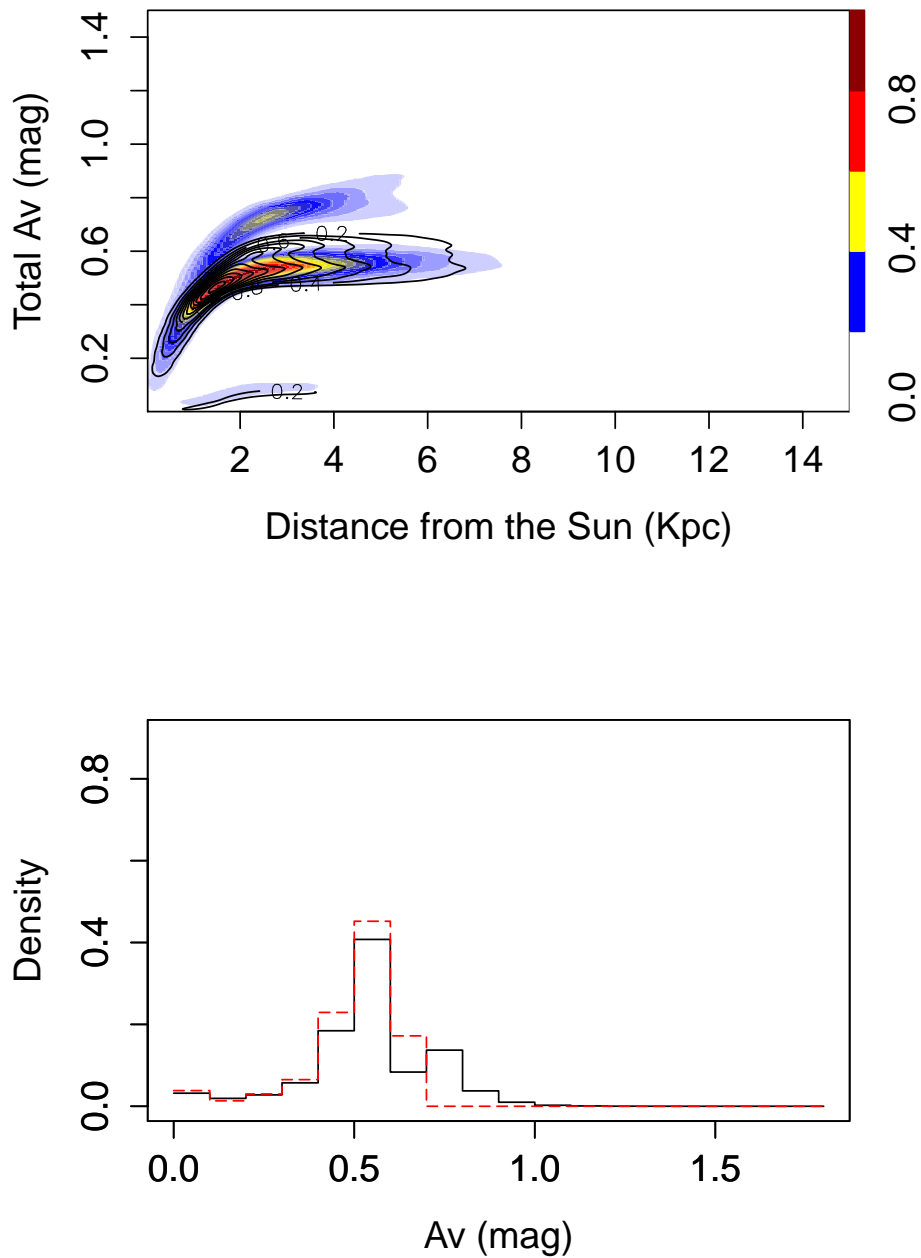


Figure 6.16: Total  $A_v$  as a function of the distance from the Sun for field 2678 (l,b)=(187°, -8°). Density contours are the total  $A_v$  after correction and black contours are before the correction. Bottom panel: Total  $A_v$  distribution before (red dashed line) and after correction (solid black line).

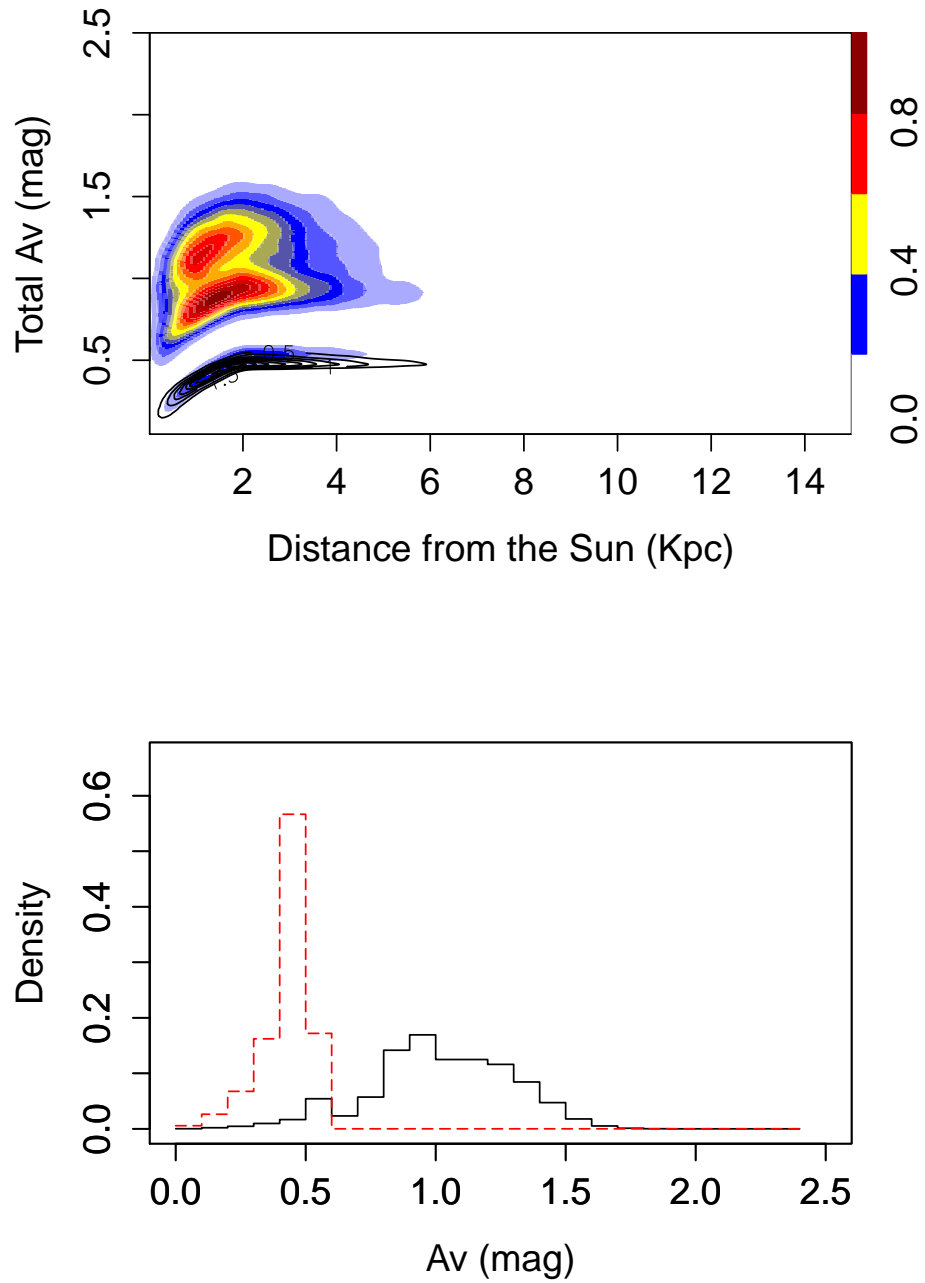


Figure 6.17: Total  $A_v$  as a function of the distance from the Sun for field 2681 ( $l, b$ ) = (178°, -15°). Density contours are the total  $A_v$  after correction and black contours are before the correction. Bottom panel: Total  $A_v$  distribution before (red dashed line) and after correction (solid black line).

Table 6.1: Mean, mode, and dispersion of the distribution of the total extinction in V band  $A_V$  before (B) and after (A) correction for each field

Field	Mean <sub>A</sub>	Mean <sub>B</sub>	Mode <sub>A</sub>	Mode <sub>B</sub>	$\sigma_A$	$\sigma_B$
2534	0.648	0.54	0.773	0.54	0.131	0.096
2536	0.525	0.443	0.5	0.476	0.11	0.086
2537	1.117	0.579	0.888	0.621	0.302	0.126
2538	1.752	1.277	1.74	1.224	0.405	0.249
2554	0.649	0.52	0.696	0.47	0.201	0.143
2555	1.934	0.796	1.839	0.804	0.635	0.234
2556	0.775	0.768	0.767	0.763	0.172	0.165
2668	0.699	0.488	0.66	0.564	0.196	0.099
2678	0.541	0.496	0.539	0.518	0.171	0.13
2681	1.021	0.433	0.916	0.472	0.269	0.09

Table 6.2:

Coefficients from the equation 6.2 for the correction to the DS extinction model. The different lines in each field are the different regions in the field where the program has been implemented. The regions were selected, from 1 to 9, firstly from decreasing galactic latitude and then from increasing galactic longitude.

Field	Region	$b_0$	$a_1$	$\chi^2$
2534	1	$-5.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$4.5 \times 10^{-02}$	$6.7 \times 10^{-02}$
2534	2	$-2.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$5.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$9.8 \times 10^{-02}$
2534	3	$2.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$2.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$7.2 \times 10^{-02}$
2534	4	$1.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$1.5 \times 10^{-02}$	0.10
2534	5	$-1.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$3.5 \times 10^{-02}$	$7.9 \times 10^{-02}$
2534	6	$6.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$1.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$7.8 \times 10^{-02}$
2534	7	$7.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$5.0 \times 10^{-03}$	$8.3 \times 10^{-02}$
2534	8	$1.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$3.0 \times 10^{-02}$	0.11
2534	9	$-3.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$4.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$7.5 \times 10^{-02}$
2536	1	$3.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$1.5 \times 10^{-02}$	0.17
2536	2	$-4.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$3.5 \times 10^{-02}$	0.13
2536	3	$-9.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$4.5 \times 10^{-02}$	0.12
2536	4	$2.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$1.5 \times 10^{-02}$	0.11
2536	5	$-7.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$3.0 \times 10^{-02}$	0.12
2536	6	$2.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$5.0 \times 10^{-03}$	$9.1 \times 10^{-02}$
2536	7	$-7.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$5.0 \times 10^{-02}$	0.14
2536	8	$4.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$1.5 \times 10^{-02}$	$9.0 \times 10^{-02}$
2536	9	$-5.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$2.5 \times 10^{-02}$	$8.7 \times 10^{-02}$

*continued from previous page*

Field	Region	$b_0$	$a_1$	$\chi^2$
2537	1	0.19	$-5.0 \times 10^{-03}$	0.13
2537	2	0.1	0.0	0.13
2537	3	0.18	$5.0 \times 10^{-03}$	$5.9 \times 10^{-02}$
2537	4	0.34	$1.5 \times 10^{-02}$	$4.9 \times 10^{-02}$
2537	5	0.14	$1.5 \times 10^{-02}$	$7.7 \times 10^{-02}$
2537	6	0.17	$5.0 \times 10^{-03}$	$8.5 \times 10^{-02}$
2537	7	0.29	$1.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$7.1 \times 10^{-02}$
2537	8	0.27	$5.0 \times 10^{-03}$	$7.2 \times 10^{-02}$
2537	9	0.22	$2.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$4.9 \times 10^{-02}$
2538	1	$9.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$6.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$5.8 \times 10^{-02}$
2538	2	0.20	$3.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$2.6 \times 10^{-02}$
2538	3	0.30	$-2.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$2.4 \times 10^{-02}$
2538	4	0.40	$-6.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$1.6 \times 10^{-02}$
2538	5	0.19	$-2.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$2.9 \times 10^{-02}$
2538	6	0.17	$2.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$3.4 \times 10^{-02}$
2538	7	0.28	$5.0 \times 10^{-03}$	$6.5 \times 10^{-02}$
2538	8	0.19	$1.5 \times 10^{-02}$	$3.8 \times 10^{-02}$
2538	9	0.1	$5.0 \times 10^{-03}$	$3.5 \times 10^{-02}$
2554	1	$6.0 \times 10^{-02}$	0.0	0.18
2554	2	$-8.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$4.5 \times 10^{-02}$	0.11
2554	3	-0.12	$6.5 \times 10^{-02}$	0.12
2554	4	$3.0 \times 10^{-02}$	0.0	0.18
2554	5	$-4.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$3.0 \times 10^{-02}$	0.21
2554	6	$-3.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$3.5 \times 10^{-02}$	0.11
2554	7	$-1.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$2.5 \times 10^{-02}$	0.16
2554	8	$-5.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$2.5 \times 10^{-02}$	0.14
2554	9	0.11	0.0	0.10
2555	1	0.42	$2.5 \times 10^{-02}$	$4.5 \times 10^{-02}$
2555	2	0.46	$5.0 \times 10^{-03}$	$4.3 \times 10^{-02}$
2555	3	0.68	$5.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$6.3 \times 10^{-02}$
2555	4	0.40	$3.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$2.9 \times 10^{-02}$
2555	5	0.43	$3.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$6.9 \times 10^{-02}$
2555	6	0.47	$3.5 \times 10^{-02}$	$5.3 \times 10^{-02}$
2555	7	0.41	$4.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$4.8 \times 10^{-02}$
2555	8	0.45	$3.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$3.5 \times 10^{-02}$
2555	9	0.51	$1.5 \times 10^{-02}$	$3.0 \times 10^{-02}$
2556	1	$4.0 \times 10^{-02}$	0.0	0.10
2556	2	$-2.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$1.0 \times 10^{-02}$	0.13
2556	3	$-2.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$1.0 \times 10^{-02}$	0.10
2556	4	$-2.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$5.0 \times 10^{-03}$	0.10
2556	5	$2.0 \times 10^{-02}$	0.0	$8.6 \times 10^{-02}$

*continued from previous page*

Field	Region	$b_0$	$a_1$	$\chi^2$
2556	6	$-4.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$3.0 \times 10^{-02}$	0.10
2556	7	$7.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$-1.0 \times 10^{-02}$	0.13
2556	8	$3.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$-1.0 \times 10^{-02}$	0.12
2556	9	$2.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$1.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$5.8 \times 10^{-02}$
2668	1	$9.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$-1.0 \times 10^{-02}$	0.22
2668	2	$5.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$-5.0 \times 10^{-03}$	0.11
2668	3	$-8.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$2.0 \times 10^{-02}$	0.40
2668	4	$6.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$-5.0 \times 10^{-03}$	0.18
2668	5	$1.0 \times 10^{-02}$	0.0	0.33
2668	6	$6.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$5.0 \times 10^{-03}$	0.18
2668	7	$2.0 \times 10^{-02}$	0.0	0.12
2668	8	0.12	$-1.0 \times 10^{-02}$	0.21
2668	9	0.1	$5.0 \times 10^{-03}$	$3.5 \times 10^{-02}$
2678	1	$-9.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$1.5 \times 10^{-02}$	0.36
2678	2	$-3.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$1.5 \times 10^{-02}$	0.22
2678	3	$8.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$-1.0 \times 10^{-02}$	0.11
2678	4	$-8.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$1.0 \times 10^{-02}$	0.22
2678	5	$-6.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$-5.0 \times 10^{-03}$	0.23
2678	6	$1.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$5.0 \times 10^{-03}$	0.15
2678	7	$-7.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$1.5 \times 10^{-02}$	0.35
2678	8	$-3.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$1.0 \times 10^{-02}$	0.23
2678	9	$2.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$1.0 \times 10^{-02}$	0.11
2681	1	0.0	0.0	$7.4 \times 10^{-02}$
2681	2	0.16	$3.5 \times 10^{-02}$	$4.4 \times 10^{-02}$
2681	3	$8.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$-1.5 \times 10^{-02}$	$1.7 \times 10^{-02}$
2681	4	0.25	$1.5 \times 10^{-02}$	$7.0 \times 10^{-02}$
2681	5	0.26	$-5.0 \times 10^{-03}$	$8.7 \times 10^{-02}$
2681	6	0.20	$1.5 \times 10^{-02}$	$6.6 \times 10^{-02}$
2681	7	$-3.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$2.5 \times 10^{-02}$	0.15
2681	8	$7.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$2.0 \times 10^{-02}$	0.22
2681	9	$9.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$4.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$7.5 \times 10^{-02}$

Table 6.2 show the results of the fit. We tested the same method using the Marshall et al. (2006) 3D extinction model in the two directions where the maps exist. Results are given in Table 6.3 again with a second order equal to zero.

The smaller coefficients (in special  $b_0$ ) in Table 6.3 show that Marshall et al. (2006) 3D extinction model values are systematically higher that the ones produced by DS maps for field 2555 therefore Marshall et al. (2006) model is closer to reality. For example one star at a distance of 2 kpc in the first region of the field 2555 will have a correction of  $A_v = 0.47$  with DS maps and of  $A_v = 0.21$  with Marshall maps. Regarding field 2556 the results are equivalent.

Table 6.3:  
Coefficients from the equation 6.2 for the correction to the Marshall extinction model. The different lines in each field are the different regions in the field where the program has been implemented. The regions were selected as in table 6.2

Field	Region	$b_0$	$a_1$	$\chi^2$
2555	1	0.31	$-5.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$4.5 \times 10^{-02}$
2555	2	0.19	$-1.5 \times 10^{-02}$	$6.9 \times 10^{-02}$
2555	3	0.49	$-5.0 \times 10^{-03}$	$3.9 \times 10^{-02}$
2555	4	0.20	$2.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$3.4 \times 10^{-02}$
2555	5	0.22	$2.5 \times 10^{-02}$	$4.5 \times 10^{-02}$
2555	6	0.30	$-5.5 \times 10^{-02}$	$3.2 \times 10^{-02}$
2555	7	0.31	$-2.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$3.5 \times 10^{-02}$
2555	8	0.19	$2.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$3.9 \times 10^{-02}$
2555	9	0.16	$3.5 \times 10^{-02}$	$4.2 \times 10^{-02}$
2556	1	0.0	0.0	0.10
2556	2	$1.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$5.0 \times 10^{-02}$	0.13
2556	3	$9.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$-2.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$8.8 \times 10^{-02}$
2556	4	$1.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$-5.0 \times 10^{-03}$	$9.9 \times 10^{-02}$
2556	5	$-5.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$2.5 \times 10^{-02}$	0.15
2556	6	$2.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$5.0 \times 10^{-03}$	0.12
2556	7	$3.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$-5.0 \times 10^{-03}$	0.11
2556	8	$4.0 \times 10^{-02}$	0.0	0.12
2556	9	$-2.0 \times 10^{-02}$	$1.5 \times 10^{-02}$	$8.2 \times 10^{-02}$



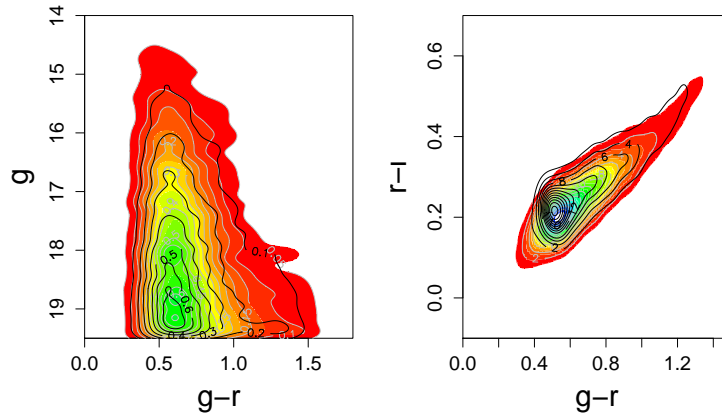


Figure 6.18: Color-magnitude diagram for region one of field 2555 (l,b)=(94°,8°). Density map along with grey contours are observations. Black contours are simulations.

We then checked the correction using the CMD and CCD. For example 6.18 shows them for field 2555 region 1. The color peaks in density are the same for simulations and observations and the contours of equal density follow similar patterns. The color-color diagrams have now a maximum density at the same position. The result for each region suggests that the extinction correction is done properly.

### 6.3 The S/N, proper motions and spectral parameter errors

We have to compute S/N and observational errors from data and apply them to the simulated spectroscopic parameters. The S/N ratio is computed by fitting a regression of the S/N as a function of the r magnitude from the observations, as shown in figure 6.19 for the plate 2668, and applying it to simulations. The results of the regression are shown in Table 6.4

A similar procedure was made to simulate the error on the metallicity, effective temperature, log g and radial velocity as a function of g magnitude (we tried as a function of S/N but the relation was less robust). Figure 6.20 shows the relation for each of the parameters for plate 2699. Discussions with the SEGUE collaborations suggested to use instead a fix value for all magnitudes, otherwise the errors are underestimated, therefore we assume errors of 0.23 dex, 180 K and 0.24 dex respectively for metallicity, effective temperature and log g (Smolinski et al. 2011). For the radial velocity we use the above method and the relations are given in Table 6.5. The proper motions errors are 4.0 and 3.0 mas/yr, respectively for right ascension and declination (Munn et al. 2004).

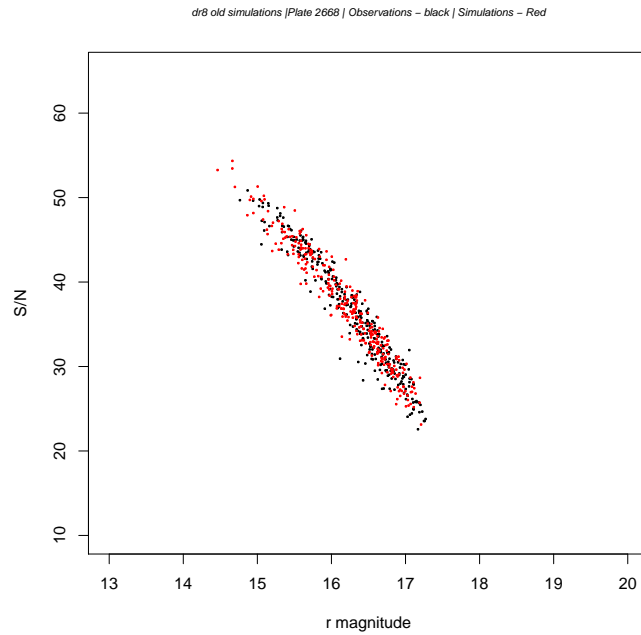


Figure 6.19: S/N as a function of the r magnitude for the plate 2668. Black points are observations and red points are simulations after applying the fit.

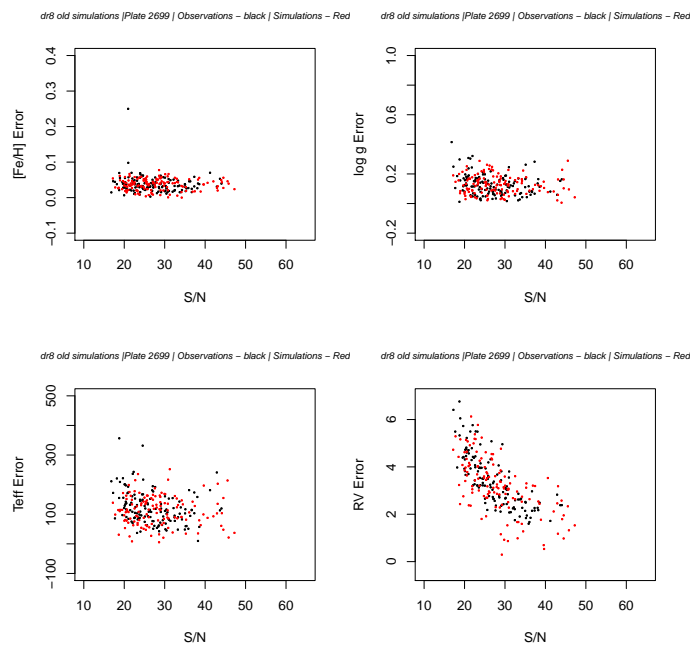


Figure 6.20: Parameter errors as a function of the S/N for plate 2699. Top left panel shows the metallicity error, bottom left: effective temperature, top right: gravity, bottom right: radial velocity.

Table 6.4:  
Regression laws for S/N as a function of r magnitude.

Plate	Intercept	First order coeff	Second order coeff
2534	-140.105	26.723	-1.031
2542	725.417	-59.799	1.177
2536	-96.420	28.062	-1.227
2544	905.727	-81.267	1.810
2537	470.189	-38.371	0.701
2545	1106.387	-101.715	2.323
2538	-216.600	43.937	-1.752
2546	511.941	-38.883	0.657
2554	180.188	-6.374	-0.161
2564	1084.935	-96.781	2.135
2555	-85.562	26.813	-1.201
2565	337.625	-16.736	-0.031
2556	-95.128	27.533	-1.187
2566	563.282	-43.077	0.747
2668	-106.999	29.211	-1.253
2672	1139.407	-102.340	2.273
2678	-62.228	23.342	-1.064
2696	1306.661	-121.831	2.830
2681	714.959	-62.058	1.274
2699	321.883	-21.236	0.255

Table 6.5:  
Regression laws for radial velocity errors as function of  $g$  magnitude for each plates.

Parameter	Plate	Intercept	First order coeff
RV (Bright)	2536	-5.3942	0.4116
RV (Faint)	2544	-23.6218	1.4077
RV (Bright)	2537	-22.3452	1.4876
RV (Faint)	2545	-34.5212	2.0194
RV (Bright)	2538	-3.7817	0.3152
RV (Faint)	2546	-18.4919	1.1361
RV (Bright)	2554	-6.0450	0.4490
RV (Faint)	2564	-14.4728	0.8912
RV (Bright)	2555	-1.7838	0.2121
RV (Faint)	2565	-15.8153	0.9916
RV (Bright)	2556	-6.1129	0.4423
RV (Faint)	2566	-11.3316	0.7321
RV (Bright)	2668	-6.1456	0.4696
RV (Faint)	2672	-21.7431	1.3253

## 6.4 Selection Sample

We have selected two stellar categories from the spectroscopic sample: Main Sequence Turnoff stars and K giants. We have selected Main Sequence Turnoff stars because they enable the study of gradients and chemical distribution for main sequence stars at large distances. We selected K giants because they were assigned around 300 fibers by plate are highly luminous stars and relatively old stars which allow to study the galactic evolution and chemical distributions at large distances. In the following sections we describe the selection sample for each of targeted categories.

### 6.4.1 Main Sequence turnoff selection

For the Main Sequence turnoff (MSTO) selection we have followed Cheng et al. (2012b) selection sample, which is summarized as follows:

1. Remove all stars with  $g > 20$  and  $i < 14.2$ , to ensure high quality spectroscopy.
2. Remove regions of highest extinction to maximize the number of high quality spectroscopy. For each half of the plate we estimate the 75th percentile of the E(B-V) dis-

tribution (Schlegel et al. (1998)), and remove the objects where  $E(B-V)$  is larger than the higher of the 75th percentile values.

3. Apply the SFD extinction and examine  $(g - r)_{SFD}$  distribution in bins of  $g_{SFD}$  (1 mag wide)
4. For each distribution, find the peak  $(g - r)_{SFD}$  of the MSTO, in each  $g$  bin.
5. Determine the  $(g - r)_{half-max}$  (color distribution is half of the maximum value) on the blue side.
6. The red cut for each bin is defined as
 
$$(g - r)_{red-cut} = (g - r)_{peak} + (g - r)_{half-max} + 0.25$$
7. Fit a line to  $(g - r)_{red-cut}$  as a function of the mean  $g_{SFD}$  of all stars in the bin.
8. The stars present in the blue side of the line will be considered suitable candidates for being main sequence turnoff stars.

The selection is applied on the simulated catalogue following the same method. We bin the samples in bins of  $g$  magnitude (0.1) and  $g-r$  color (0.05) and select from the simulated catalogue the same number of stars in magnitude and color present in the observed catalogue. The total number of stars in both catalogs is 5368.

### 6.4.2 K giants selection

For the K giants the selection criteria described in the SDSS/SEGUE selection criteria page is followed (Yanny et al. 2009). For the K giants criteria, the  $g$  magnitude has to be lower than 19.0, the color cut is  $0.55 < (g - r) < 0.9$  and the total proper motion  $PM_{Total} < 11mas/yr$ . Applying these constrains to the observed sample a final catalog of selected K giants is obtained. An equal procedure is done to the simulated catalog having previously corrected the photometry with the DS extinction model and the extinction correction program. Then we use the above described binning in color and magnitude in order to select the same number of stars and CMD distribution in the simulations as in the data.

# Chapter 7

## Photometric results

### 7.1 Comparison between observations and simulations

In the following sections we qualitatively compare magnitude, color and proper motion distributions from simulations (sim) and observations (obs) from SEGUE fields. We have grouped the fields by similar longitudes or latitudes that are described in the beginning of each section.

#### 7.1.1 Fields 2534 and 2536

These two fields are located at a different galactic longitudes ( $l_{2534} = 50^\circ$  &  $l_{2536} = 70^\circ$ ) but the galactic latitude is the same ( $b_{2534/2536} = 14^\circ$ ). When we compare observations and simulations for these two fields the results are quite similar. These directions suffer from a small amount of extinction across the field and the simulations reproduce well the star counts for each region individually and for the total sample. In figure 7.1 it is shown the magnitude distribution along with the number of stars in each catalog and the ratio between both for each of the regions of the field 2536. 7.2 presents color distributions along with the mode in each catalog for each of the regions of the field 2536. Field 2534 has a similar behaviour. The ratio of the number of stars in simulations to the number of stars in the observations remains constant for each region and there is a good agreement between observations and simulations. The modes of the distribution in each catalog agrees for each region.

Figure 7.3 presents the parameters distributions for the all area of field 2536. The two top histograms show a good agreement between observations and simulations for the magnitude and color distributions. The two proper motion (l and b) histograms show that observations, for the fields in question, have a peak around 0 what is not represented in the simulations for the l component of the proper motion. This shift is more prominent in these two fields but can be also seen in other directions. This is out of the scope of this thesis and will be the subject of another study. Figure 7.4 show that these directions have a large contribution from the thick

---

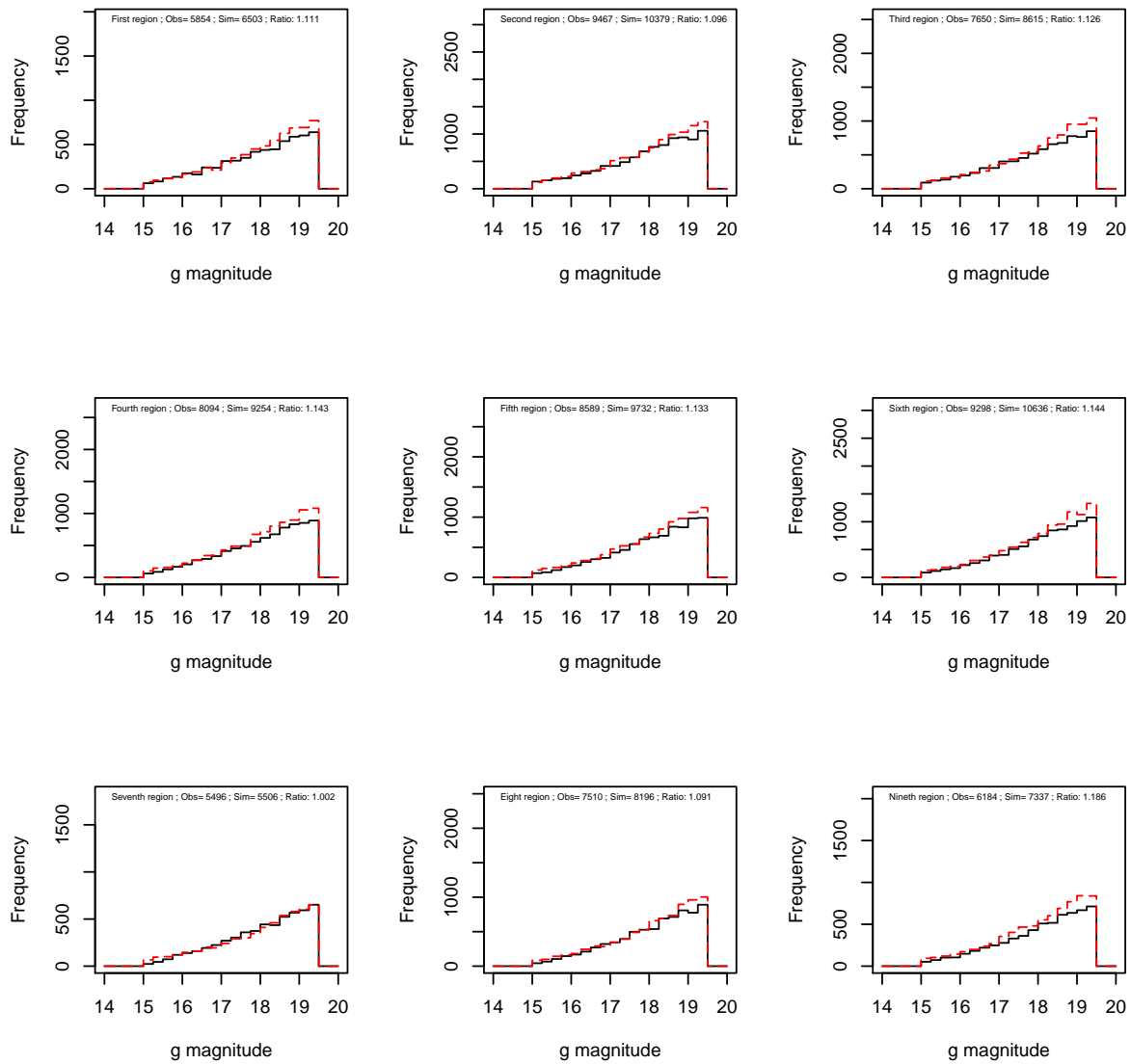


Figure 7.1: Magnitude distribution for each individual region of the field 2536. The black histograms are observations and the red histograms are simulations.

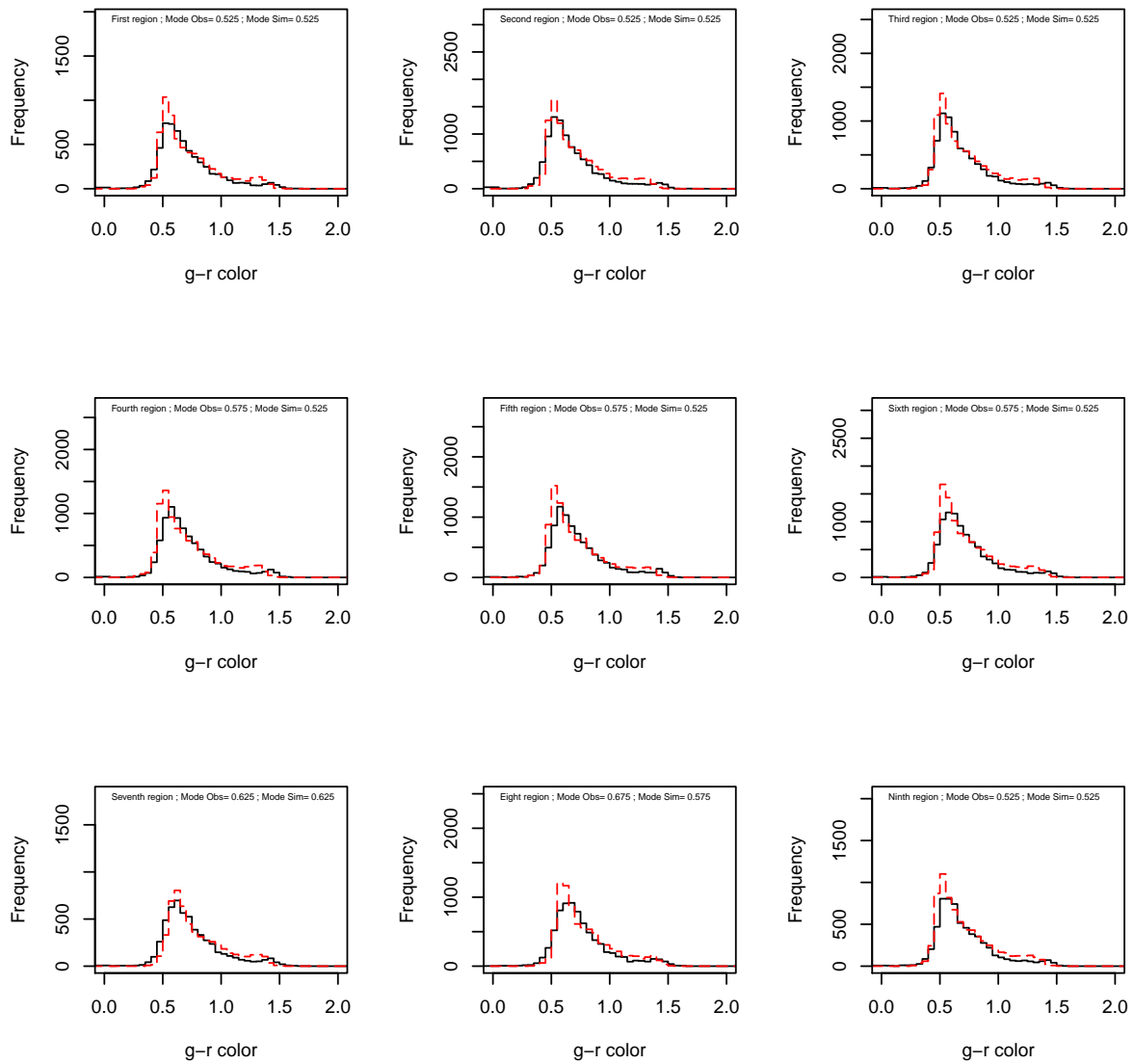


Figure 7.2: Color distribution for each individual region of the field 2536. The black histograms are observations and the red histograms are simulations.



disc.

---

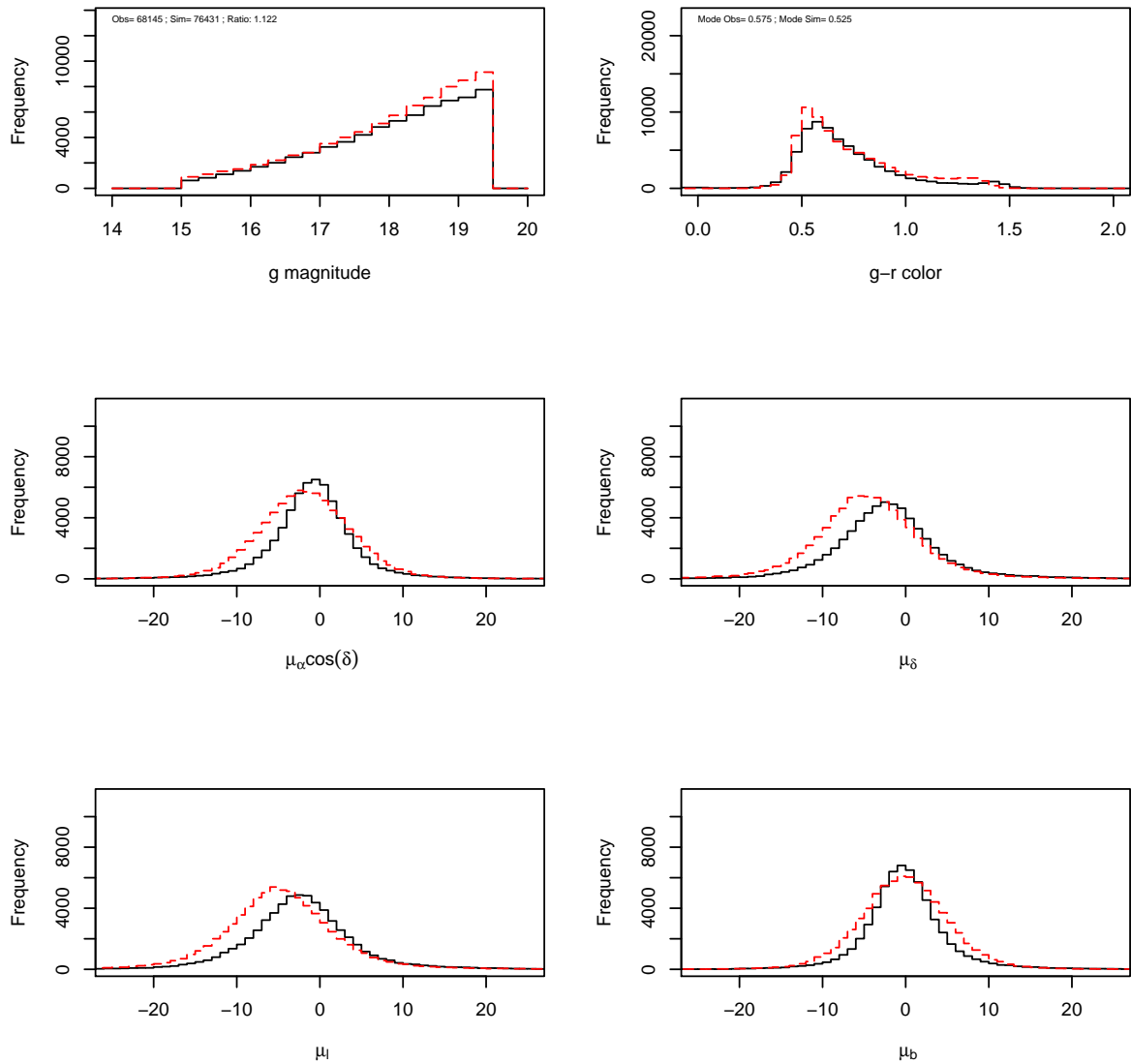


Figure 7.3: Magnitude, color (top panels) and proper motion distributions (middle and bottom panels) for field 2536. Black histograms are observations and the red histograms are simulations.

### 7.1.2 Fields 2537 and 2538

These two fields are located at an equal galactic longitude ( $l_{2537/2538} = 110^\circ$ ) but the galactic latitude is different ( $b_{2537} = 10.5^\circ$  &  $b_{2538} = 16^\circ$ ). These fields suffer from a large extinction ( $A_V$ ) across the field (1.0 - 2.5 mag). Magnitude distributions along with the number of stars and the ratio for each region of field 2537 are presented in figure 7.5. Color distributions along with the modes for each region of field 2537 can be observed in figure 7.6. The simulated distributions are in agreement observations (ratio is close to unity) and the color distributions have the same color peak.

Figure 7.7 presents the whole field distributions for magnitude, color and proper motions. The simulated proper motion distribution in the  $\mu_b$  component has the same peak that observations but the dispersion is too large. The proper motion along longitude in the simulation is shifted with regards to the observation in a field which is dominated by the thin disc (Figure 7.8).

Magnitude distributions along with the number of stars and the ratio for each region of field 2538 are presented in figure 7.9. Color distributions along with the modes for each region of field 2538 can be observed in figure 7.10. The agreement between observations and simulations is not the best, but the ratio (0.7-0.87) between simulations and observations change significantly across the different regions of the field. For each region the color peak is reproduced but regions with larger extinction show larger shifts in color between both distributions.

The number of stars difference in fields 2538 is visible in figure 7.11 Both components of proper motions are slightly shifted and the dispersion is too large probably because we overestimate proper motion errors. In figure 7.12 the thick disc component is comparable to the thin disc at faint magnitudes. The difference in star counts may be explained by the warp of the disc. Figure 7.12 shows that the field is dominated by the thin disc and the shift present in the simulations is due to the thin disc component.

The disagreement in the number of stars for this fields is an indication that the shape of the thick disc may be still subject of improvement by changing the scale height or length or by improving the warp and flare modeling among other possibilities.

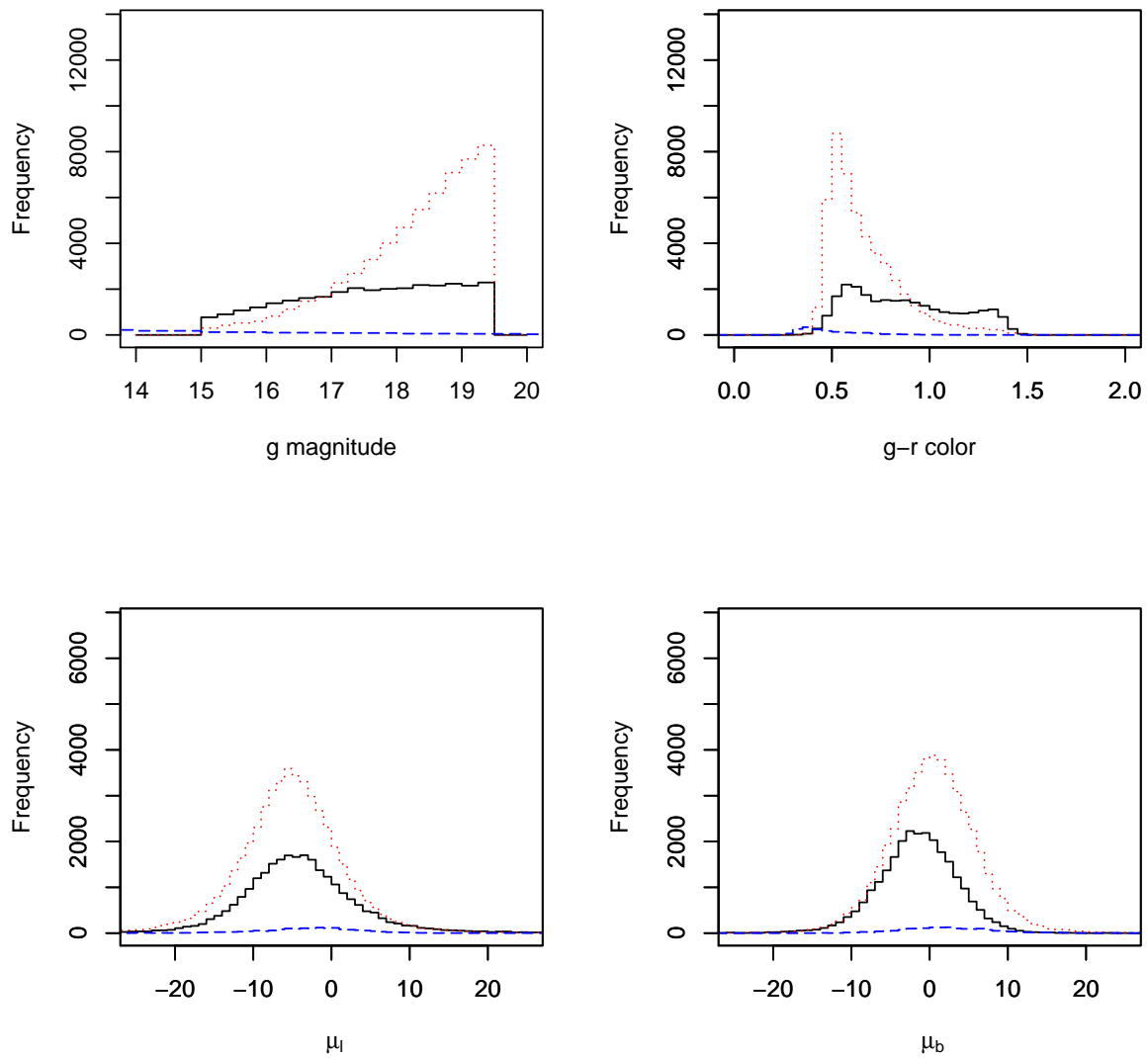


Figure 7.4: Simulated magnitude, color (top panels) and proper motion distributions (bottom panels) separated by populations for field 2536. Thin disc stars: Black solid line; Thick disc stars: Red dotted line; Halo stars: Blue dashed line.

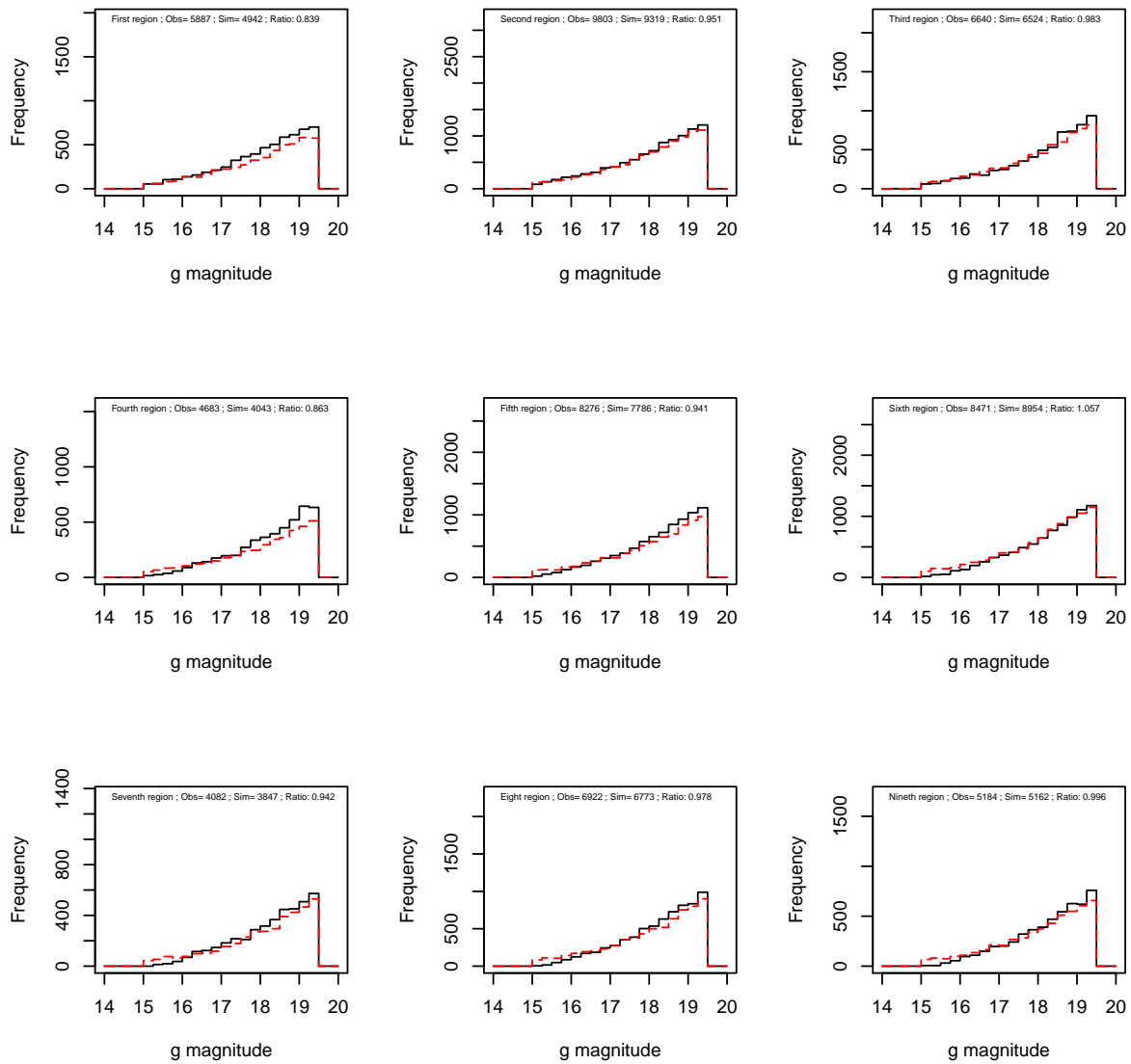


Figure 7.5: Magnitude distribution for each individual region of the field 2537. The black histograms are observations and the red histograms are simulations.

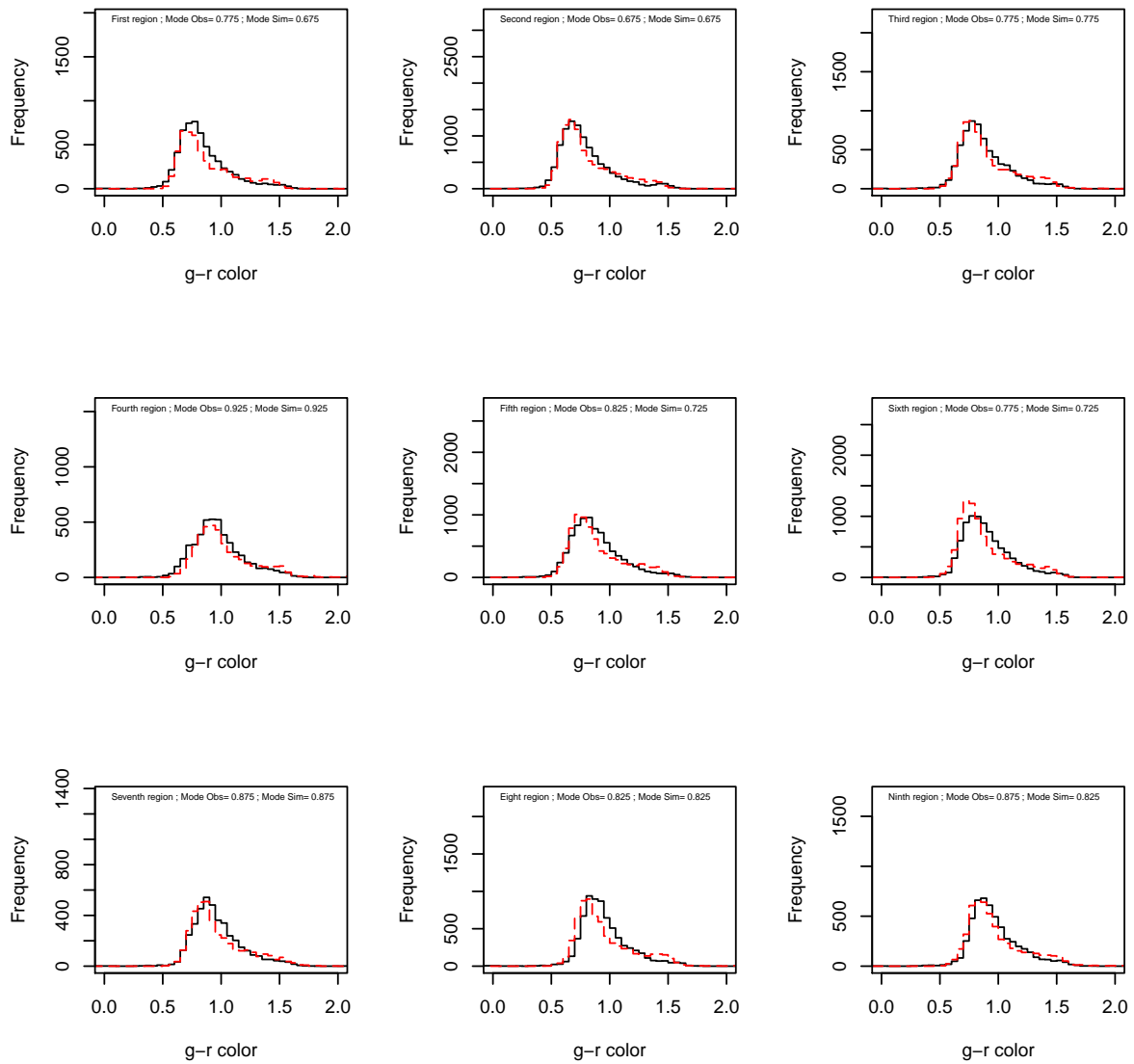


Figure 7.6: Color distributions for each individual region of the field 2537. The black histograms are observations and the red histograms are simulations.

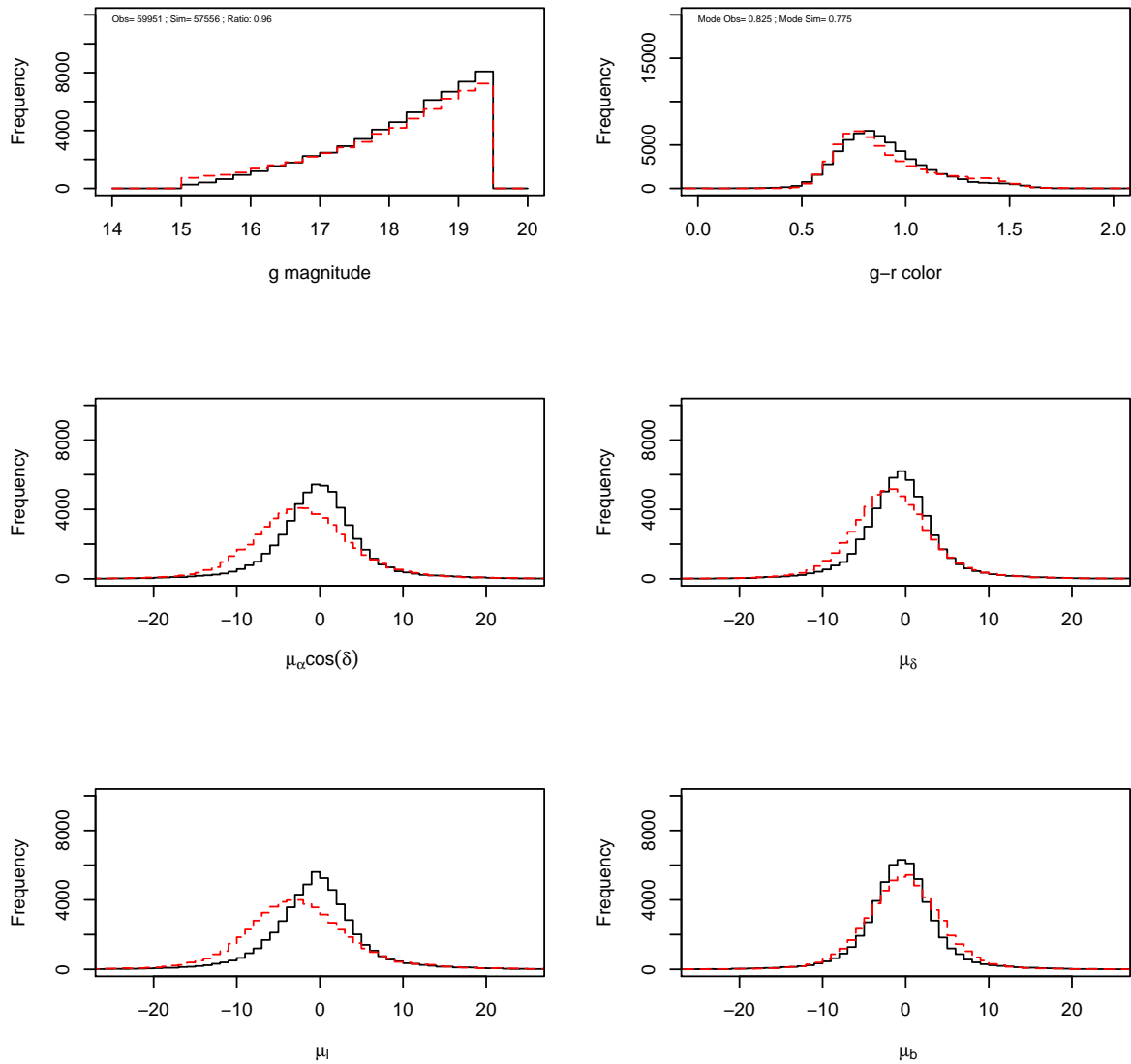


Figure 7.7: Magnitude, color (top panels) and proper motion distributions (middle and bottom panels) for field 2537. Black histograms are observations and the red histograms are simulations.

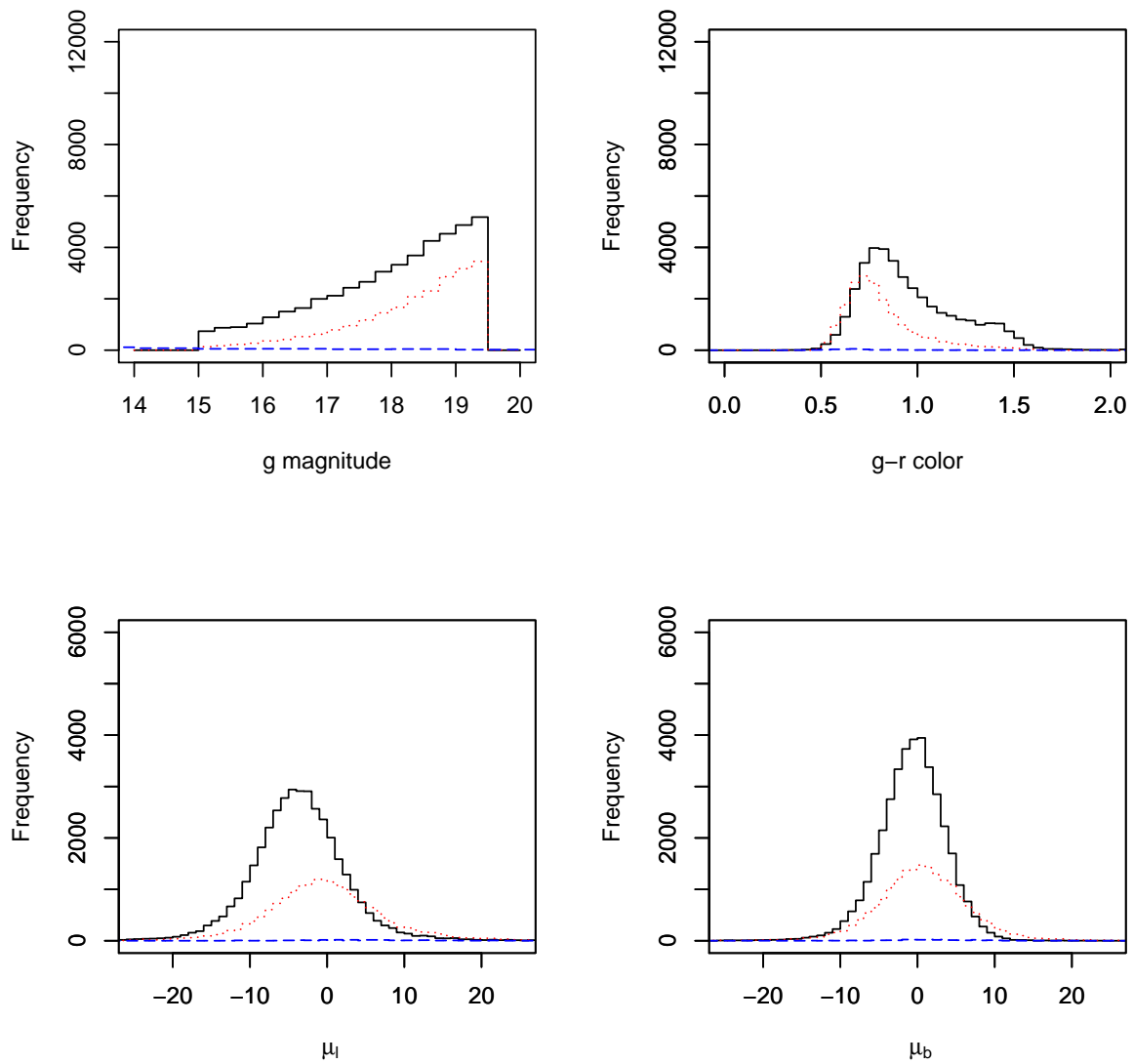


Figure 7.8: Magnitude, color (top panels) and proper motion distributions (bottom panels) separated by populations for field 2537. Thin disc stars: Black solid line; Thick disc stars: Red dotted line; Halo stars: Blue dashed line.



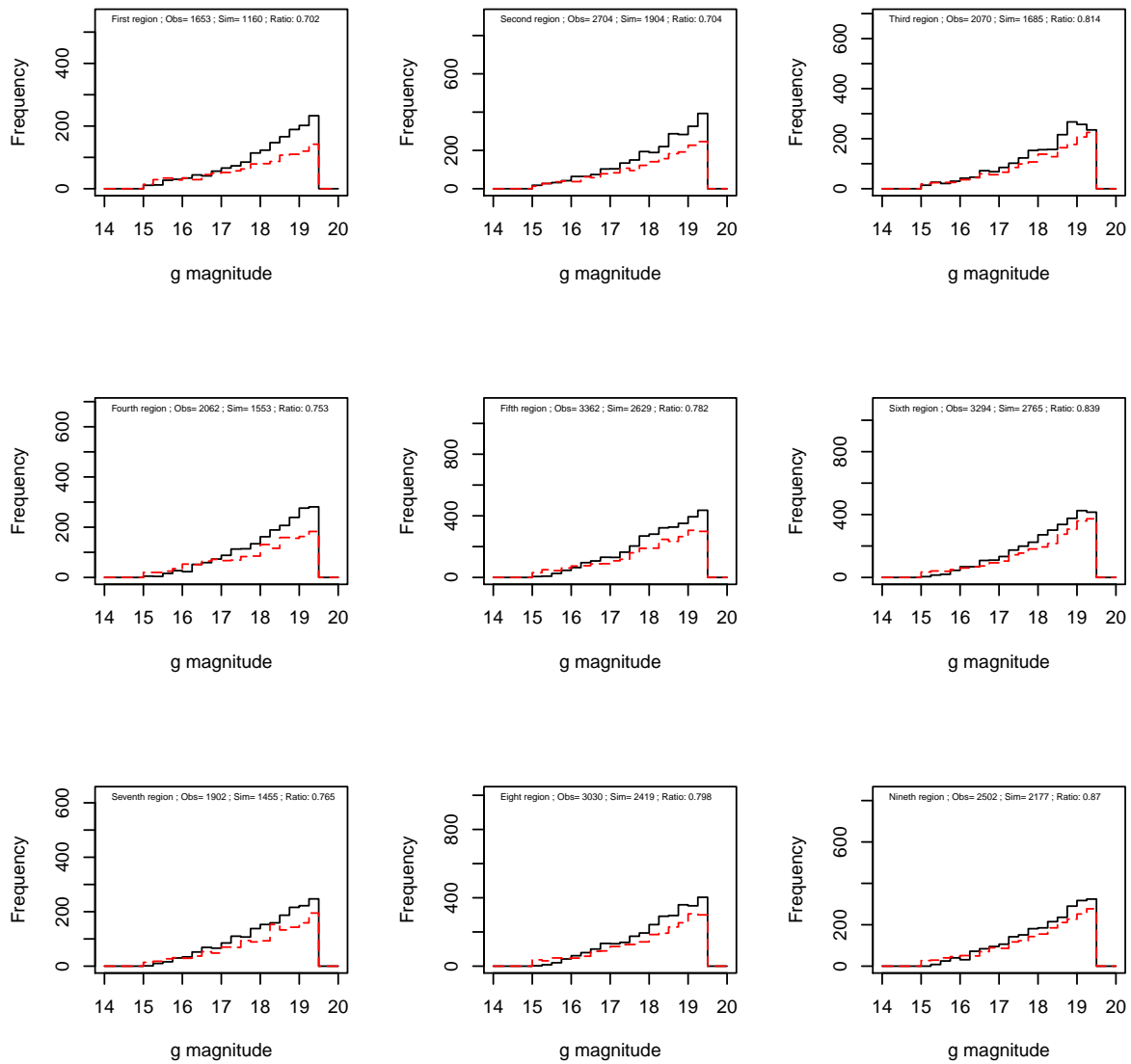


Figure 7.9: Magnitude distribution for each individual region of the field 2537. The black histograms are observations and the red histograms are simulations.

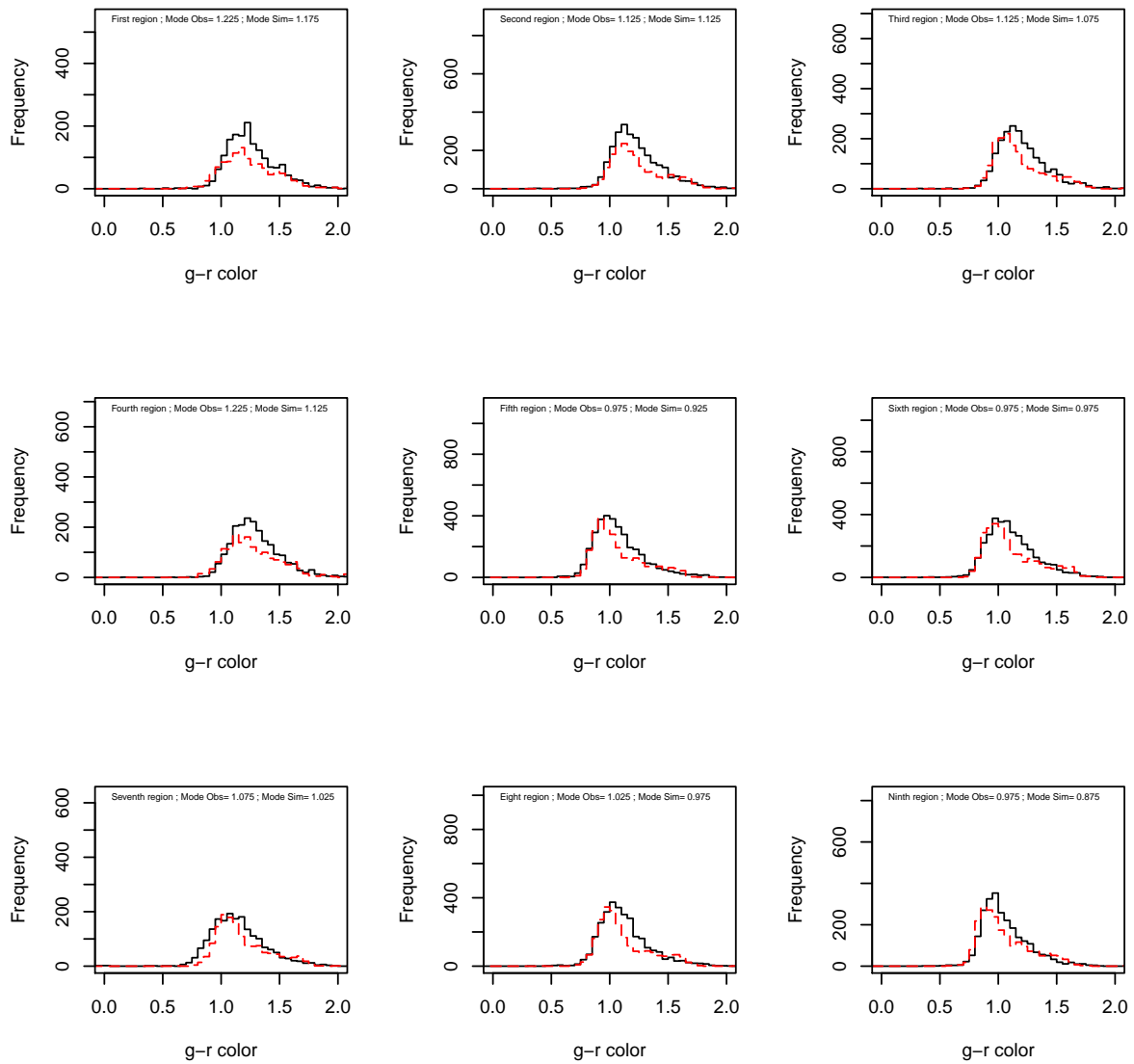


Figure 7.10: Color distributions for each individual region of the field 2537. The black histograms are observations and the red histograms are simulations.

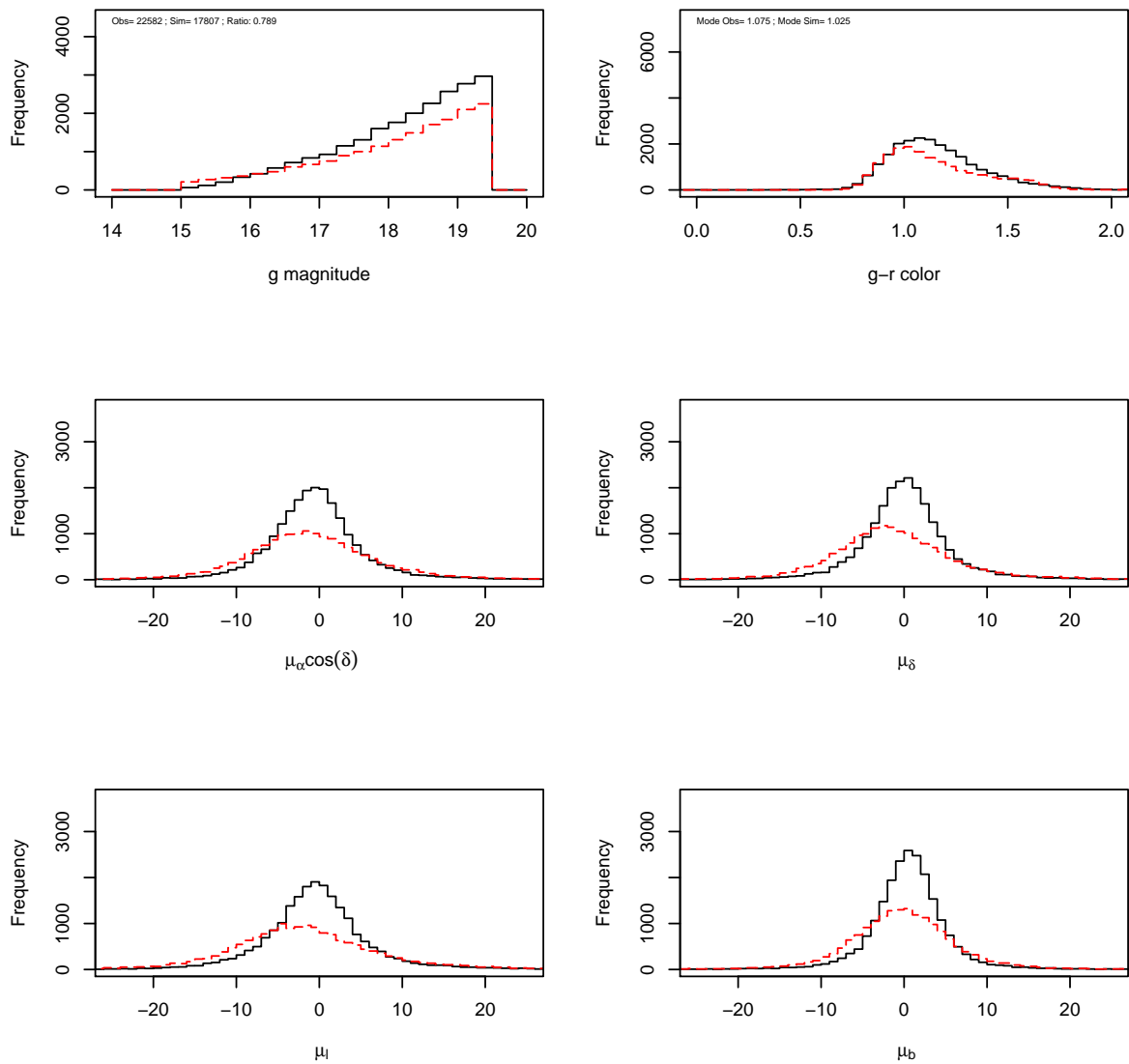


Figure 7.11: Magnitude, color (top panels) and proper motion distributions (middle and bottom panels) for field 2538. Black histograms are observations and the red histograms are simulations.

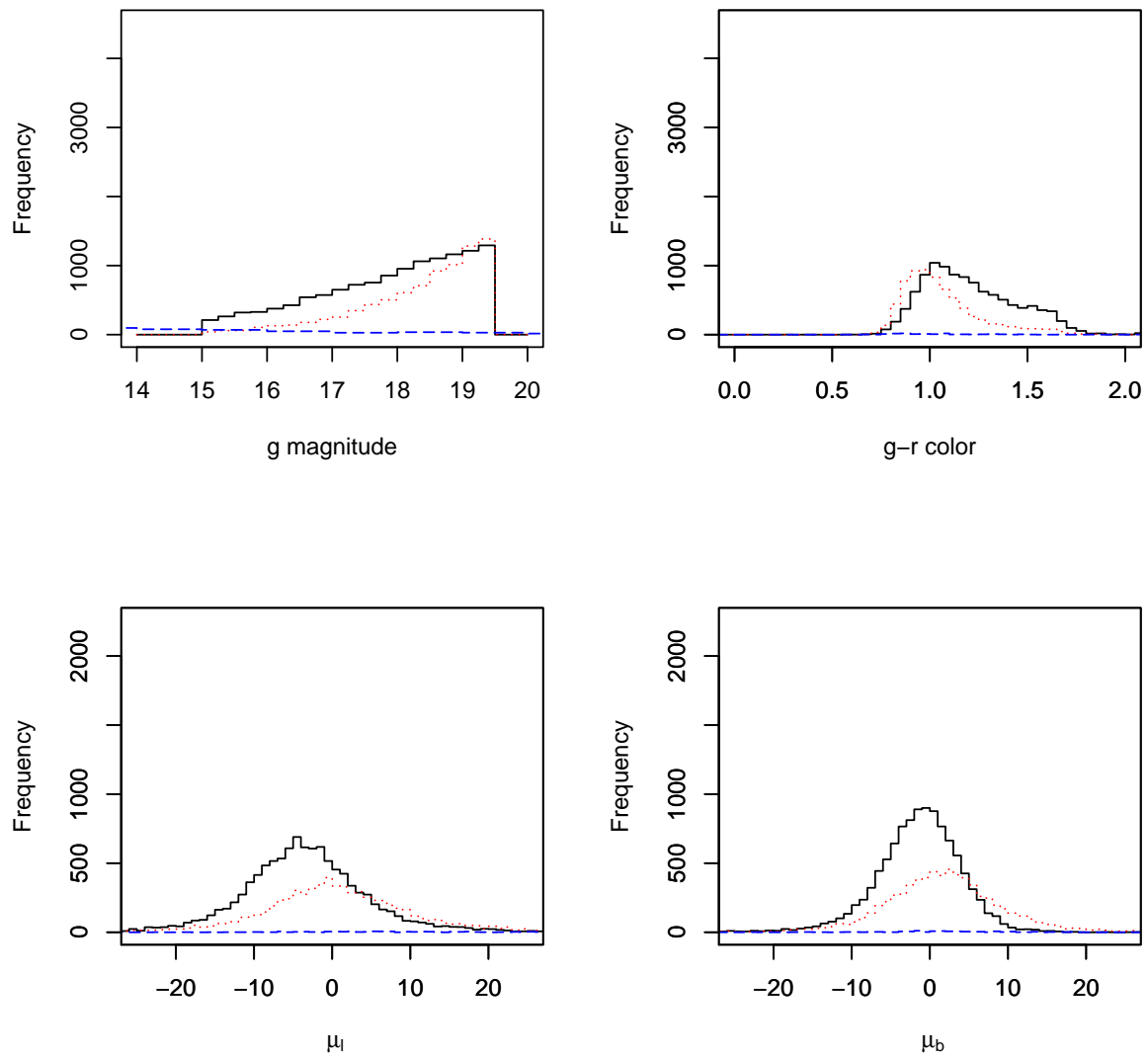


Figure 7.12: Magnitude, color (top panels) and proper motion distributions (bottom panels) separated by populations for field 2538. Thin disc stars: Black solid line; Thick disc stars: Red dotted line; Halo stars: Blue dashed line.

### 7.1.3 Fields 2554, 2555 and 2556

These three fields are located at the same galactic longitude ( $l_{2554/2555/2556} = 94^\circ$ ) but at different galactic latitudes ( $b_{2554} = 14^\circ$  &  $b_{2555} = 8^\circ$  &  $b_{2556} = -8^\circ$ ). The fields 2554 and 2556 suffer similar extinction ( $A_V$ ) effects. Both have a range of extinction from 0.4 to 1.2. The field 2555 suffers more extinction ( $A_V$ ) with a range from 0.9 to slightly above 3. Magnitude distributions along with the number of stars in each catalog and their ratio in each region, are shown in figures 7.13, 7.14 and 7.15 for fields 2554, 2555 and 2556 respectively. For field 2554 there is a good agreement between observations and simulations as visible in figure 7.13. The ratio between star counts in each region ranges from 0.90 to 1.0, which shows an approximate constant factor for each region. Figure 7.15 shows, for field 2556, that the quantity of simulated stars is larger than the observed stars by a ratio in the range of 1.1 to 1.2 depending on the region. In figure 7.14 we see that simulations do not reproduce so well the observations for field 2555. There is a quite low ratio and a large range of values (0.5 to 0.9) which demonstrates the complexity of an analysis to this field. Figures 7.16, 7.17 and 7.18 represent the color distributions of each region for each field along with the modes of both distributions. It is visible that for each region, the color distribution is generally reproduced despite the large extinction behaviour in each region for each field. The values of the modes are in agreement even if, for field 2555, the color distributions are less accurate which may indicate that the extinction in this field needed to be fitted with a more complex behaviour. Nevertheless, the simulated color histogram is bluer than the observed ones which means that a stronger extinction will only result in a larger difference in the number of stars. The lack of stars in the positive latitude fields and the existence of too many stars in the simulation for the negative field may be an indication that the warp slope is not correct or that the warp model used is too simple.

Figure 7.19 shows, for the field 2554, from the first two top histograms, the partial good agreement noticed when the individual regions were being analyzed. The  $l$  component of the proper motions (bottom panel) show small shift in simulations. The thick disc is a significant component in this field at latitude  $14^\circ$ , as seen in figure 7.20. For the field 2556 results are represented in figure 7.23 and show very similar results but the quantity of stars in the simulations is larger than in observations. Inspection of figure 7.24 shows that the thin disc is the stronger component in the field.

An opposite behaviour can be seen in figure 7.21 for the field 2555. As discussed in figures 7.14 and 7.17, for the individual regions, the star counts in simulations do not reproduce so well the observations. We see a shift (already noticed in other fields like the 2536 in figure 7.21) between simulations and observations in the  $l$  component of the proper motion that is not present in the  $b$  component and the dispersion in simulations is larger. The shifts in the  $l$  component of the proper motion, observed for the other two fields, may be due to the asymmetric drift which values may need to be updated. A comparison with the other two fields shows a huge difference in star counts that is probably due to the high extinction present in the field probably due to the clumpy extinction pattern near the sun as shown in the first two panels of figure 2.12. The huge difference between star counts in the observations and simulations, that is not present in the other two fields, may be an indication that the warp model has to be improved or that there is a structure present at this direction even if the metallicity distributions do not show a

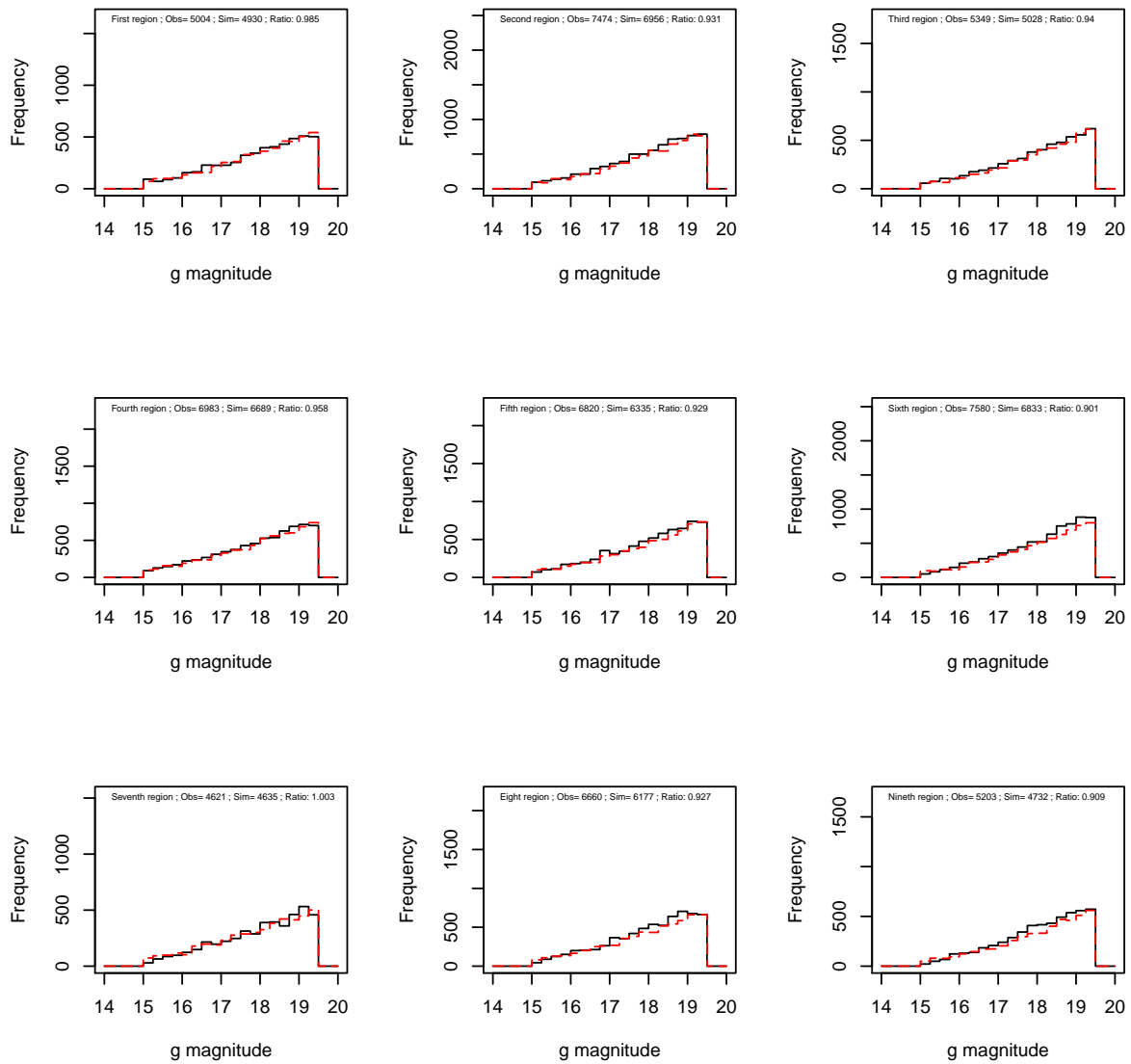


Figure 7.13: Magnitude distribution for each individual region of the field 2554. The black histograms are observations and the red histograms are simulations.

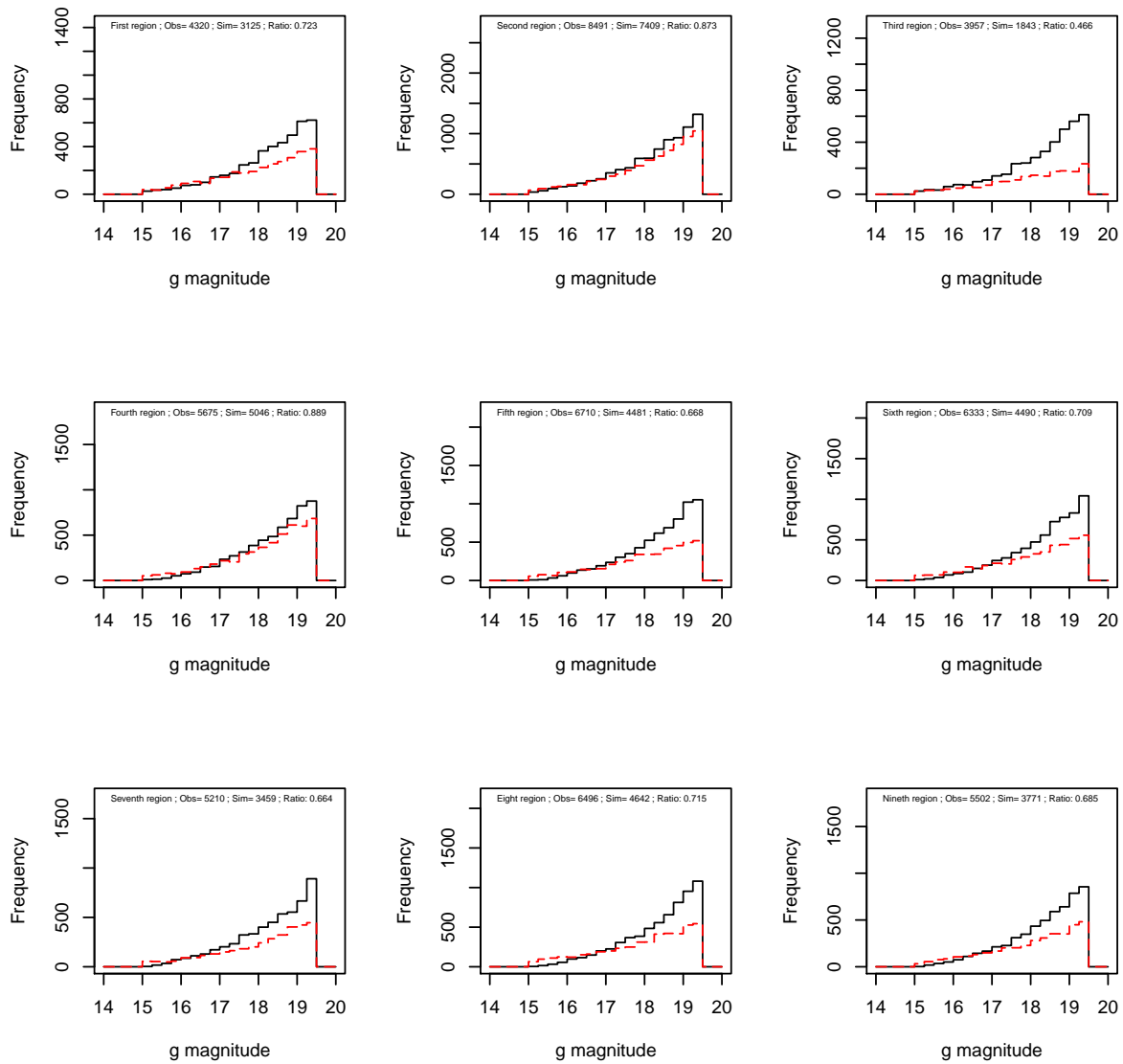


Figure 7.14: Magnitude distribution for each individual region of the field 2555. The black histograms are observations and the red histograms are simulations.

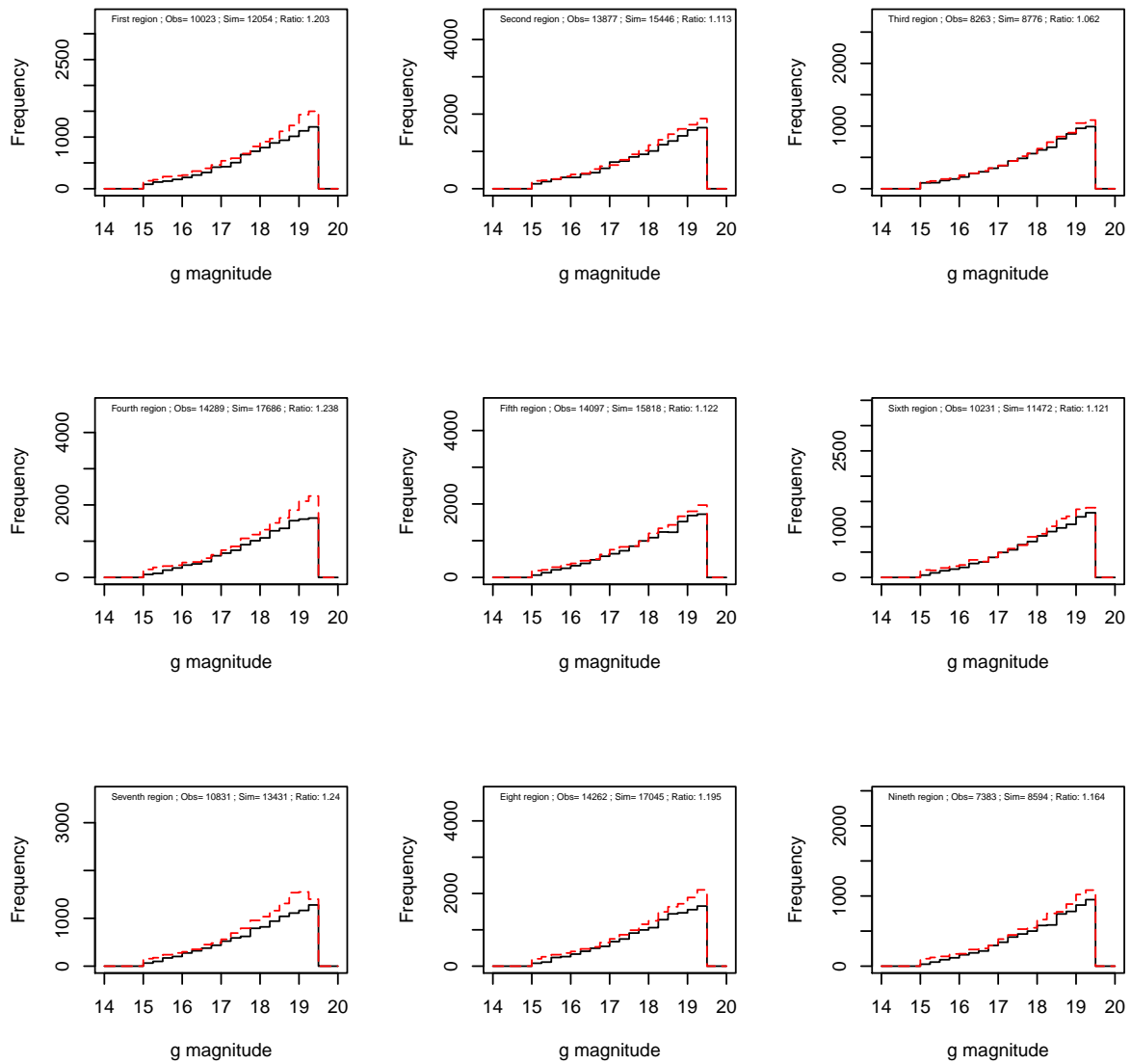


Figure 7.15: Magnitude distribution for each individual region of the field 2556. The black histograms are observations and the red histograms are simulations.



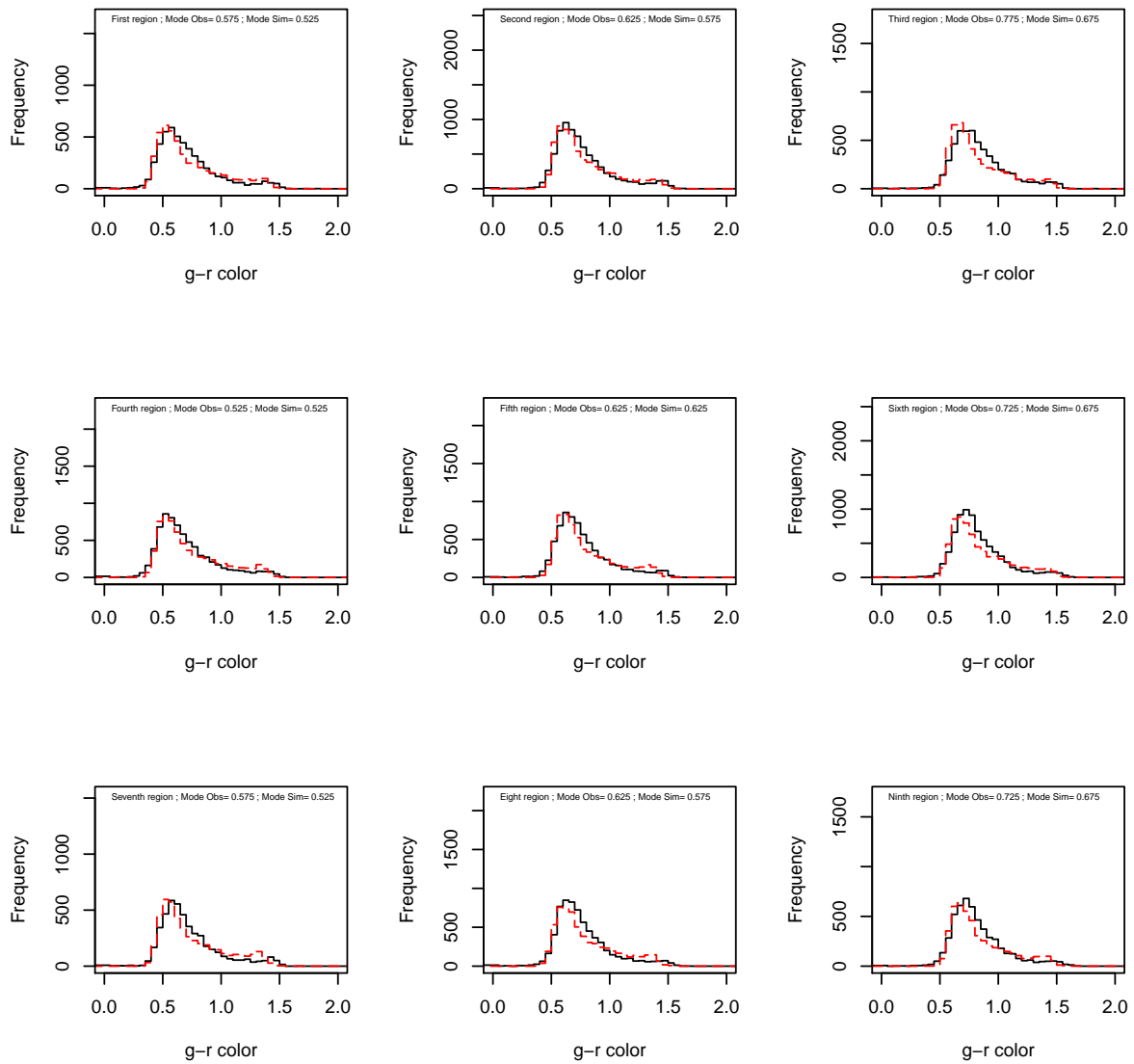


Figure 7.16: Color distribution for each individual region of the field 2554. The black histograms are observations and the red histograms are simulations.

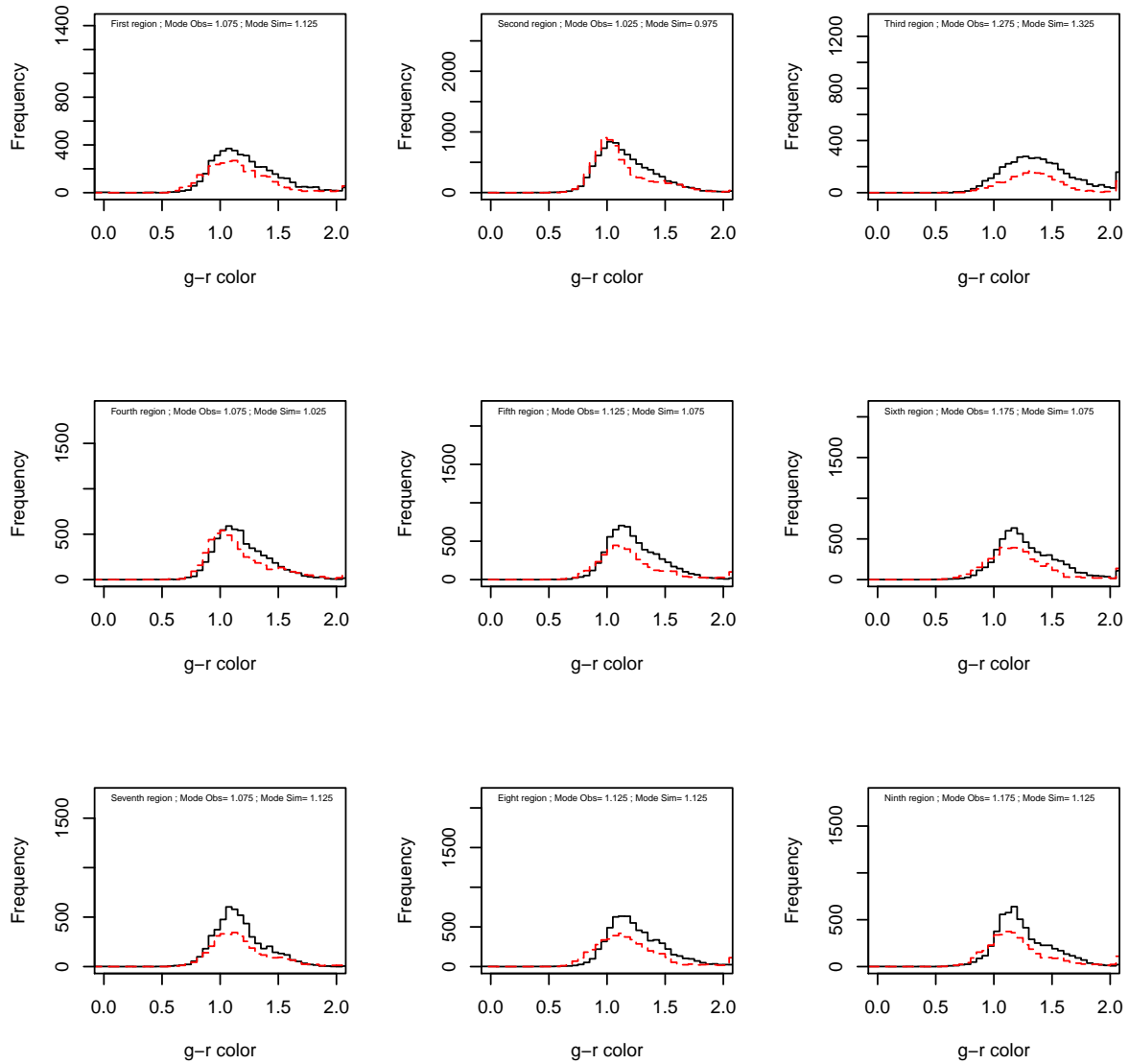


Figure 7.17: Color distribution for each individual region of the field 2555. The black histograms are observations and the red histograms are simulations.

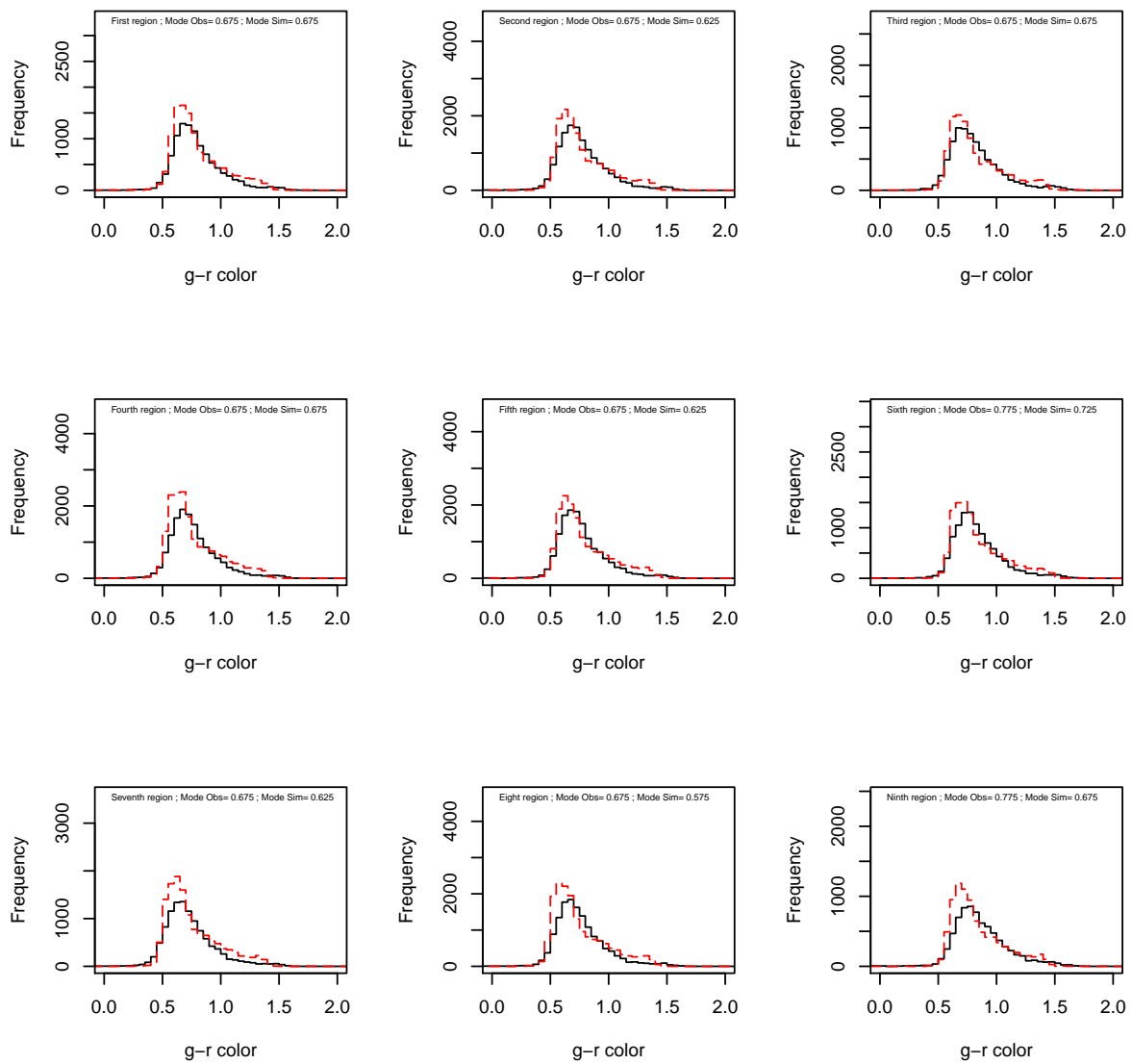


Figure 7.18: Color distribution for each individual region of the field 2556. The black histograms are observations and the red histograms are simulations.

disagreement.

---

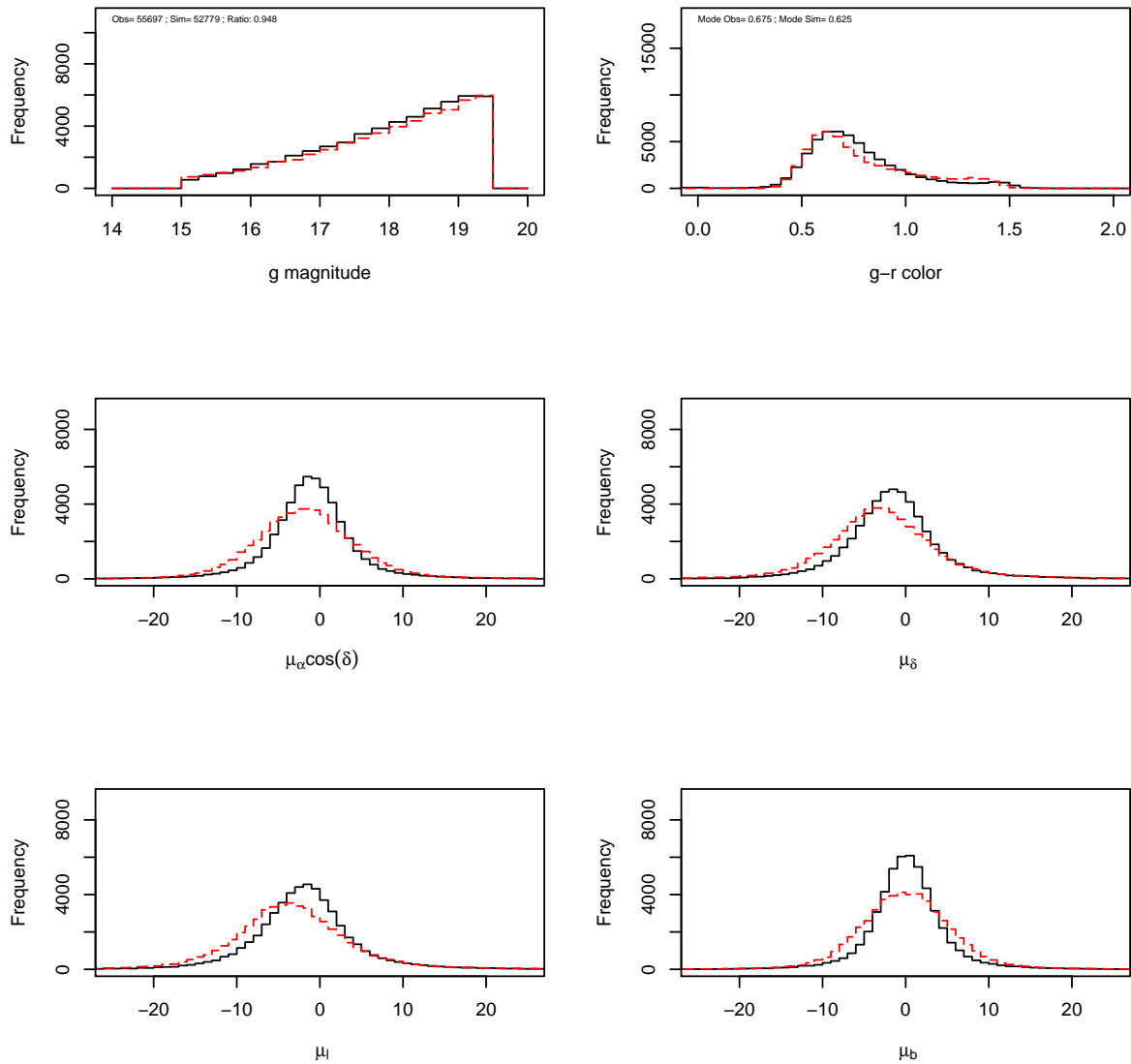


Figure 7.19: Magnitude, color (top panels) and proper motion distributions (middle and bottom panels) for field 2554. Black histograms are observations and the red histograms are simulations.

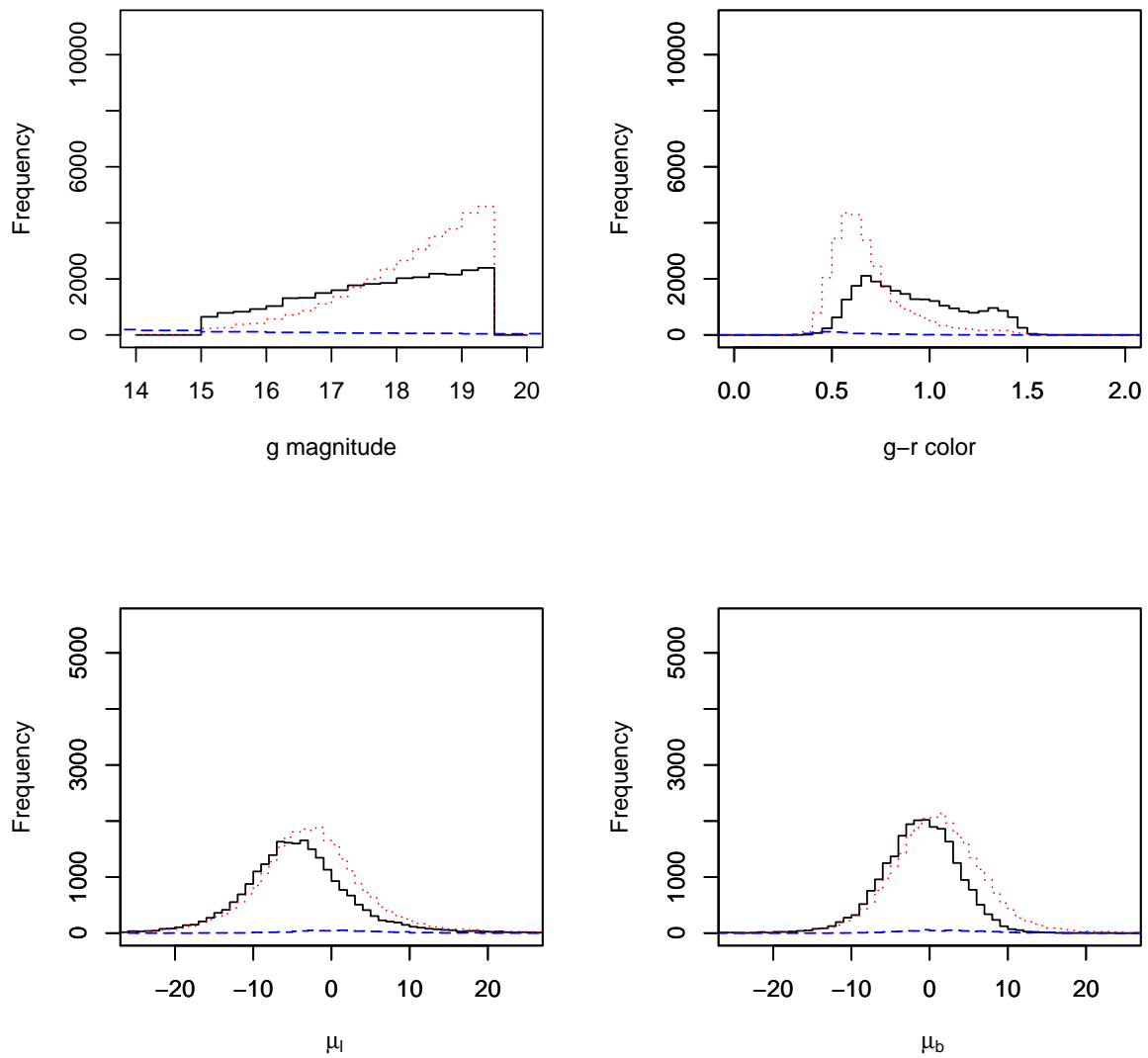


Figure 7.20: Magnitude, color (top panels) and proper motion distributions (bottom panels) separated by populations for field 2554. Thin disc stars: Black solid line; Thick disc stars: Red dotted line; Halo stars: Blue dashed line.

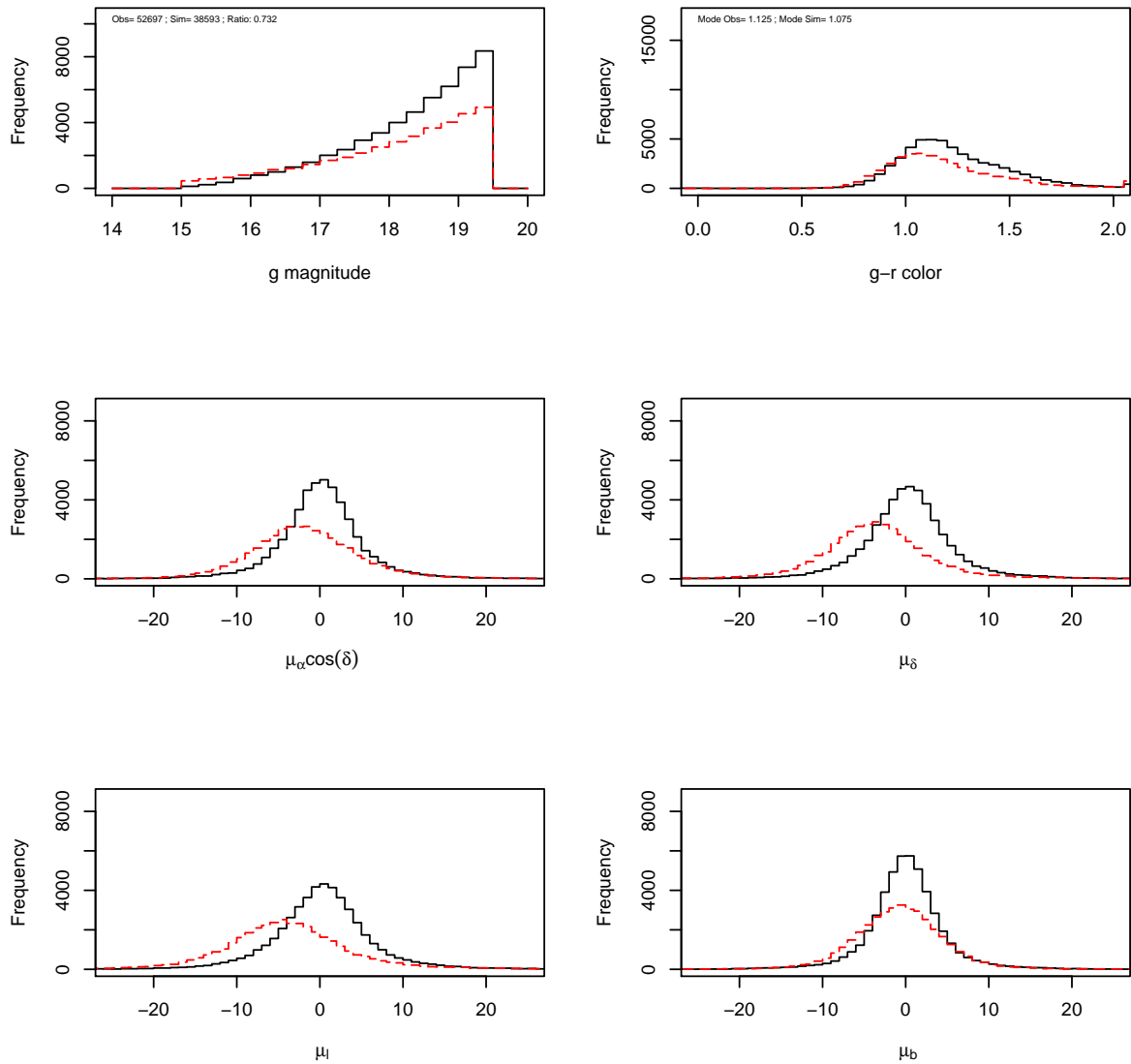


Figure 7.21: Magnitude, color (top panels) and proper motion distributions (middle and bottom panels) for field 2555. Black histograms are observations and the red histograms are simulations.

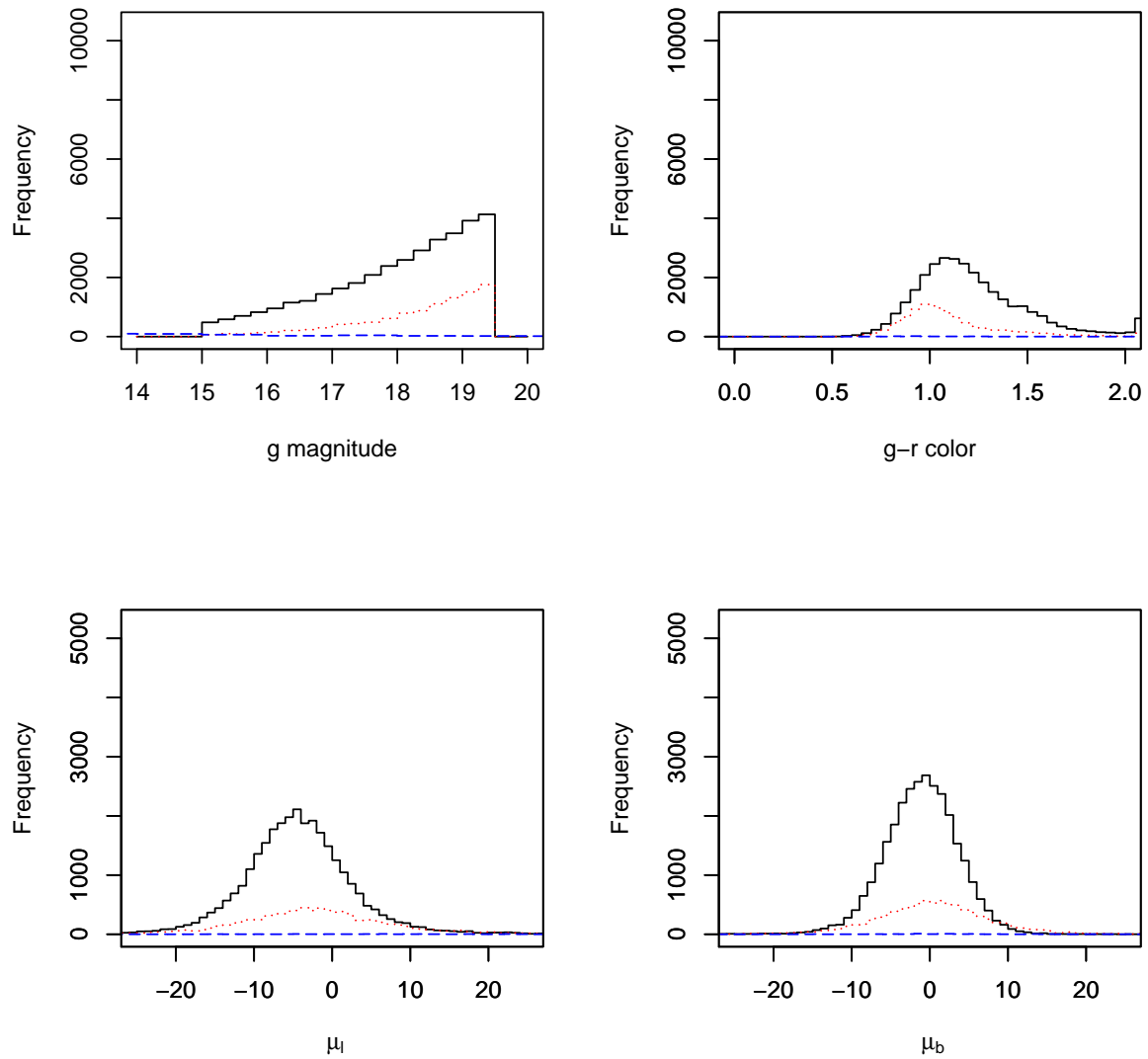


Figure 7.22: Magnitude, color (top panels) and proper motion distributions (bottom panels) separated by populations for field 2555. Thin disc stars: Black solid line; Thick disc stars: Red dotted line; Halo stars: Blue dashed line.



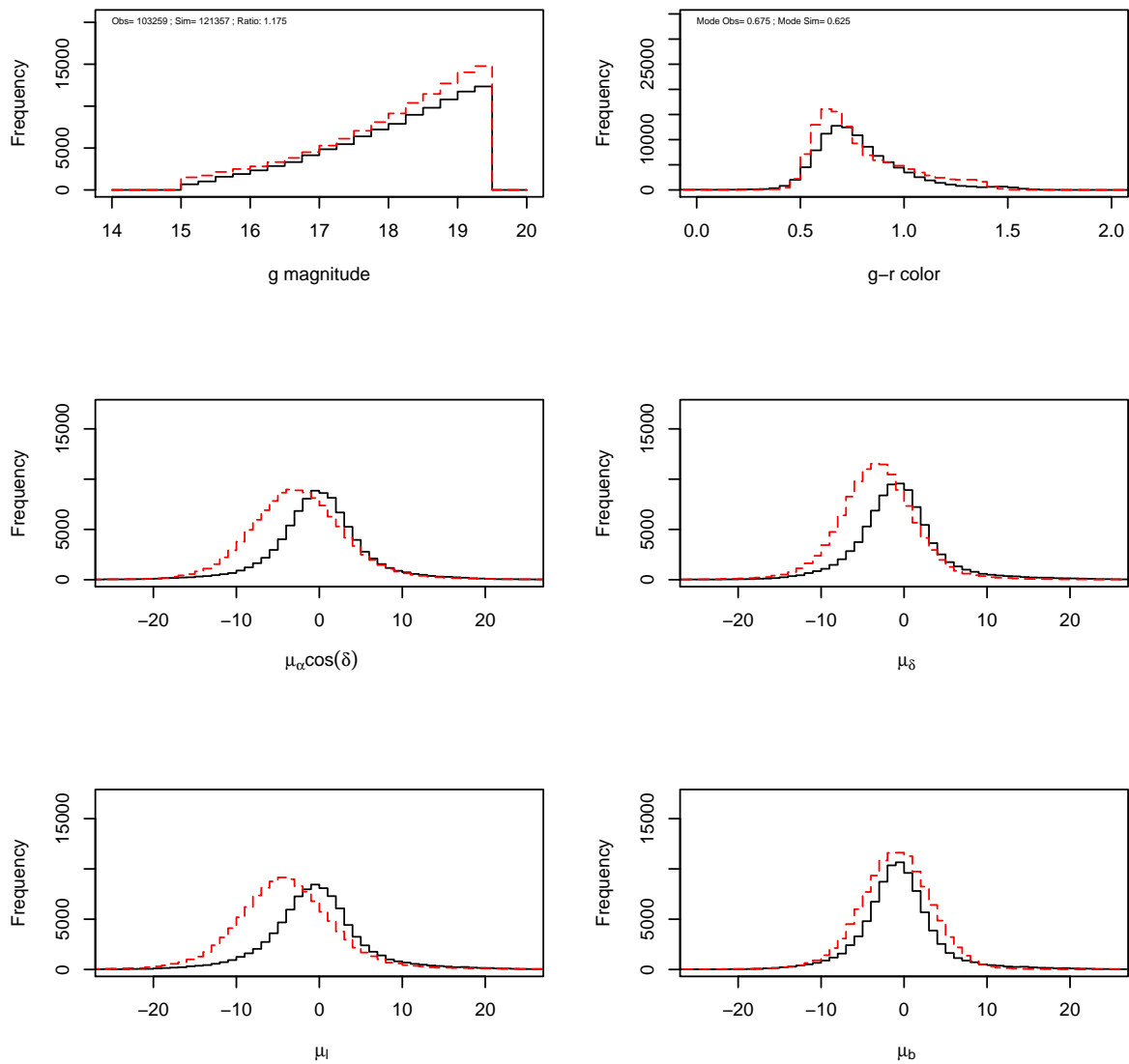


Figure 7.23: Magnitude, color (top panels) and proper motion distributions (middle and bottom panels) for field 2556. Black histograms are observations and the red histograms are simulations.

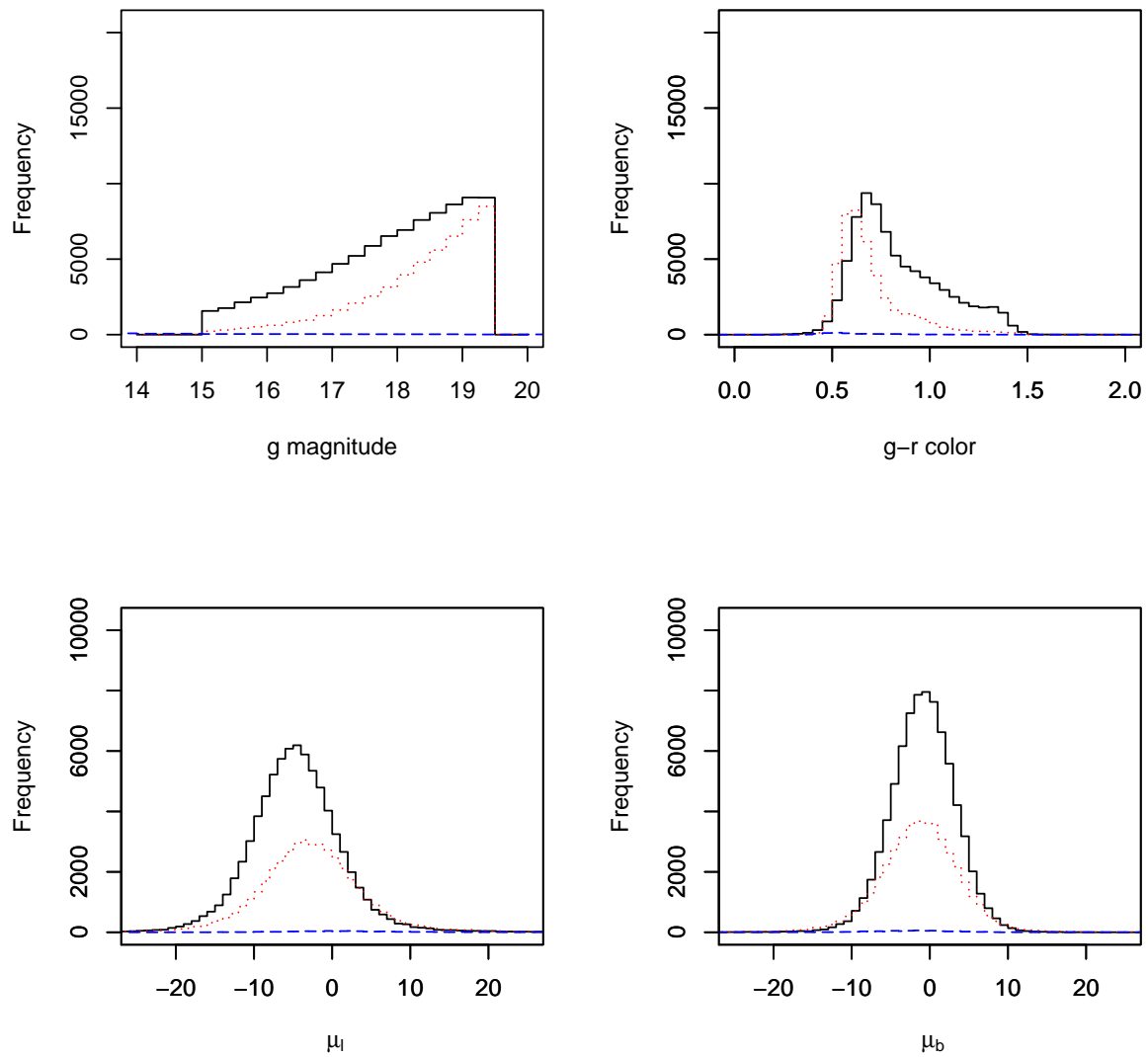


Figure 7.24: Magnitude, color (top panels) and proper motion distributions (bottom panels) separated by populations for field 2556. Thin disc stars: Black solid line; Thick disc stars: Red dotted line; Halo stars: Blue dashed line.

### 7.1.4 Fields 2668, 2678 and 2681

These fields are located at the anticenter directions and they suffer moderately from extinction ( $A_V$ ). Fields 2668 ( $l_{2668} = 187^\circ$ ,  $b_{2668} = -12^\circ$ ) and 2678 ( $l_{2678} = 187^\circ$ ,  $b_{2678} = 8^\circ$ ) have a range of extinction from 0.5 to 1.0 whereas field 2681 ( $l_{2681} = 178^\circ$ ,  $b_{2681} = -15^\circ$ ) has extinction values ranging from 0.5 to 1.5. Figures 7.25 to 7.27 show the magnitude distribution along with number of stars in each catalog and the ratio from each region of each field. Figures 7.28 to 7.30 present the color distribution along with the modes from each region of each field. The three fields present similar characteristics. The magnitude and color simulated distributions are well in agreement with observations for each region in each field. The overall distributions, for each field, presented in figures 7.31, 7.33 and 7.35 show a good agreement between observations and simulations. The proper motions in galactic coordinates are well in agreement even if there is a relatively small shift. Figures 7.32, 7.34 and 7.36 show the larger contribution of the thin disc relatively to the thick disc due to the shorter thick disc scale length assumed in the model.

---

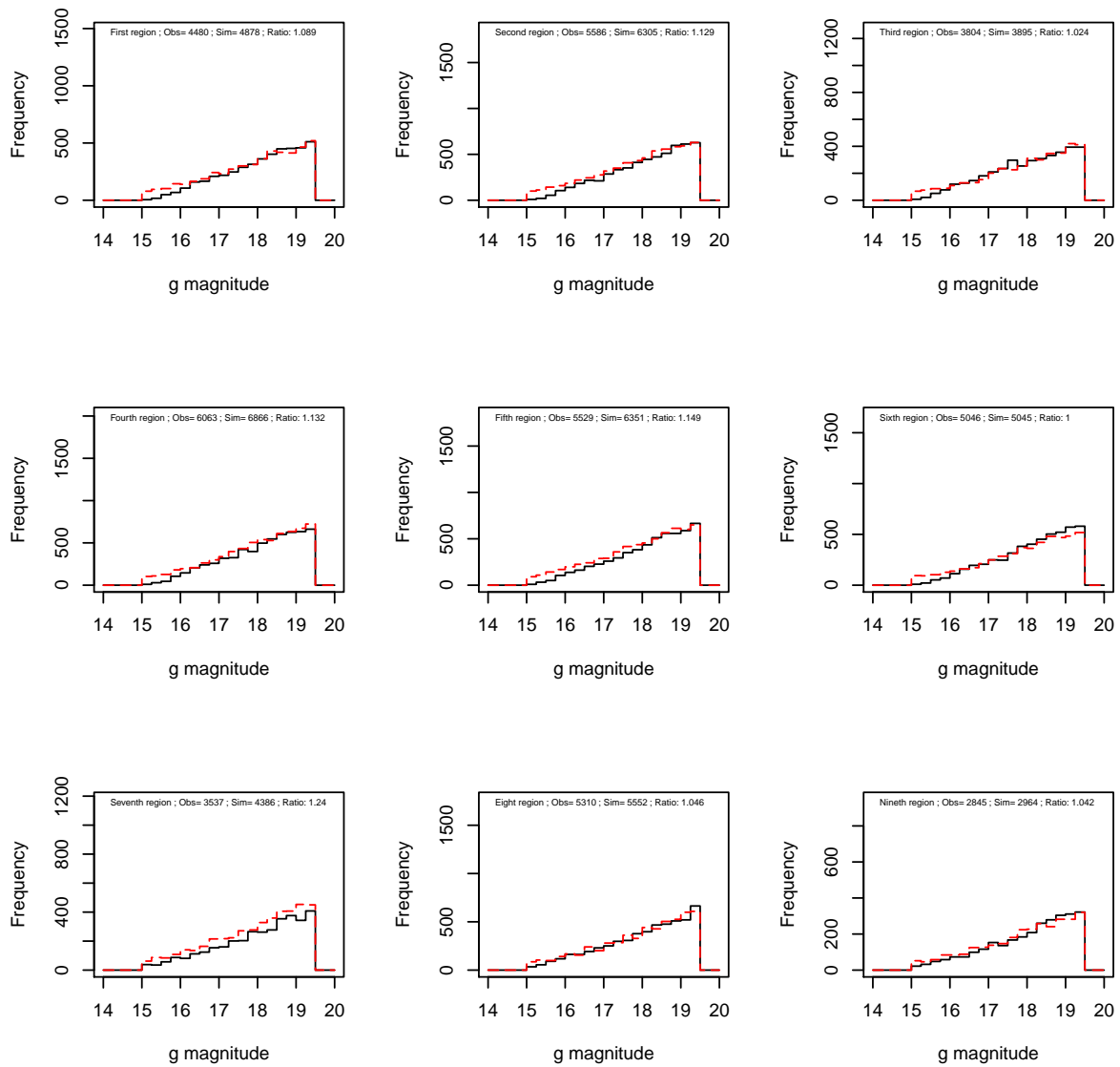


Figure 7.25: Magnitude distribution for each individual region of the field 2668. The black histograms are observations and the red histograms are simulations.

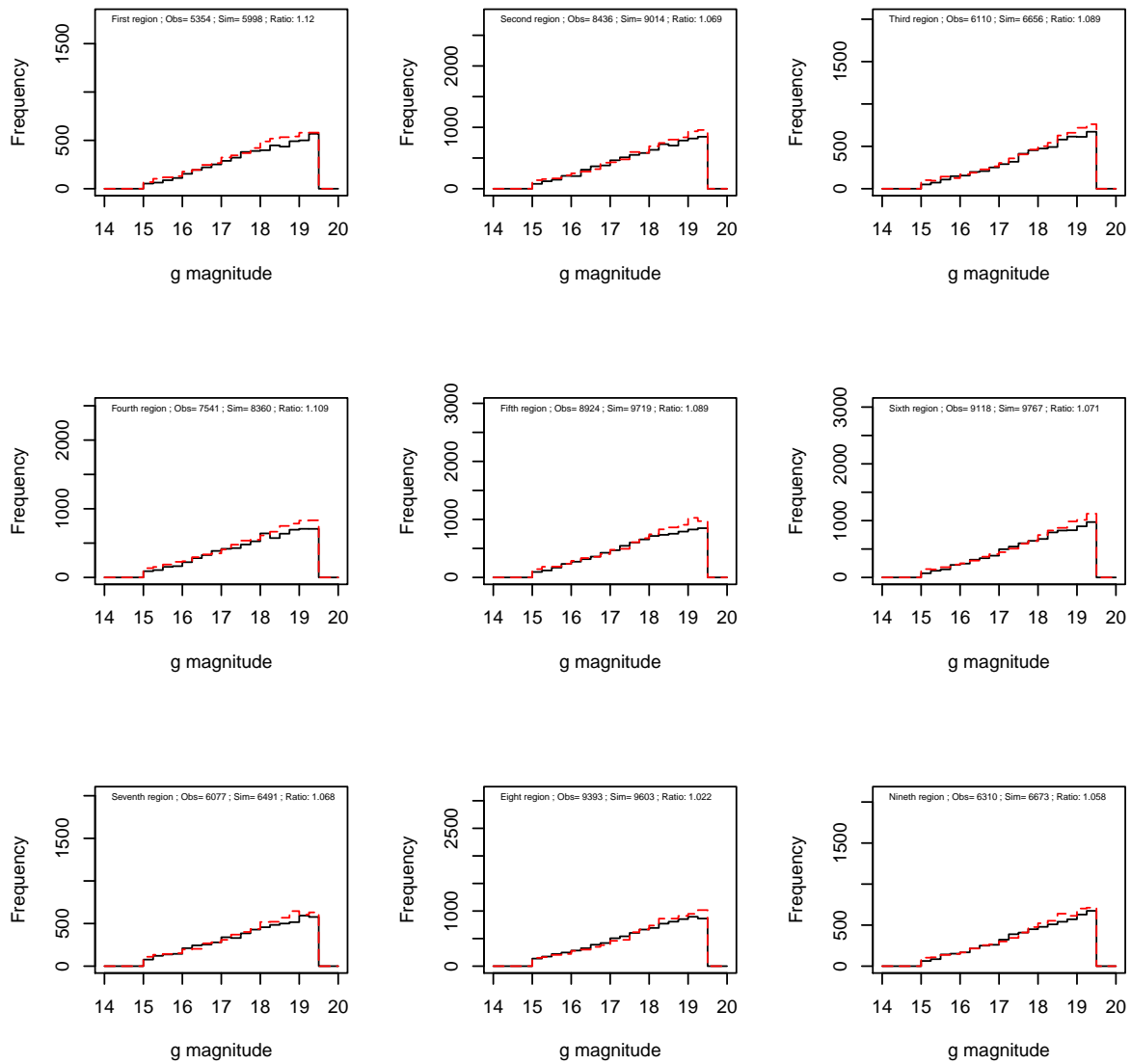


Figure 7.26: Magnitude distribution for each individual region of the field 2678. The black histograms are observations and the red histograms are simulations.

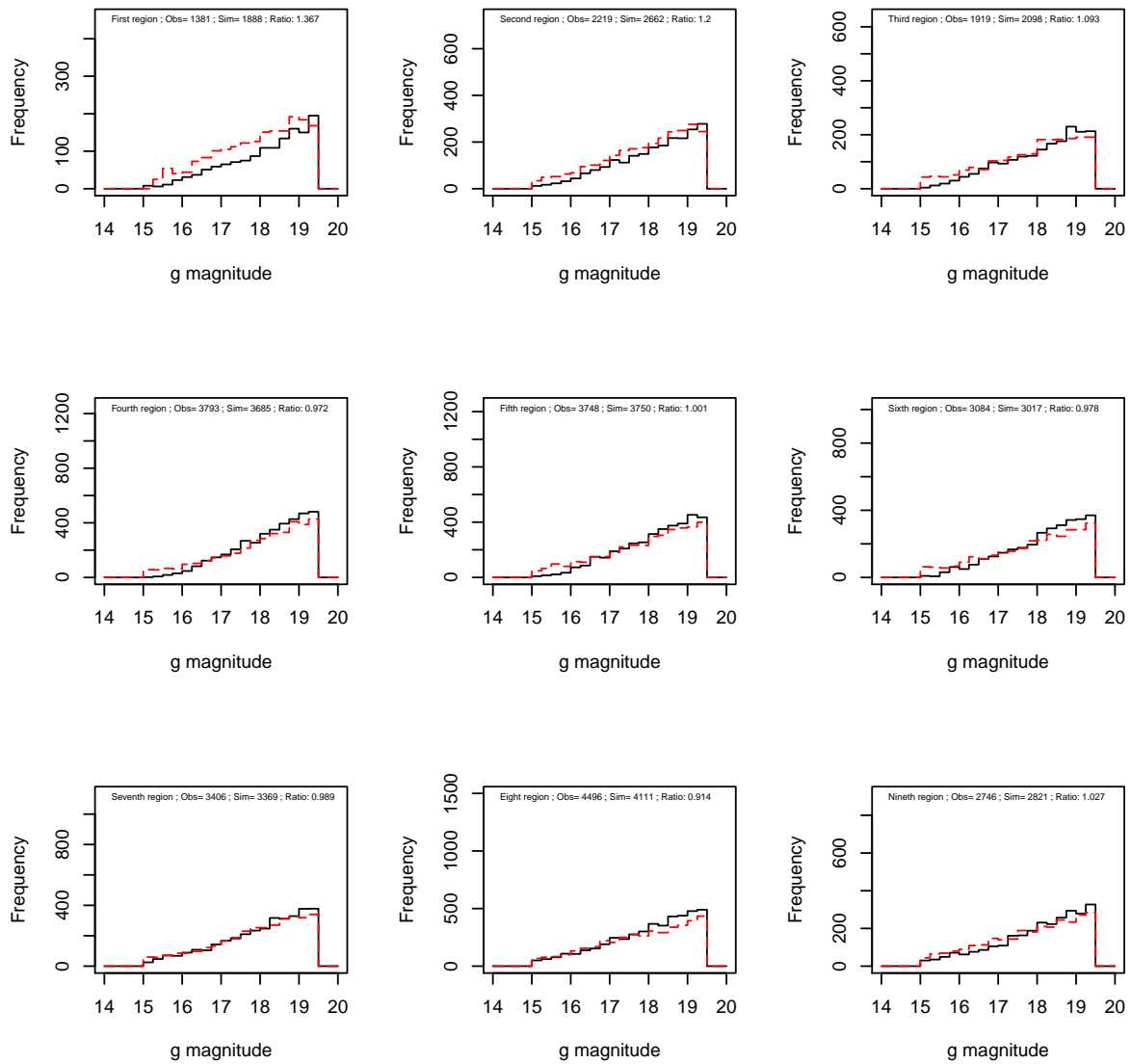


Figure 7.27: Magnitude distribution for each individual region of the field 2681. The black histograms are observations and the red histograms are simulations.

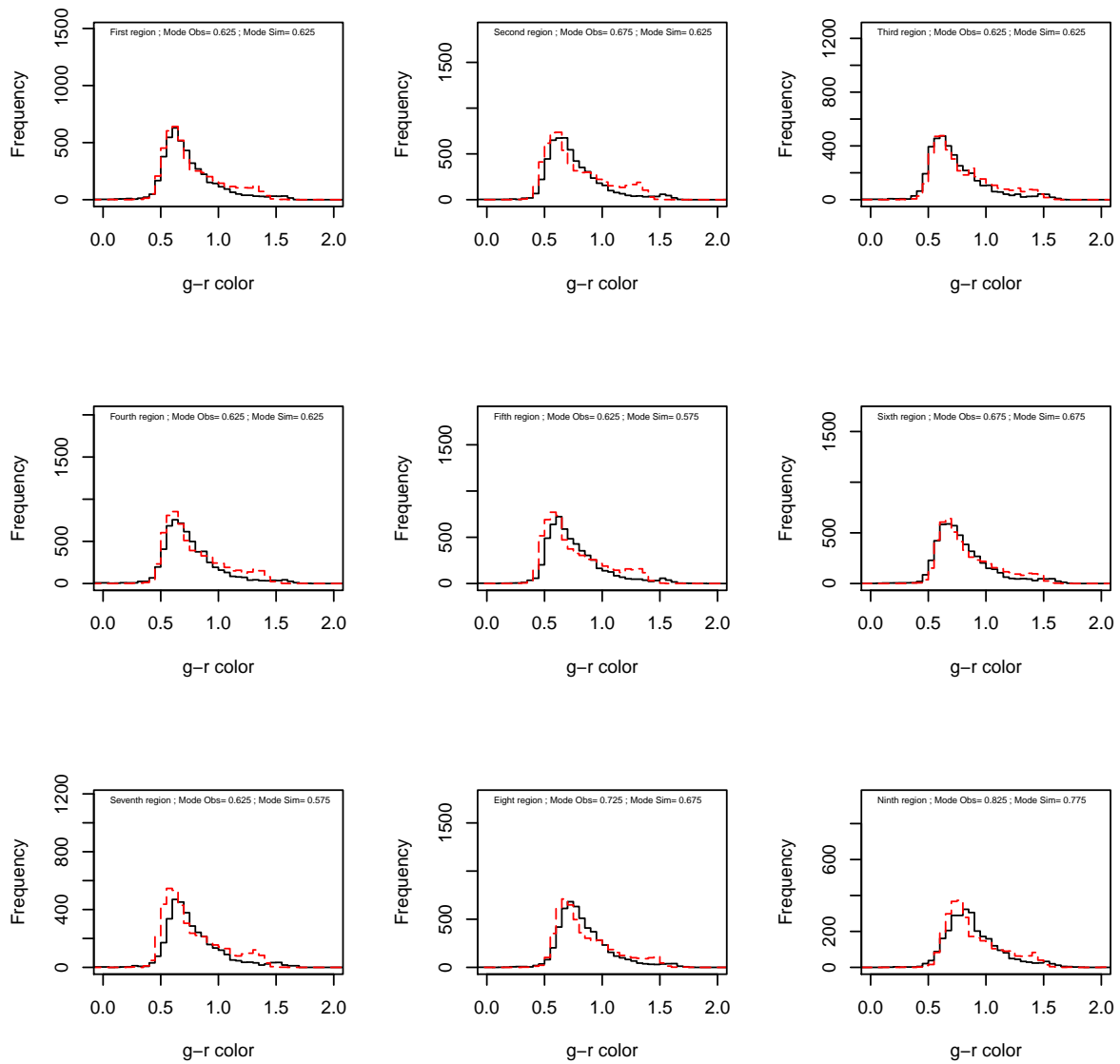


Figure 7.28: Color distribution for each individual region of the field 2668. The black histograms are observations and the red histograms are simulations.

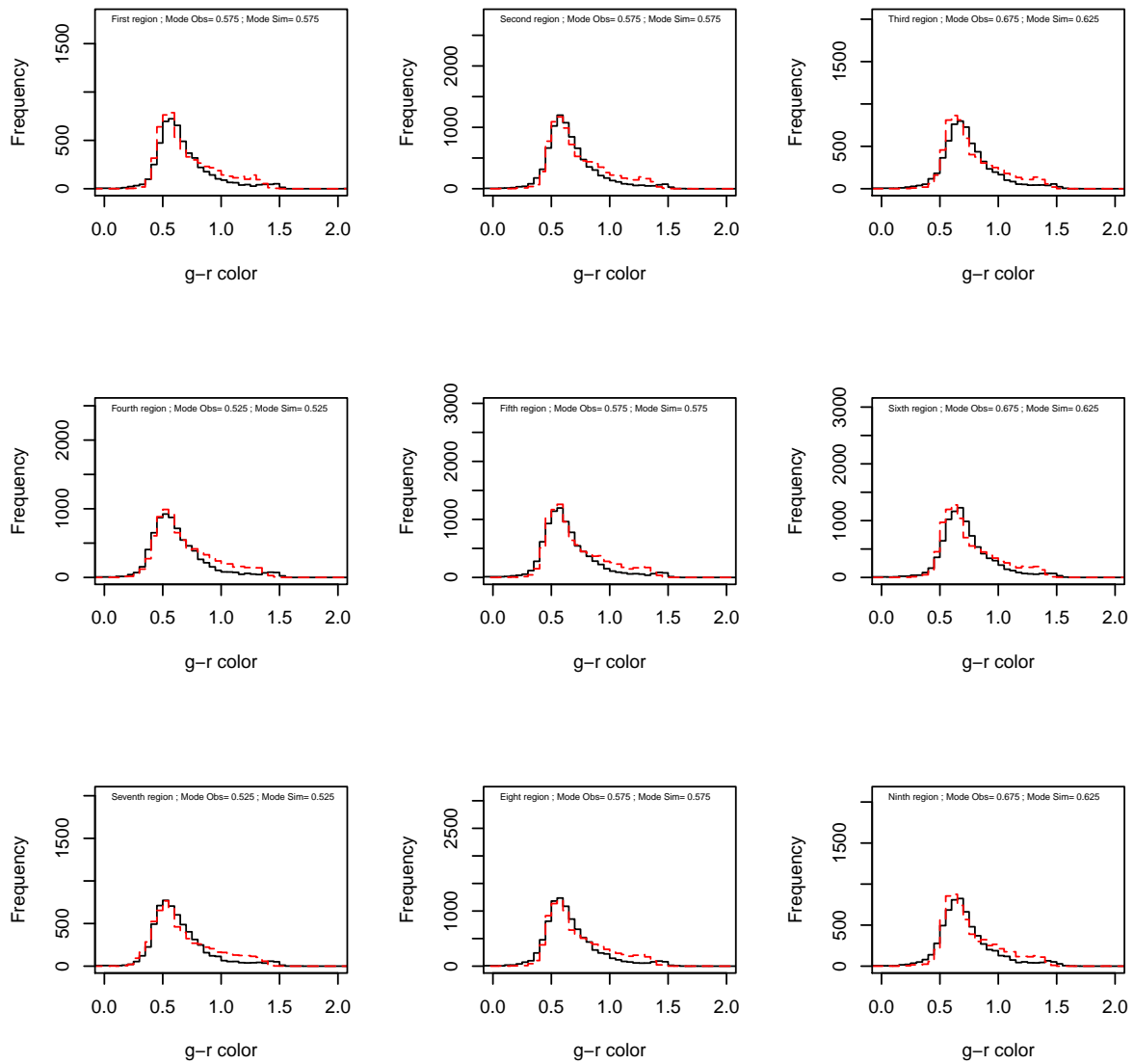


Figure 7.29: Color distribution for each individual region of the field 2678. The black histograms are observations and the red histograms are simulations.



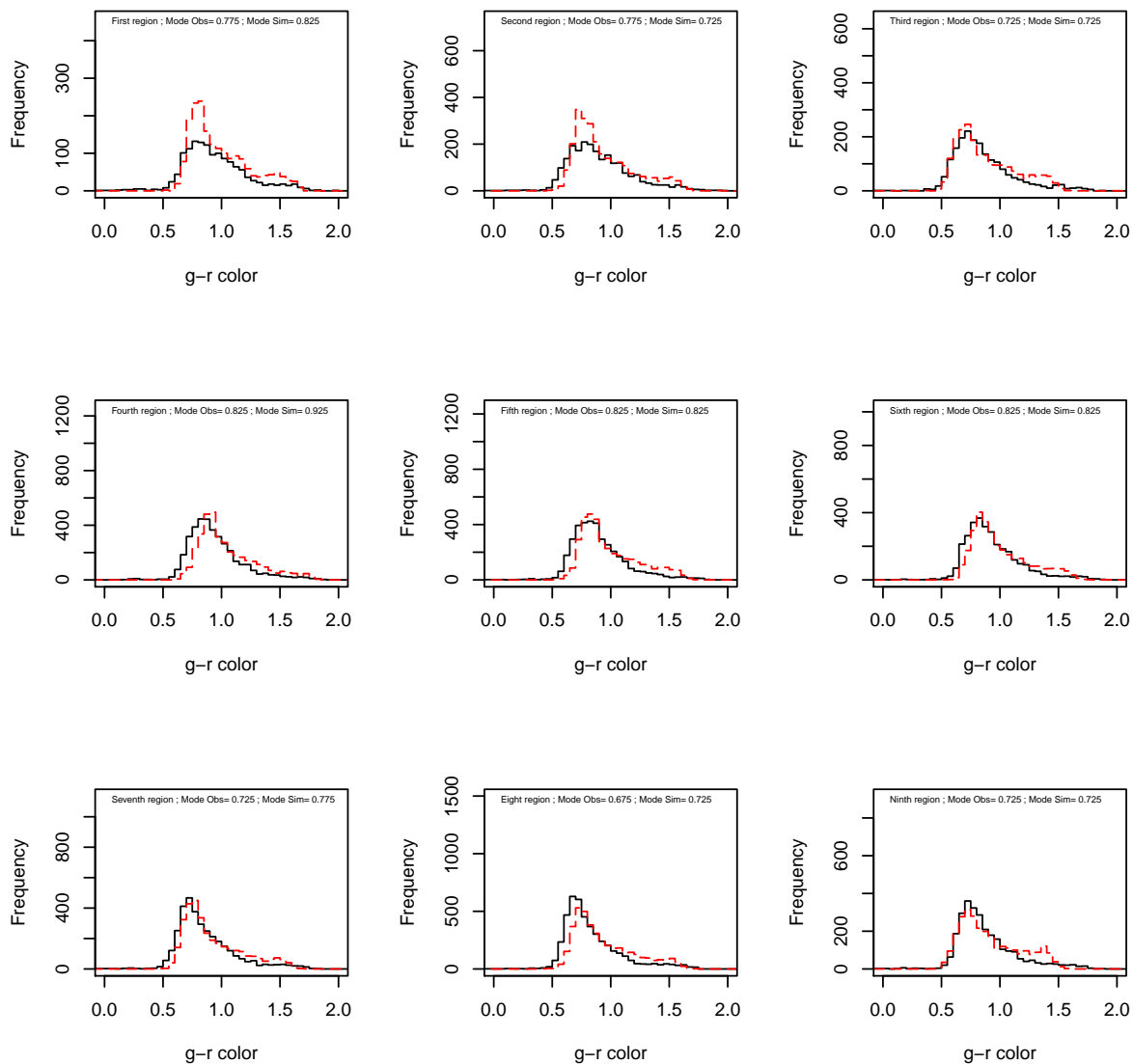


Figure 7.30: Color distribution for each individual region of the field 2681. The black histograms are observations and the red histograms are simulations.

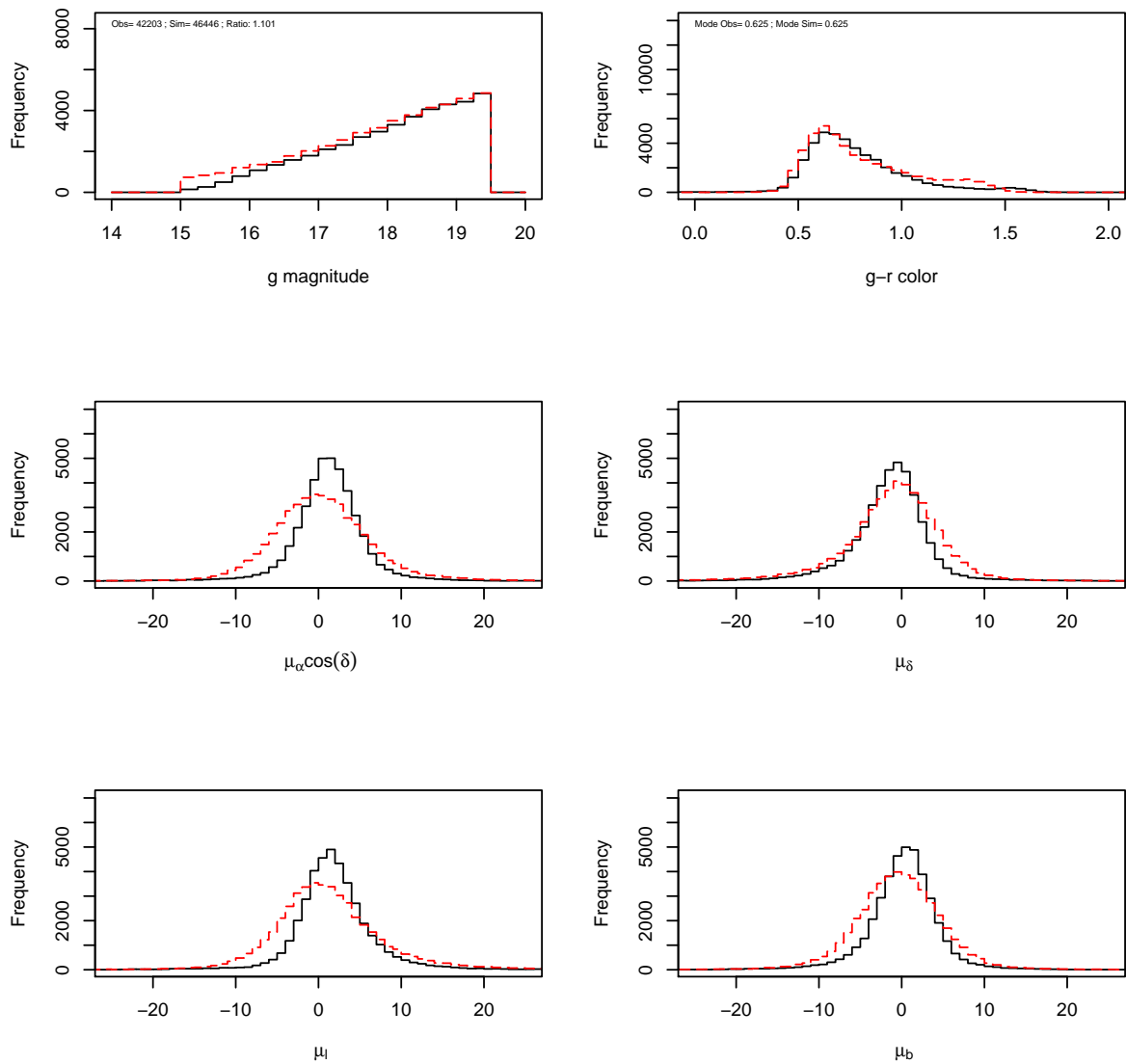


Figure 7.31: Magnitude, color (top panels) and proper motion distributions (middle and bottom panels) for field 2668. Black histograms are observations and the red histograms are simulations.

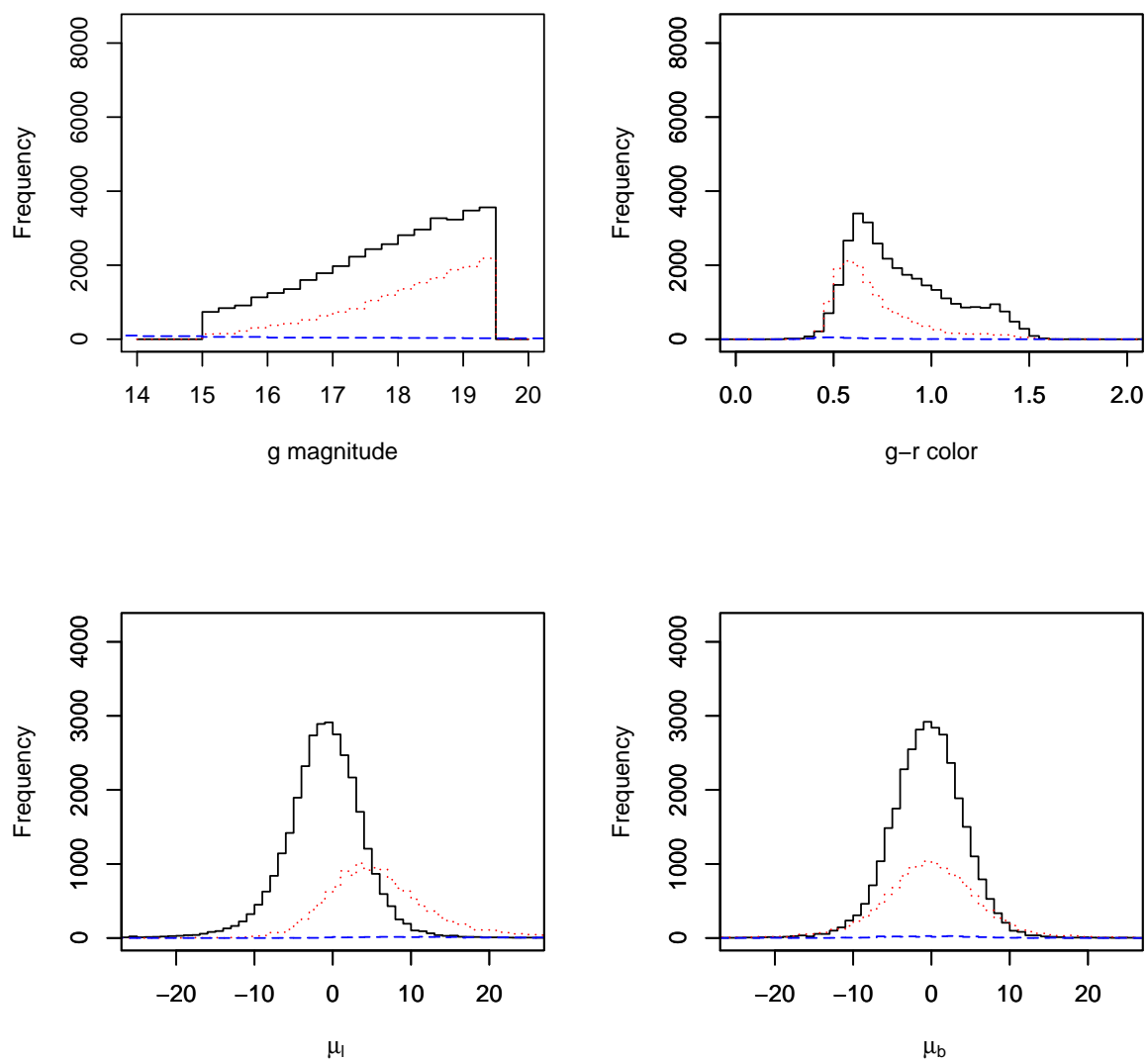


Figure 7.32: Magnitude, color (top panels) and proper motion distributions (bottom panels) separated by populations for field 2668. Thin disc stars: Black solid line; Thick disc stars: Red dotted line; Halo stars: Blue dashed line.

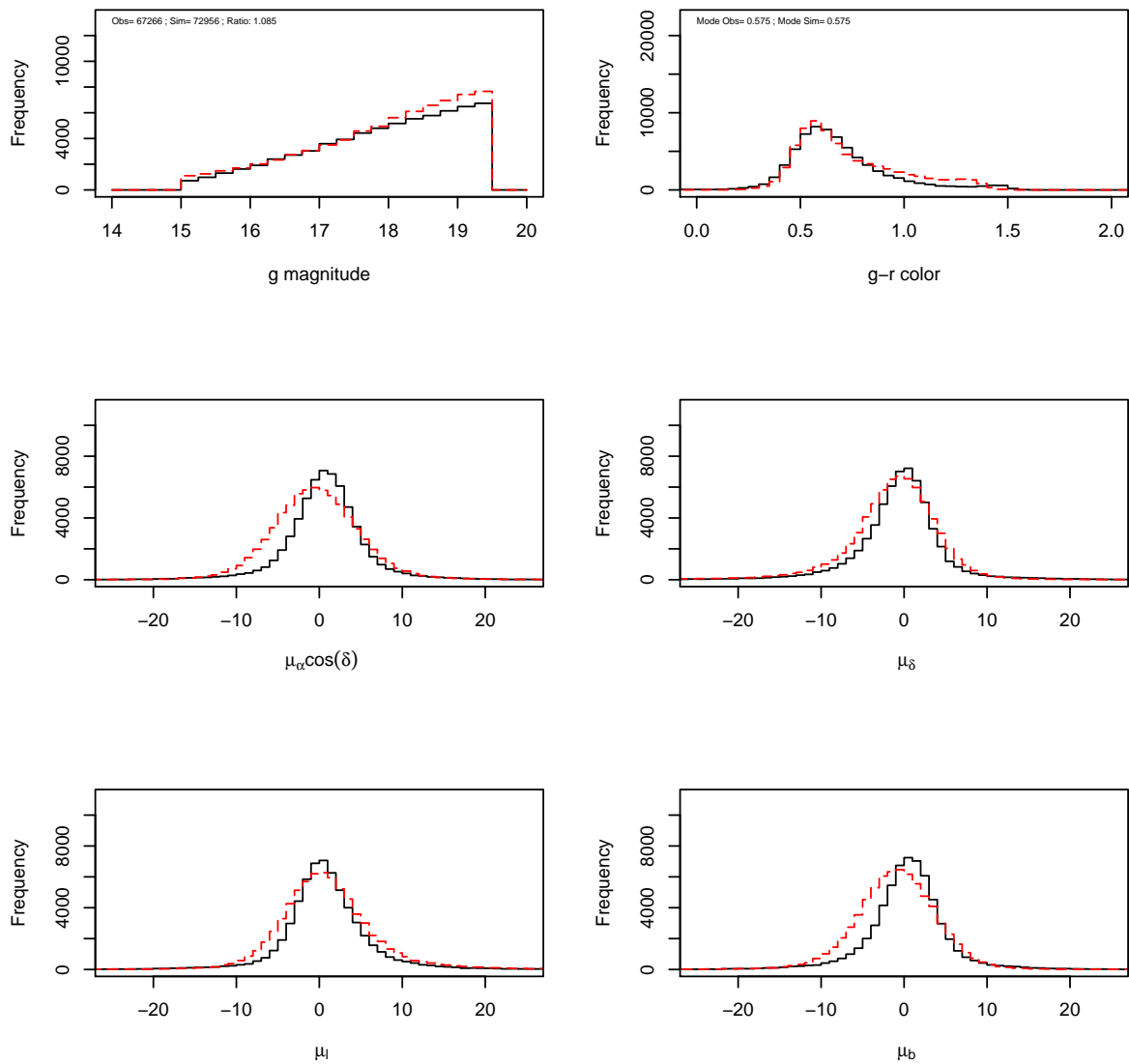


Figure 7.33: Magnitude, color (top panels) and proper motion distributions (middle and bottom panels) for field 2678. Black histograms are observations and the red histograms are simulations

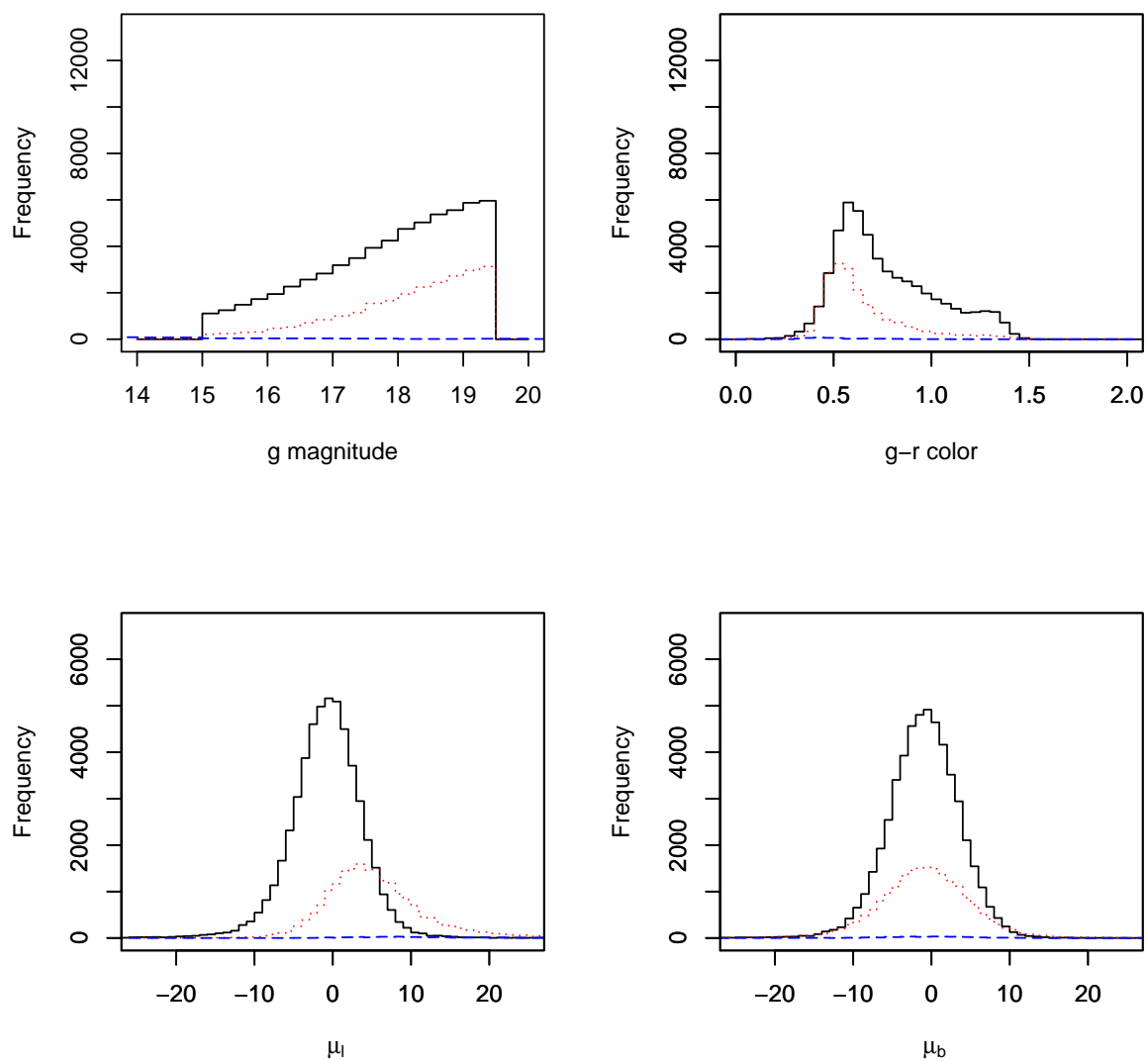


Figure 7.34: Magnitude, color (top panels) and proper motion distributions (bottom panels) separated by populations for field 2678. Thin disc stars: Black solid line; Thick disc stars: Red dotted line; Halo stars: Blue dashed line.

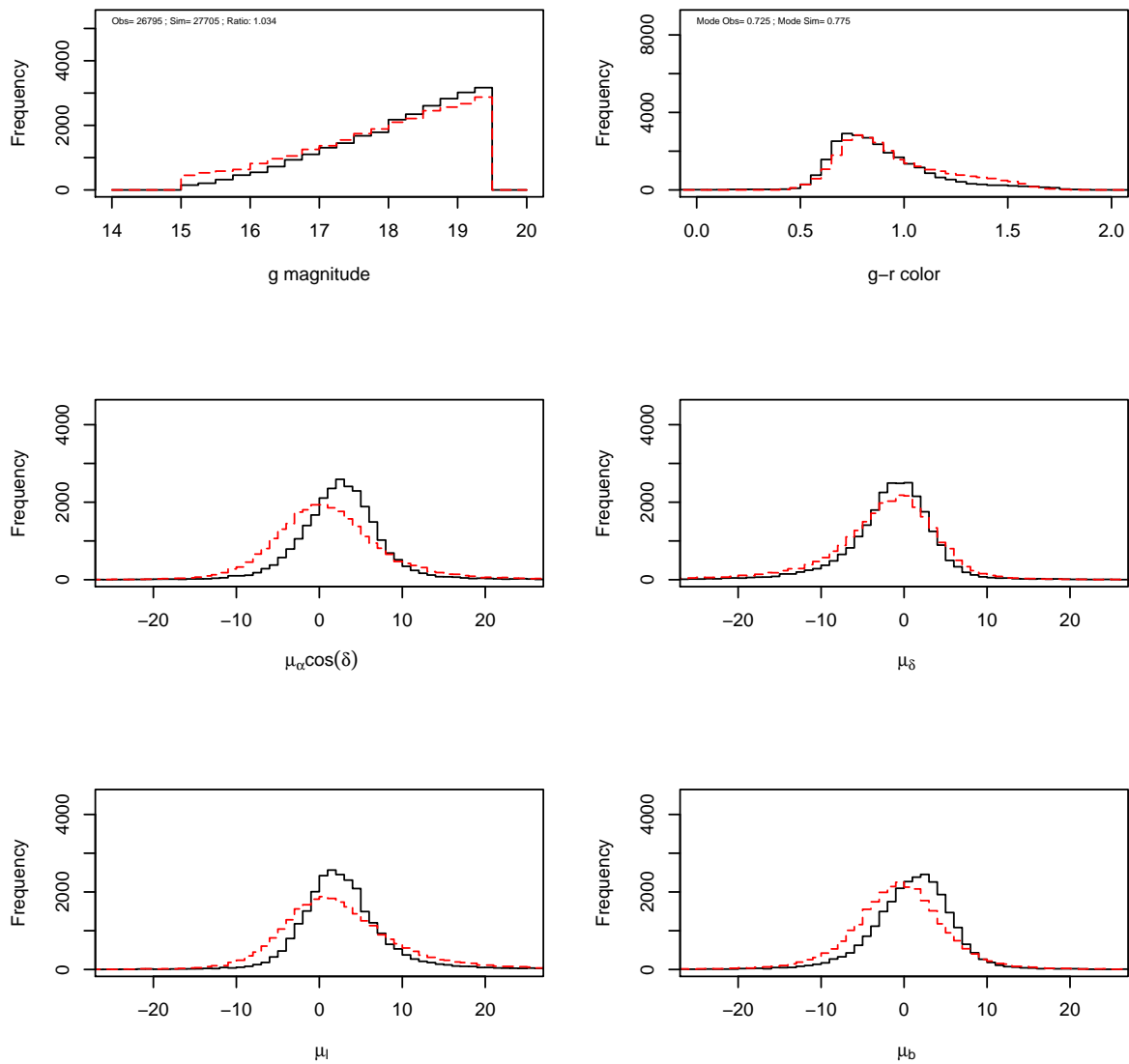


Figure 7.35: Magnitude, color (top panels) and proper motion distributions (middle and bottom panels) for field 2681. Black histograms are observations and the red histograms are simulations.

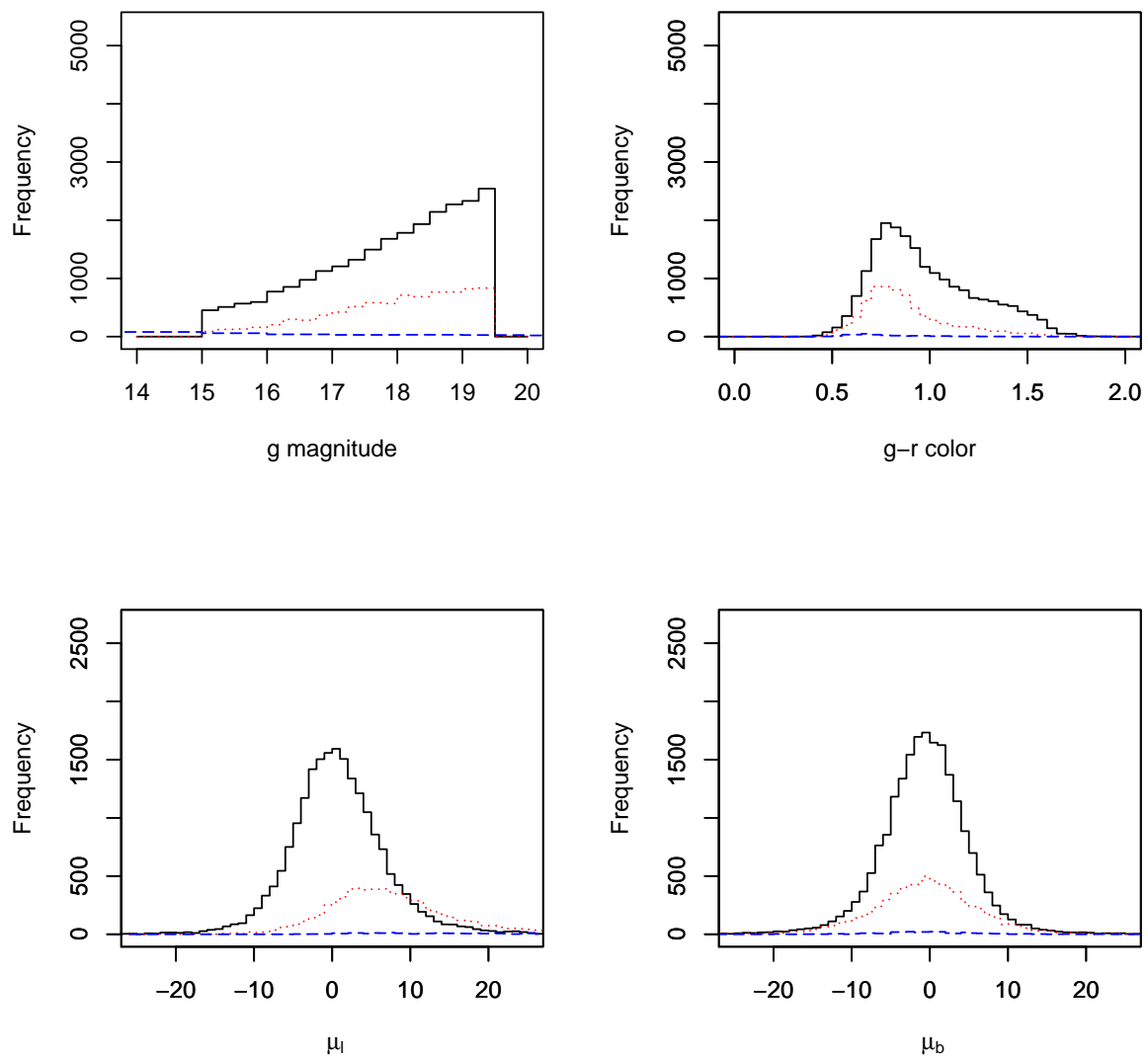


Figure 7.36: Magnitude, color (top panels) and proper motion distributions (bottom panels) separated by populations for field 2681. Thin disc stars: Black solid line; Thick disc stars: Red dotted line; Halo stars: Blue dashed line.

Table 7.1:  
Proper motions measures of central tendency (Mean and Mode) and of dispersion (Standard deviation) for the l-component

Field	Mean <sub>obs</sub> (mas yr <sup>-1</sup> )	Mean <sub>sim</sub> (mas yr <sup>-1</sup> )	Mode <sub>obs</sub> (mas yr <sup>-1</sup> )	Mode <sub>sim</sub> (mas yr <sup>-1</sup> )	$\sigma_{obs}$ mas yr <sup>-1</sup>	$\sigma_{sim}$ (mas yr <sup>-1</sup> )
2534	-1.77	-5.33	-2.35	-5.45	9.04	8.46
2536	-2.46	-4.81	-2.76	-4.52	8.34	9.02
2537	-0.34	-2.38	-1.24	-3.15	9.32	9.02
2538	0.03	-1.30	0.27	-3.11	11.41	14.50
2554	-1.87	-3.22	-2.27	-4.05	8.29	9.99
2555	0.31	-3.65	0.11	-4.30	9.29	10.52
2556	-0.46	-3.87	-0.63	-3.76	7.54	7.92
2668	2.09	1.52	1.14	0.20	6.84	9.55
2678	0.93	1.20	-0.18	0.52	8.48	8.13
2681	3.11	2.44	1.87	-0.08	8.73	11.66

### 7.1.5 Proper motions

Tables 7.1 and 7.2 show the mean, mode and dispersion for the proper motion components l and b respectively. Tables show that the model reproduces the proper motion distribution, the mean, mode and dispersion. For an easier inspection of the tables we plot in figure 7.37 the proper motion measures of central tendency (Mean and Mode) and dispersion (Standard deviation) as a function of the galactic coordinates. Even if the overall distribution is reproduced, there is a slight shift in the l component of the proper motion. This slight shift is particularly clear in the top left panel where observations are systematically larger than simulations. The shifts in the l component of the proper motion depend on the longitude because the anticenter fields show a better agreement than the fields with shorter longitudes which means that the component V, defined as the circular velocity of the UVW triad needs to be revised. The shifts do not depend on the galactic latitude.

The b component of the proper motion seem also to be shifted by a few amount that is particularly evident for the anticenter fields. It can be due to the presence of some structure or indicates that the b component of the proper motions needs also to be revised. Analysis and better constrains of the kinematics in the model are being done by other collaborators.



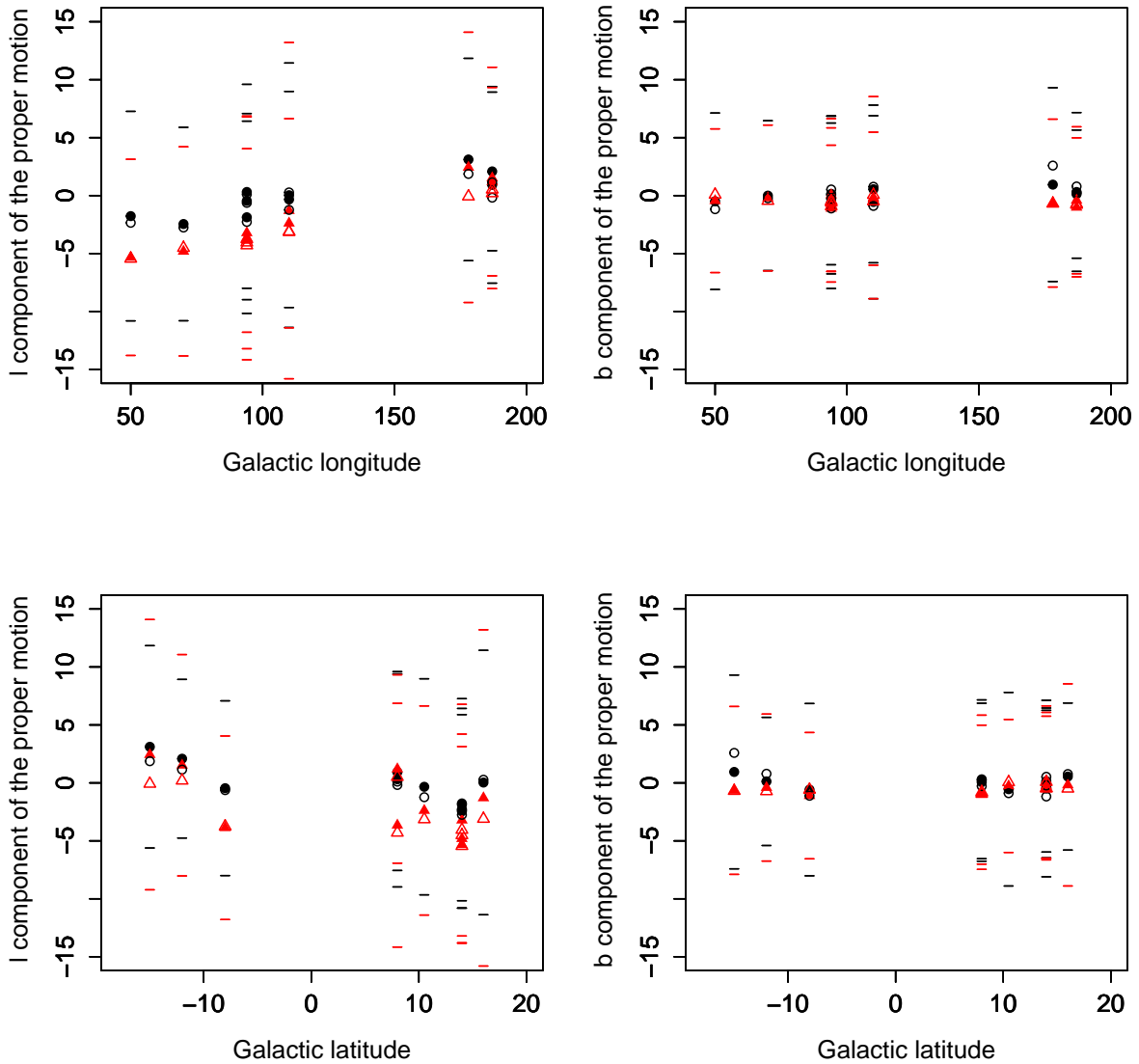


Figure 7.37: Proper motion (in  $mas\ yr^{-1}$ ) measures of central tendency (Mean and Mode) and of dispersion (Standard deviation) as a function of the galactic coordinates. black filled circles: mean of the observations; black open circles: mode of the observations; red filled triangles: mean of the simulations; red open triangles: mode of the simulations. Top panel: l and b components of the proper motion as a function of the galactic longitude. Bottom panel: l and b components of the proper motion as a function of the galactic latitude.

Table 7.2:  
Proper motions measures of central tendency (Mean and Mode) and of dispersion (Standard deviation) for the b-component

Field	Mean <sub>obs</sub> (mas yr <sup>-1</sup> )	Mean <sub>sim</sub> (mas yr <sup>-1</sup> )	Mode <sub>obs</sub> (mas yr <sup>-1</sup> )	Mode <sub>sim</sub> (mas yr <sup>-1</sup> )	σ <sub>obs</sub> mas yr <sup>-1</sup>	σ <sub>sim</sub> (mas yr <sup>-1</sup> )
2534	-0.49	-0.45	-1.18	0.08	7.61	6.20
2536	-0.01	-0.21	-0.23	-0.46	6.46	6.29
2537	-0.55	-0.27	-0.89	0.06	8.35	5.74
2538	0.55	-0.18	0.76	-0.50	6.34	8.72
2554	0.14	0.05	0.53	-0.48	6.11	6.59
2555	0.06	-0.81	-0.28	-0.93	6.81	6.65
2556	-0.59	-1.10	-1.11	-0.59	7.43	5.45
2668	0.13	-0.41	0.79	-0.72	5.53	6.34
2678	0.31	-1.01	0.24	-0.80	6.85	6.00
2681	0.94	-0.65	2.59	-0.70	8.36	7.24

## 7.2 Constraining the Initial Mass Function

### 7.2.1 Method

The Initial mass function (IMF), is the distribution in mass of the stars at their birth. The IMF is assumed to follow power laws by intervals of masses. The slopes and mass ranges are given in table 3.1. We developed a program to constrain the IMF slope in the thin disc. We do not include field 2555 ((l,b)=(94°,8°)) due to the large difference in star counts between observations and simulations. The 9 fields have 608 421 stars. This program tries to find the best IMF slope doing a  $\chi^2$  minimization of the star counts for bins of magnitude  $g$  (0.5 mag) and color  $g-r$  (0.05 mag). The  $\chi^2$  is defined by

$$\chi^2 = \sum_i \frac{1}{N-1} \frac{O_i - E_i}{E_i} \quad (7.1)$$

where  $O_i$  and  $E_i$  are respectively the observed and simulated number of stars in bin  $i$  and  $N$  is the number of bins. Each time we test a new IMF slope the number of stars in the simulated bins has to change. For each star we give a weight  $\omega$  that is equal to the difference between the assumed IMF in the model and the IMF slope to test.

$$\omega(m) = m^{(IMF_{[original]} - IMF_{[test]})} \quad (7.2)$$

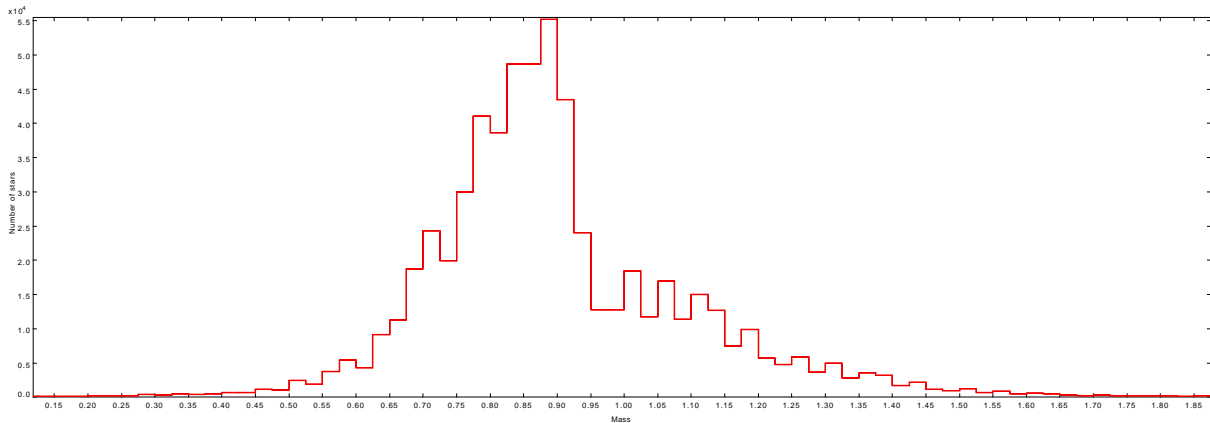


Figure 7.38: Mass distribution for the fields used to fit the IMF as given by the standard model.

We fill the color magnitude bins with the computed weights. The IMF slope ( $\alpha = -(x + 1)$ ) is allowed to vary between zero and one for stars in the thin disc where the mass ranges from 0.5 to 1.53 solar masses. Figure 7.38 shows the range of masses at which we are sensible.

## 7.2.2 Results

The best result for the IMF slope was equal to 0.58, for  $\chi^2 \approx 46.86$  (The original one is  $\chi^2 \approx 46.88$ ). Figure 7.39 shows the  $\chi^2$  values as a function of the IMF slope. Although we have a minimum value the small (in the decimal case) variation of the  $\chi^2$  values, for different IMF slopes, is not significant as seen in figure 7.39. We have tried to change the mass range (0.5 to 1.0 and 1.0 to 1.53) where we want to constrain the IMF slope but the results did not change. We have included, in our fit, the IMF of the thick disc as a variable but results were not obtained. An explanation is that for most of the fields the agreement is already very good and if it not good it is due to something else than the IMF slope. The lesson to learn here is that the IMF is not playing an important role. It seems that these data and this particular range of magnitudes are not much sensitive to the IMF but rather to quantities like the scale length or the warp of the disc.

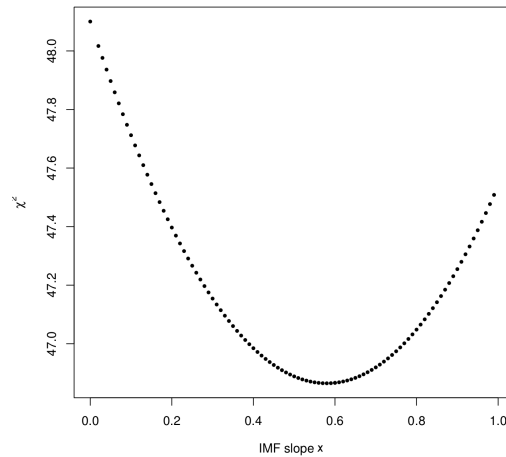


Figure 7.39:  $\chi^2$  as a function of the IMF slopes.

### 7.3 Comparison with a new version of the Besançon galaxy model

We compare model A and model B of the revised version of the Besançon Galaxy Model (Czekaj et al. 2014), where more flexibility is possible for testing variable SFR history, IMF, and which takes into account a complete treatment of the binarity, with data. We have compared the standard model with two versions (model A and model B) of the revised version explained in section 3.4. We have done 10 simulations and we compute the mean  $\chi^2$  for each parameter. The  $\sigma$  is computed from the standard deviation of the 10 runs and is given for each spectroscopic parameter. The results are given in table 7.3. The degrees of freedom for magnitude, color and color-magnitude are given in table 7.4.

This table shows that the standard model and model B of the revised model are the best models. The Figures 7.40, 7.41 and 7.42 show the  $\chi^2$  values for the magnitude, color and color magnitude respectively in each field for the original and model B as a function of the galactic longitude. The color code is the galactic latitude. The table and figures indicate that the magnitude distribution for both models is compatible inside errors while for the color and color magnitude distribution model B is slightly better. Model B results are better for the anti center fields and it seems to be slightly better for fields near the plane except field 2555 (See fields with galactic latitudes lower or equal to  $14^\circ$ ).

In general model A results show a slightly larger  $\chi^2$  value compared with model B but results are very similar and inside errors. In the anticenter directions model A is even slightly worse than the original model. In the intermediate longitudes model A is compatible with model B and shows the same galactic latitude pattern already explained above for model B.

Table 7.3:  
 $\chi^2$  values (magnitude(m), color(c) and color-magnitude(c-m)) along with dispersion (for the standard model). Last three lines show the sum of  $\chi^2$  values for all fields.

Model	field	$\chi^2$ (m)	$\sigma$	$\chi^2$ (c)	$\sigma$	$\chi^2$ (c-m)	$\sigma$	l(deg)	b(deg)
Original	2534	3265.44	292.20	21039.85	2154.79	28835.01	2687.61	50	14
Model A	2534	6320.42	653.65	20919.18	3045.92	30900.25	2989.88		
Model B	2534	6647.83	339.59	20766.18	2302.89	31113.17	2758.46		
Original	2536	1697.94	92.01	9959.42	475.77	15467.01	578.73	70	14
Model A	2536	1935.88	227.97	8284.36	1283.17	13368.85	1424.70		
Model B	2536	1639.00	107.00	7471.17	441.14	12256.37	504.47		
Original	2537	1836.61	156.51	4408.88	556.79	8282.27	553.98	110	10.5
Model A	2537	1710.19	331.36	2480.89	275.28	6678.06	244.29		
Model B	2537	1501.28	206.74	2336.22	176.35	6009.54	389.89		
Original	2538	2146.81	188.00	1781.97	161.72	5522.17	650.38	110	16
Model A	2538	1838.94	211.77	1690.52	351.36	5533.93	864.50		
Model B	2538	2125.74	182.68	2027.34	173.12	5568.46	526.91		
Original	2554	316.90	41.46	5459.37	307.75	9508.80	401.40	94	14
Model A	2554	363.37	34.28	3544.08	390.68	7115.28	511.95		
Model B	2554	253.73	29.68	3368.69	366.52	6611.06	433.12		
Original	2555	8825.03	727.44	7768.20	920.26	17436.47	2177.05	94	8
Model A	2555	10557.53	1211.90	10164.74	1314.28	18775.38	2167.23		
Model B	2555	11847.37	840.84	11327.78	708.97	18551.59	1324.34		
Original	2556	4439.79	385.20	20053.89	635.30	27883.31	832.51	94	-8
Model A	2556	3209.40	1143.53	13923.36	2141.59	18845.17	1621.52		
Model B	2556	1863.66	86.28	9226.29	629.56	15088.31	849.18		
Original	2668	5127.29	424.42	7925.56	420.67	15888.61	1046.29	187	-12
Model A	2668	6430.66	392.83	9440.03	1350.76	19693.12	2333.91		
Model B	2668	3757.83	374.96	6823.93	826.05	14581.14	1380.03		
Original	2678	1015.57	83.38	14585.23	461.63	23804.41	539.95	187	8
Model A	2678	1911.33	1592.96	7868.66	465.81	28462.09	2749.10		
Model B	2678	548.01	43.62	6201.01	320.24	26934.50	1361.78		
Original	2681	1921.90	149.13	3144.32	284.41	7997.68	392.73	178	-15
Model A	2681	2565.13	248.59	5994.60	993.20	11098.42	1181.17		
Model B	2681	1356.96	178.74	3409.18	573.70	7530.02	754.41		
Original	All	30593.28	2539.75	96126.69	6379.08	160625.76	9860.63		
Model A	All	36842.86	6048.83	84310.42	11612.04	160470.55	16088.24		
Model B	All	31541.42	2390.14	72957.79	6518.54	144244.16	10282.60		

Table 7.4:  
Degrees of freedom (df) for magnitude(m), color(c) and color-magnitude(c-m).

Field	df(m)	df(c)	df(c-m)
2534	44	36	1336
2536	44	34	1305
2537	44	38	1175
2538	44	37	1040
2554	44	34	1268
2555	44	37	1409
2556	44	36	1322
2668	44	37	1181
2678	44	34	1234
2681	44	39	1152

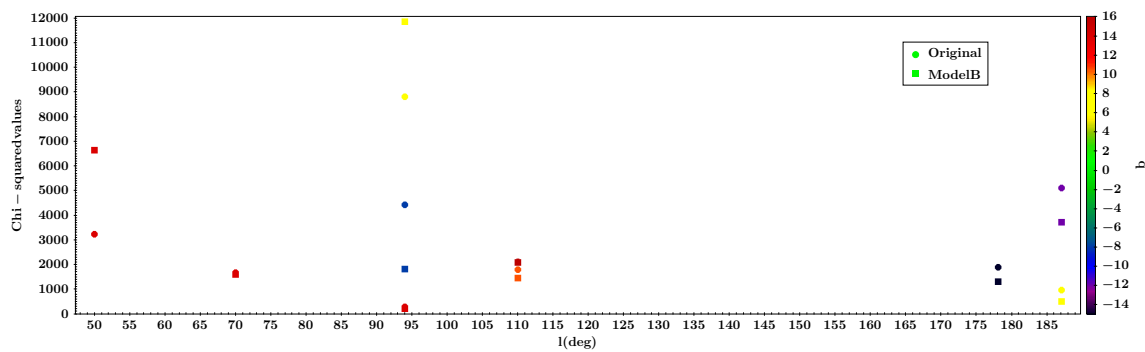


Figure 7.40:  $\chi^2$  for the magnitude distribution as a function of galactic longitude. The color coding is galactic latitude. Circles are the original simulation and squares are model B of the revised version of the BGM.

These comparisons between the original and revised model have to be done but in general the revised model seems to describe better the magnitude and color distributions near the plane when compared to the original model. To confirm these results a comparison using more data sets in the plane should be done.

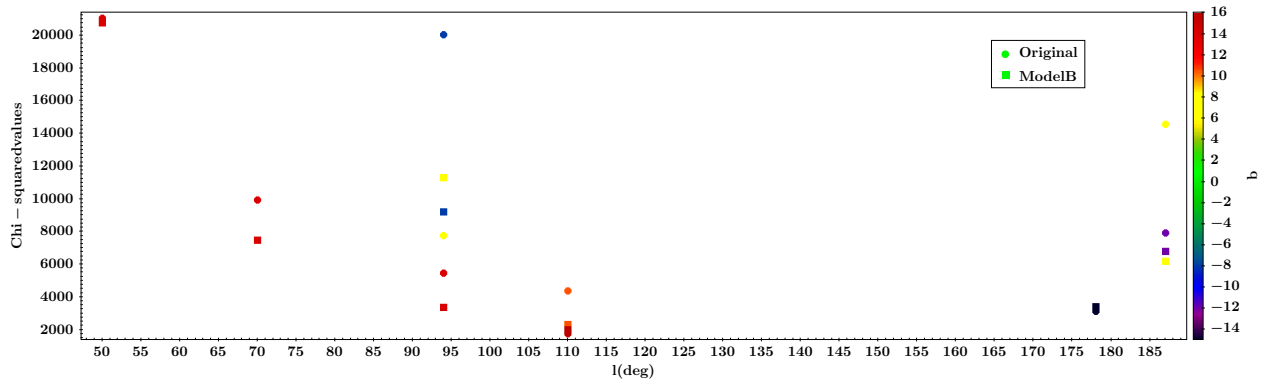


Figure 7.41:  $\chi^2$  for the color distribution as a function of galactic longitude. The color coding is galactic latitude. Circles are the original simulation and squares are model B of the revised version of the BGM.

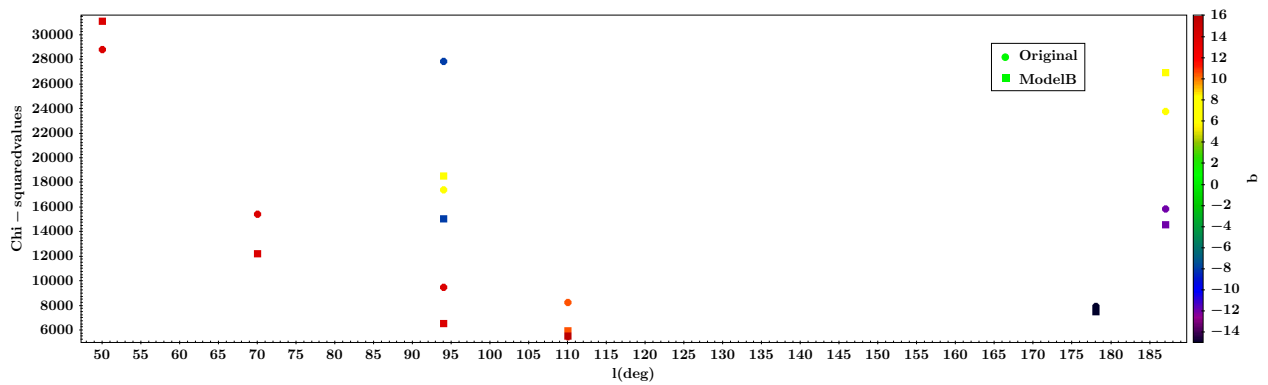


Figure 7.42:  $\chi^2$  for the color magnitude distribution as a function of galactic longitude. The color coding is galactic latitude. Circles are the original simulation and squares are model B of the revised version of the BGM.

## Chapter 8

# Spectroscopic results from the SEGUE low latitude data

In this section we present the work done with the spectroscopic samples selected as explained in section 5. Section 8.1 describes the method, discussion and conclusions for analysis made to the Main Sequence Turnoff stars sample while section 8.3 describes the results obtained for the K giants sample.

### 8.1 Main Sequence Turn off stars

#### 8.1.1 Comparison between observations and simulations

In Table 8.1 we show the proportion of thin to thick disc stars, selected from the two populations in the model, for each field in the simulated catalogs. The mass range in the thin disc, for the selected sample, is between  $0.9 M_{\odot}$  and  $1.5 M_{\odot}$  and for the thick disc is between  $0.7 M_{\odot}$  and  $0.95 M_{\odot}$ . The sample covers a galactocentric distance in the range  $6.0 < R_{gal} < 15$  kpc and a distance above the plane in the range  $-1.5 < Z < 1.5$  kpc as shown in figure 8.1.

#### 8.1.2 Preliminary comparison with the standard model

We compared the simulated spectral parameters distributions with observed spectroscopic distributions.

Figure 8.2 and 8.3 show, bright and faint plates respectively from field 2537 towards  $l = 110^{\circ}$  and  $b = 10.5^{\circ}$ , comparisons for three parameters: The metallicity, the temperature and the gravity. The comparison regarding the faint plate of the same field is done in Figure 8.3.

---



Table 8.1:

The number of stars of the thick disc/thin disc in the standard model in each plate for the bright (b) and faint (f) plates after applying the selection sample. The number of stars in each plate and the mode of the total extinction  $A_V$  for each distribution are also indicated.

Plate	thin/thick (b)	thin/thick (f)	$N^o$ of stars (b)	$N^o$ of stars (f)	$A_V$ (mag)	$l(^{\circ})$	$b(^{\circ})$
2534	75/102	20/249	181	285	0.605	50	14
2536	67/109	29/256	183	314	0.550	70	14
2537	129/59	156/146	190	304	0.961	110	10.5
2538	201/85	134/192	288	329	1.764	110	16
2554	91/125	48/262	222	332	0.691	94	14
2555	153/24	128/69	177	199	1.852	94	8
2556	159/45	148/153	209	302	0.848	94	-8
2668	201/73	211/180	276	393	0.683	187	14
2678	170/61	205/115	232	322	0.519	187	8
2681	177/93	166/189	276	361	0.918	178	-15

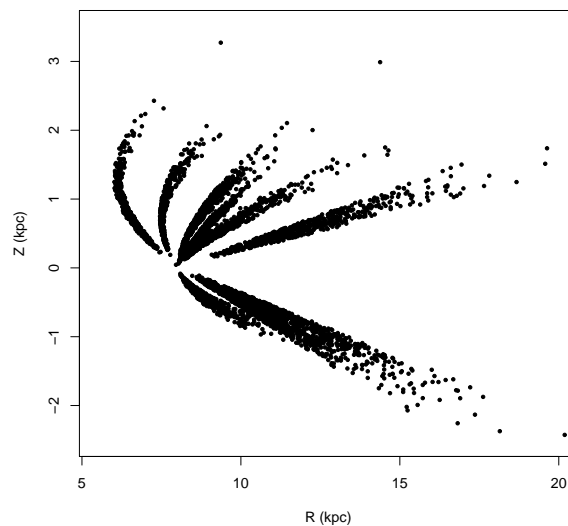


Figure 8.1: Distance from the plane as a function of the galactocentric distance for the MSTO stars sample as given by the simulations.

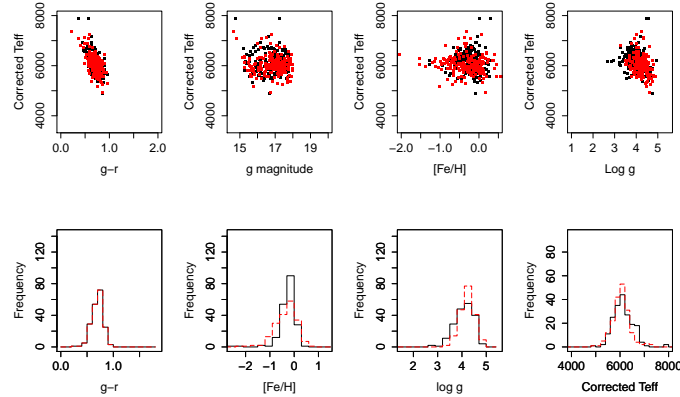


Figure 8.2: Comparison of the spectroscopic observations and simulations for the bright plate 2537,  $l = 110^\circ$  and  $b = 10.5^\circ$ . Black points and lines are observations. Simulations are in red.

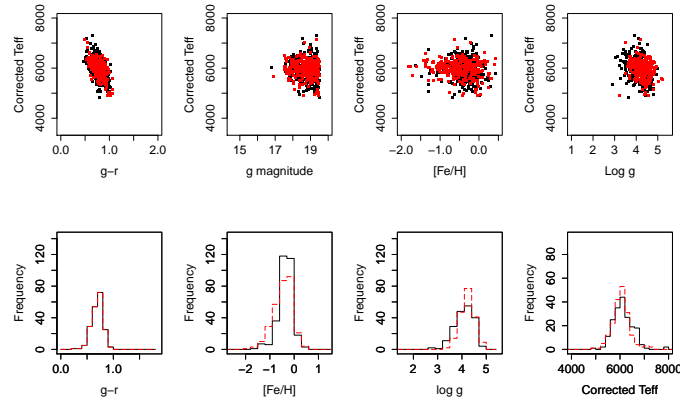


Figure 8.3: Comparison of the spectroscopic observations and simulations for the faint plate 2545,  $l = 110^\circ$  and  $b = 10.5^\circ$ . Black points and lines are observations. Simulations are in red.

We noticed that the simulated metallicity distribution has a stronger low metallicity tail than the observations. The fields we use in this work have a significant contribution of thick disc stars (see Table 8.1), so the metallicity distribution assumed in the model for this population should be revised. It suggests that the thick disc mean metallicity assumed in the model ( $[Fe/H] = -0.78$  dex) may be too low. In other fields the metallicity distribution is similar. For the temperature and gravity the agreement between simulations and observations is acceptable.

Table 8.2 shows likelihood of the simulations with regard to observations for different spectral parameters. The bright plates and faint plates are treated together. In order to estimate the goodness of fit of the model which will be used for improving the fit, we compute a likelihood. The goodness of fit estimation values are computed from the Bienaymé et al. (1987) reduced log likelihood formula for a binomial statistics (Kendall & Stuart 1973).

Table 8.2:  
Likelihood values for the spectroscopic parameters (MSTO stars) - original model

Plate	[Fe/H]	$\sigma$	$T_{\text{eff}}$	$\sigma$	$\log g$	$\sigma$	RV	$\sigma$	l	b
2534	-90.72	17.65	-43.28	11.43	-55.63	14.57	-27.26	10.17	50	14
2536	-122.71	13.85	-32.64	6.77	-17.82	6.16	-69.99	13.29	70	14
2537	-119.41	25.92	-43.36	10.71	-54.73	8.43	-96.56	13.75	110	10.5
2538	-154.28	24.88	-73.68	19.62	-19.42	5.02	-141.21	17.69	110	16
2554	-177.70	16.80	-14.04	4.54	-45.65	11.26	-50.62	8.52	94	14
2555	-52.99	12.82	-81.73	17.72	-22.22	6.19	-151.81	22.52	94	8
2556	-140.26	14.39	-31.77	4.98	-13.24	4.84	-101.26	13.79	94	-8
2668	-182.22	20.12	-145.57	17.00	-84.24	16.72	-71.16	21.51	187	-12
2678	-100.43	19.95	-81.50	8.50	-58.61	16.39	-48.09	7.76	187	8
2681	-143.03	21.35	-165.20	21.17	-71.78	10.70	-61.28	10.87	178	-15

$$L_r = \sum_{i=1}^N q_i (1 - R_i + \ln(R_i)) \quad (8.1)$$

where  $i$  is the number of bins and  $R_i = f_i/q_i$  is the ratio between the number of stars in bin  $i$  in the model ( $f_i$ ) and in the data ( $q_i$ ). We compute ten realizations of each model and compute the mean and dispersion of the likelihood obtained from each realization.

### 8.1.3 Metallicity variation with longitudes and latitudes

Figure 8.4 shows the metallicity modes along the galactic longitude. In black are observations and in red simulations for the original model before fitting. We used the mode rather than the mean because it is more robust in case of skewed distribution. It is visible from the figure that the fields at  $l = 50^\circ$  and  $l = 70^\circ$  show lower metallicities in comparison with the ones at intermediate longitudes. It is even more visible for the faint plates. We have looked at the S/N for the inner galaxy fields. The plate 2534, towards  $l = 50^\circ$  and  $b = 14^\circ$ , has a lower S/N compared with the remaining fields but still above 15, which is sufficient to retrieve robust spectral parameters from the SSPP (Lee et al. 2008a).

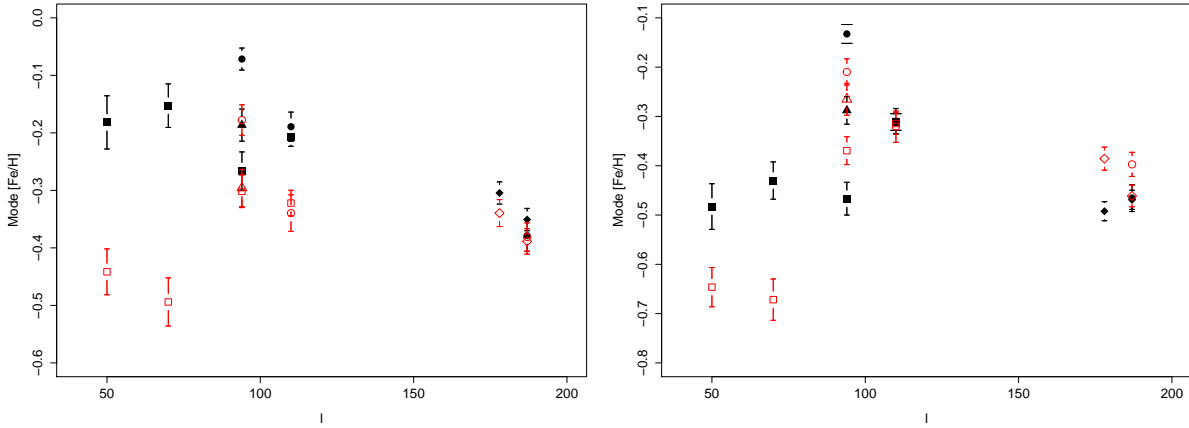


Figure 8.4: Mode of metallicities at different longitudes for the data and the standard model. left panel are the bright plates and right panel are the faint plates. The observations are in black and the simulations in red. The standard deviation is represented by the small bars. Squares are latitudes higher or equal to  $14^\circ$ ; Circles are latitudes between  $8^\circ$  and  $10.5^\circ$ ; Triangles are latitudes equal to  $-8^\circ$ ; Diamonds correspond to latitudes  $-12^\circ$  and  $-15^\circ$ .

### 8.1.4 Distances

For this work we are not interested in computing the distances in a completely unbiased way, but in having a relative distance estimator with same biases in the simulated catalogue and in the observations. In the simulated catalogue, because we selected main sequence stars, there is a relation between effective temperature and absolute magnitude. The relation is metallicity dependent so we have divided the sample in three metallicity ranges:

- $[Fe/H] \leq -0.5$
- $-0.5 < [Fe/H] < 0.0$
- $[Fe/H] \geq 0.0$

For the two first metallicity ranges we estimate absolute magnitude as a function of temperature as a second order polynomial based on model simulations. For the third metallicity range we fitted a simple first order because the second order coefficient is null. Figure 8.5 shows the relations for the three ranges of metallicities. The fitted relations are given in equation 8.2.

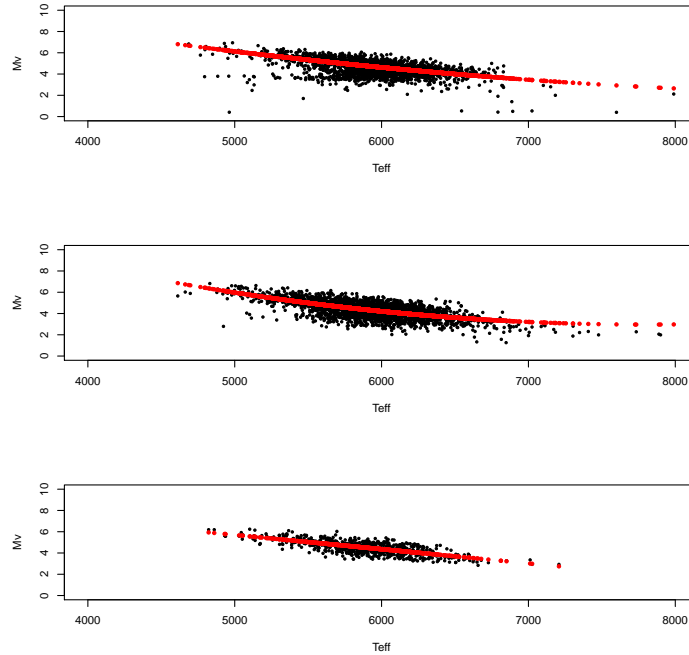


Figure 8.5: Relation between effective temperature and absolute magnitude for the different metallicity ranges. Top panel:  $[Fe/H] \leq -0.5$ . Middle panel:  $-0.5 < [Fe/H] < 0.0$ . Bottom panel:  $[Fe/H] \geq 0.0$ . Black points are simulations and the red line is the fit.

$$M_V(T_{\text{eff}}) = \begin{cases} 18.80 - 0.003T_{\text{eff}} + 1.715 \times 10^{-07}T_{\text{eff}}^2 & \text{if } [Fe/H] \leq -0.5 \\ 26.24 - 0.006T_{\text{eff}} + 3.821 \times 10^{-07}T_{\text{eff}}^2 & \text{if } -0.5 < [Fe/H] < 0.0 \\ 12.39 - 0.001T_{\text{eff}} & \text{if } [Fe/H] \geq 0.0 \end{cases} \quad (8.2)$$

The V magnitude is computed from the equations (Lupton 2005)<sup>1</sup> to convert from SDSS to Johnson system. Having the absolute magnitude and the apparent magnitude we can compute the distance modulus for each star. To evaluate the extinction we compute the mean extinction, for each plate (separating bright and faint plates), in the nine different regions already mentioned in the above extinction correction algorithm. Figure 8.6 shows the difference between the new computed distance and the distance given by the model as a function of the distance given by the model for all stars in our sample. There is a clear asymmetry in the y axis for distances larger than 5 kpc. This asymmetry is due to the large dispersion for high temperatures in the absolute magnitude temperature relation. This implies that our relation is weaker for high temperatures producing a bias in distances. We have compared the results from our method with the ones

<sup>1</sup><http://www.sdss.org/dr4/algorithms/sdssUBVRITransform.html>

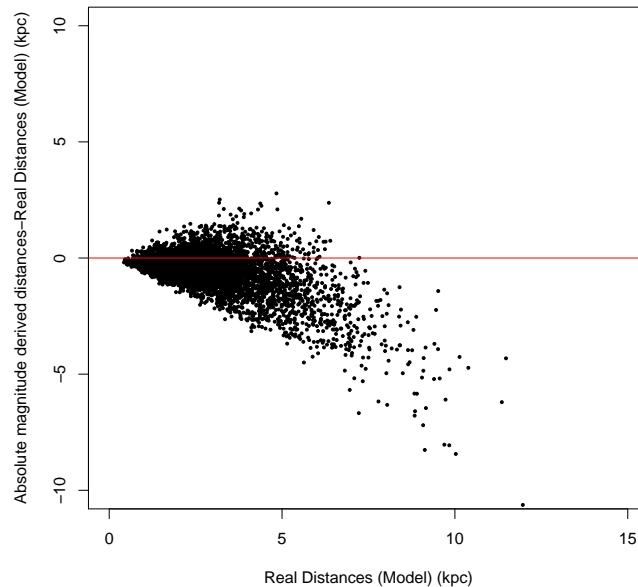


Figure 8.6: Difference between the new computed distance and the distance given by the model as a function of the distance given by the model. The red line is an horizontal line that crosses the Y axis at zero.

from Ivezić et al. (2008). Figure 8.7 shows the results for the two methods. Ivezić et al. (2008) method computes systematically lower distances, than the ones computed from our method, specially at large distances.

Because we use the same process for observations and simulations, when we proceed with the statistical treatment, in the fitting method, the bias is the same in both catalogs. Therefore our results will be unbiased by the distance computation because we compare two distance distributions having the same bias, avoiding the use of  $\log g$  which would add a complex bias to the sample.

### 8.1.5 Fitting method

The objective is to determine the solar neighbourhood (hereafter SN) metallicity, the radial metallicity gradient and the dispersion in each population (thin and thick disc populations). It is not possible to compute analytically the likelihood. So, the likelihood we used is an estimate based on the distance between the observations and simulations. The goodness of fit is computed from equation 8.1.5. The data and simulations are binned in the distance estimate (1.0 kpc) metallicity (0.25 dex) space.

We use an ABC/MCMC (Approximate Bayesian Computation) method (Marin et al. 2011),

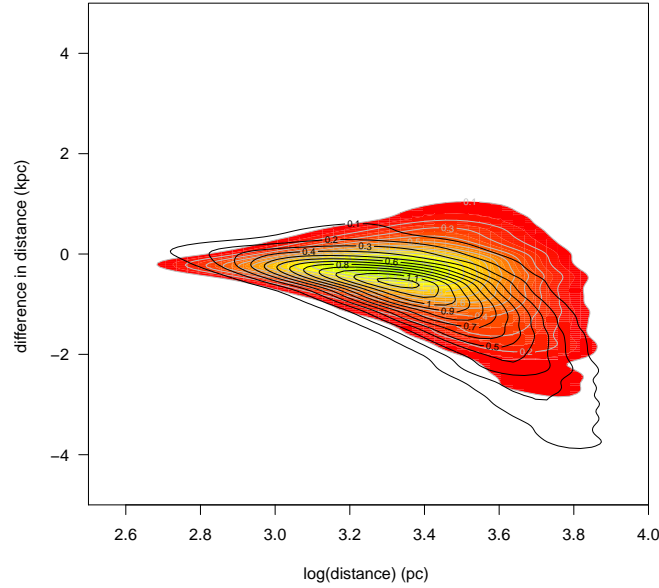


Figure 8.7: Difference between distance estimate and the distance given by the model as a function of the  $\log(\text{distance})$  given by the model. Density map and grey contours refer to our method and black contours to Ivezić et al. (2008) method.

where the sampling is done by a Metropolis-Hasting algorithm. The thin disc is composed of 7 different sub-populations of different ages (see section 3.2). We grouped two of these subpopulations in one group, the 'old thin disc', with ages from 5.0 Gyr to 10.0 Gyr. We also tried to fit all the subpopulations of the thin disc together. We called this group the 'thin disc'. We also included in the MCMC/ABC method parameters to constrain the vertical metallicity gradient in the thick and thin disc. Unfortunately the low latitude fields do not cover a large range of latitudes so the vertical metallicity gradients are very difficult to constrain.

The range for the parameters is given in Table 8.3. To explore properly the parameter space we perform 10 runs of 10 million iterations each applied on ten different simulations. The errors were computed from the final batch (the final 20% of the accepted chain) of each Markov chain and by comparison of the different runs. We explored possible correlations between parameters. In the cases where we use different number of parameters we can use the Bayesian information criterion (BIC) (Schwarz 1978) to compare results.

$$BIC = -2. \times L_r + k \times \ln(n) \quad (8.3)$$

where  $k$  is the number of parameters and  $n$  is the number of observations. In our work the

Table 8.3:

Set of parameter range. The thick disc parameters have the subscript 'Thick', the old thin disc parameters have the subscript 'Old thin' and the thin disc parameters have the subscript 'Thin disc'.

Parameter		Minimum	Maximum
$\frac{d[Fe/H]}{dR}$	(dex/kpc)	-0.15	0.15
$[Fe/H]_{SN_{Thick}}$	(dex)	-1.0	-0.2
$(Dispersion)_{Thick}$	(dex)	0.0	0.7
$\frac{d[Fe/H]}{dR}$	(dex/kpc)	-0.2	0.1
$[Fe/H]_{SN_{Old\ Thin}}$	(dex)	-0.5	0.2
$(Dispersion)_{Old\ Thin}$	(dex)	0.0	0.6
$\frac{d[Fe/H]}{dR}$	(dex/kpc)	-0.2	0.1
$[Fe/H]_{SN_{Thin\ disc}}$	(dex)	-0.5	0.2
$(Dispersion)_{Thin\ disc}$	(dex)	0.0	0.6

number of observations is  $n = 5375$ .

To allow a more complex variation of metallicities with  $R_{gal}$  we fit separately three different cases.

- Case 1: We use all fields in the fit. The sample has 5375 stars.
- Case 2: We do not use the anticenter fields (2668, 2678 and 2681) in the fit. The sample has 3509 stars.
- Case 3: We do not use the inner fields (2534 and 2536) in the fit. The sample has 5004 stars.

Case 1 performs a global fit to our sample whereas case 2 and 3 allow an inspection of the metallicity distribution in the inner and outer disc respectively. In the following subsections we will discuss case by case.

### 8.1.6 Case 1

In the general case we fitted the old thin disc and thick disc parameters. Table 8.4 contains the fitted model parameters, along with standard deviation for each parameter. The values are the mean of 10 different likelihood values which allows to check how much the results can change due to different model realisations. These results show that there is a flat gradient for the thick disc ( $-0.008 \pm 0.015$  dex kpc $^{-1}$ ) with a SN metallicity of  $-0.465 \pm 0.033$  dex. The correlations between parameters along with the correlation factor are shown in figure 8.8. The figure and the correlation factors show that there is no correlation between the parameters aside the SN



Table 8.4:

Thick disc and thin disc metallicity mean values, when fitting the thick disc and old thin disc. The SN subscript refers to solar neighbourhood value.

case	$[Fe/H]_{SN_{Thick}}$ (dex)	$\frac{d[Fe/H]}{dR}$ (dex kpc $^{-1}$ )	Disp (dex)	$[Fe/H]_{SN_{Old Thin}}$ (dex)	$\frac{d[Fe/H]}{dR}$ (dex kpc $^{-1}$ )	Disp (dex)	$\mathcal{L}$	BIC
1	-0.465 $\pm 0.033$	-0.008 $\pm 0.015$	0.319 $\pm 0.029$	-0.116 $\pm 0.012$	-0.079 $\pm 0.015$	0.135 $\pm 0.011$	-511.05 $\pm 16.63$	1084.66
2	-0.449 $\pm 0.028$	0.031 $\pm 0.025$	0.319 $\pm 0.032$	-0.116 $\pm 0.021$	-0.086 $\pm 0.040$	0.135 $\pm 0.011$	-269.10 $\pm 9.08$	587.18
3	-0.418 $\pm 0.024$	-0.030 $\pm 0.050$	0.304 $\pm 0.038$	-0.113 $\pm 0.017$	-0.076 $\pm 0.017$	0.135 $\pm 0.011$	-440.37 $\pm 16.10$	931.85

metallicity of the thick disc as a function of the radial metallicity gradient of the thick disc (top right panel in Figure 8.8) and the SN metallicity of the old thin disc as a function of the radial metallicity gradient of the old thin disc (bottom left panel in Figure 8.8).

### 8.1.7 Case 2

Results obtained excluding the anticenter fields ( $n = 3509$ ) are shown in the second group of lines in Table 8.4. The best likelihood is obtained for a SN metallicity of the thick disc of  $-0.449 \pm 0.033$  dex and a radial metallicity gradient of this population of  $(0.031 \pm 0.025)$  dex kpc $^{-1}$ . The thin disc radial metallicity gradient is found to be  $-0.086 \pm 0.040$  dex kpc $^{-1}$  with a SN metallicity of  $-0.116 \pm 0.021$  dex. The correlations between parameters along with the correlation factors are shown in Figure 8.9. The gradient of the old thin disc and the SN metallicity of the old thin disc are strongly anticorrelated, the other parameters show almost no correlation. Hence it is difficult to constrain the thin disc radial gradient without anticenter fields with these data.

#### Considering only the thick disc

For this case we also considered fitting the thick disc alone and the results are shown in Table 8.5. The best fit is obtained for a SN metallicity of the thick disc of  $-0.456 \pm 0.028$  dex and a radial metallicity gradient of this population of  $(0.031 \pm 0.025)$  dex kpc $^{-1}$ , therefore the results are similar, inside errors, to the previous fit. The BIC statistics is similar for both cases.

#### Fitting the whole thin disc

Furthermore, for this case we also fit the thick disc along with the whole thin disc (Table 8.6). The results for the thick disc are similar, inside errors, to the previous fits. The results for the thin disc are  $-0.087 \pm 0.047$  dex kpc $^{-1}$  with a SN metallicity of  $-0.083 \pm 0.030$  dex. The errors

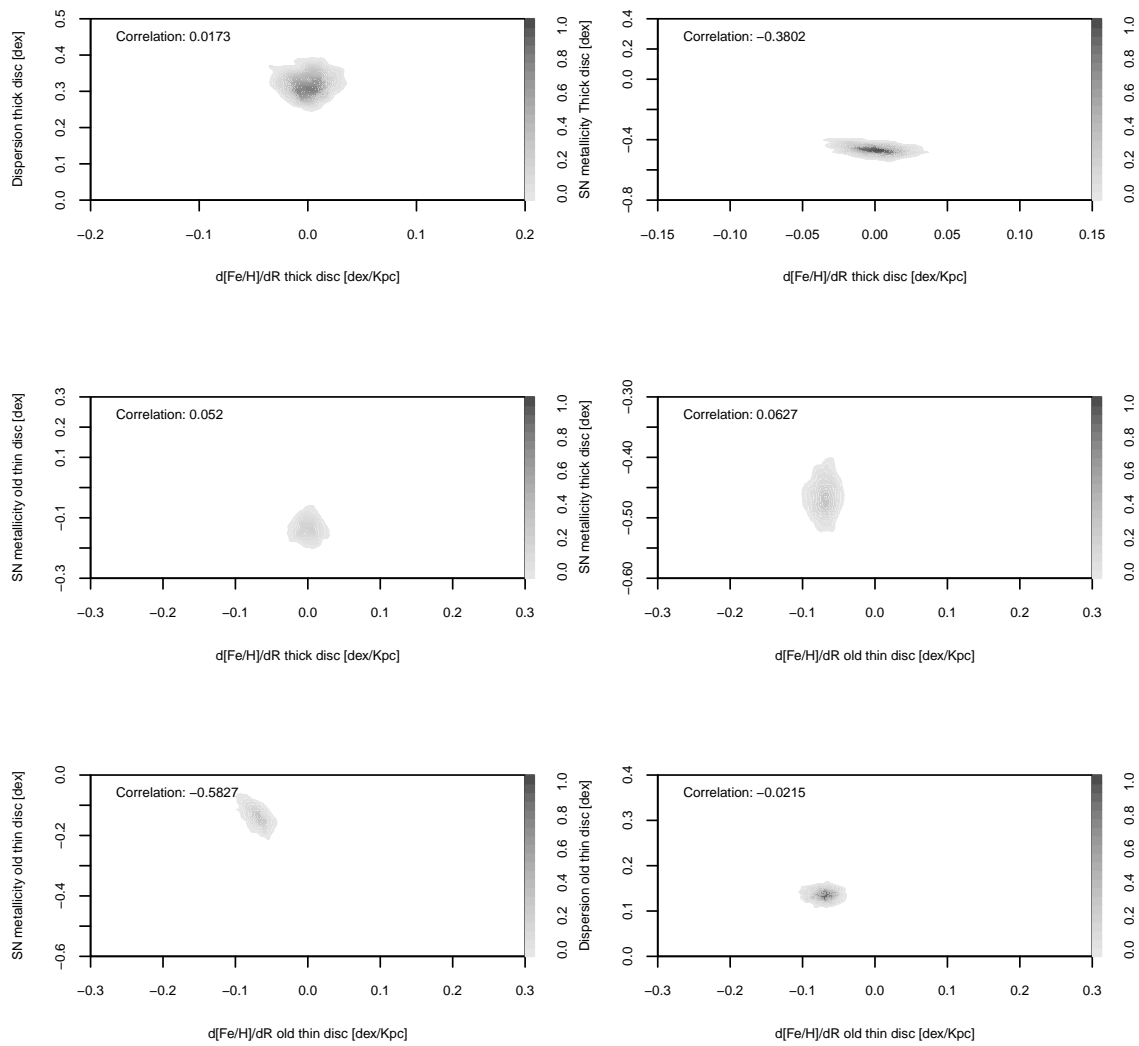


Figure 8.8: Correlations between parameters of the thick disc and old thin disc for case 1.

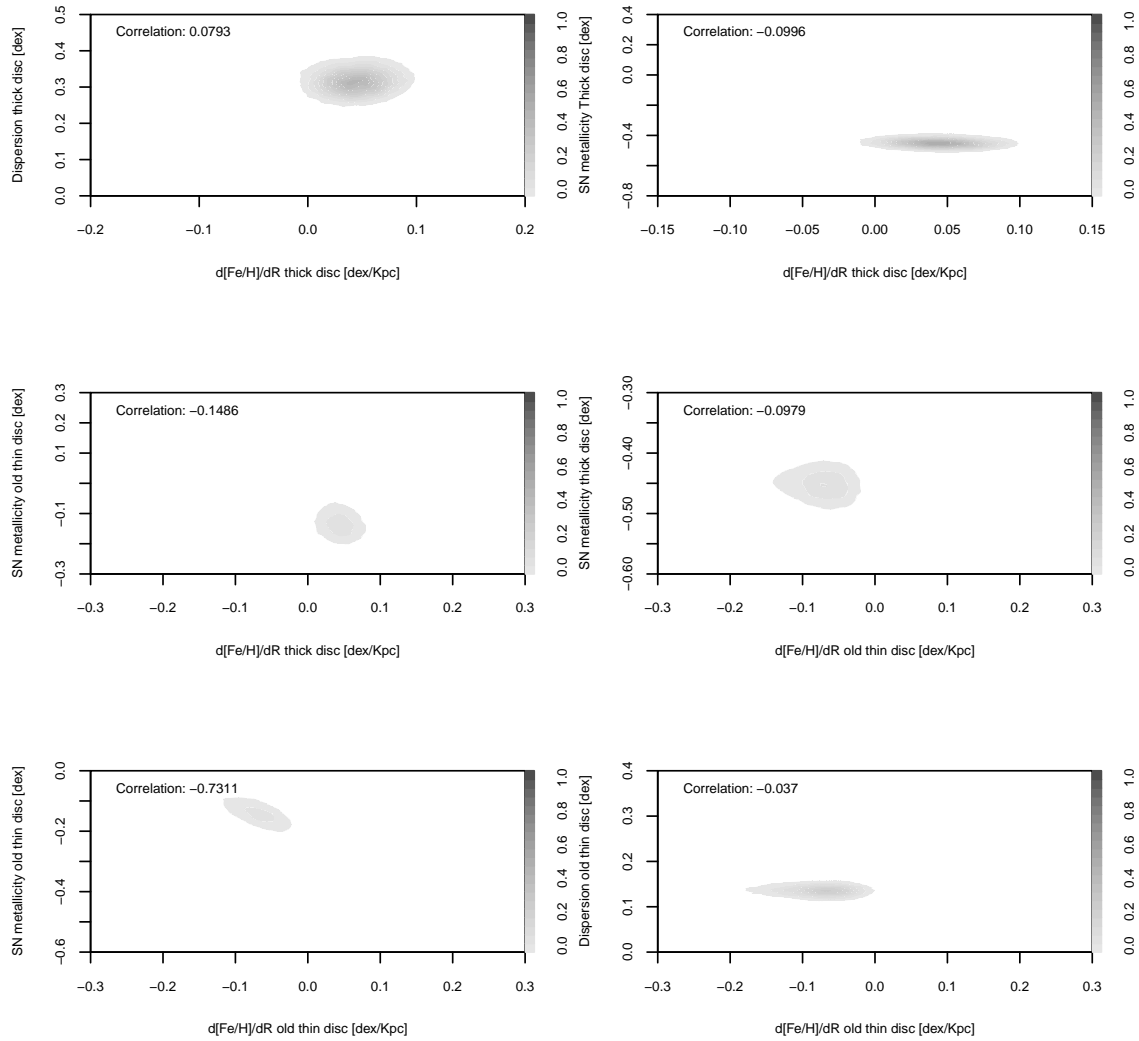


Figure 8.9: Correlations between parameters for the thick disc and old thin disc fitting for case 2

Table 8.5:  
Thick disc metallicity mean values, when fitting the thick disc alone for case 2

$[Fe/H]_{SN_{Thick}}$ (dex)	$\frac{d[Fe/H]}{dR}$ (dex kpc <sup>-1</sup> )	Disp (dex)	$\mathcal{L}$	BIC
-0.456	0.031	0.298	-285.07	
$\pm 0.028$	$\pm 0.025$	$\pm 0.030$	$\pm 12.10$	601.42

Table 8.6:  
Thick disc and thin disc metallicity mean set of parameters  
when fitting the thick disc along with all thin disc - for case 2

$[Fe/H]_{SN_{Thick}}$ (dex)	$\frac{d[Fe/H]}{dR}$ (dex kpc <sup>-1</sup> )	Disp (dex)	$[Fe/H]_{SN_{Thin}}$ (dex)	$\frac{d[Fe/H]}{dR}$ (dex kpc <sup>-1</sup> )	Disp (dex)	$\mathcal{L}$	BIC
-0.451	0.032	0.301	-0.083	-0.087	0.135	-291.73	
$\pm 0.029$	$\pm 0.026$	$\pm 0.032$	$\pm 0.030$	$\pm 0.047$	$\pm 0.010$	$\pm 13.14$	646.02

for the fit are higher. The likelihood (more negative) and BIC are worst, comparing to the ones from tables 8.4 and 8.5. The young thin disc seems to be unconstrained by these data, probably because the proportion of thin disc stars is too small in these fields (the number of stars in the old thin disc is twice as large compared to the young thin disc). Results for this case point to the possible existence of a positive gradient in the inner thick disc in agreement with Carrell et al. (2012). It will be discussed in section 10.3.1.

### 8.1.8 Case 3

Case 3 exclude inner fields. The results are shown in the third group of lines in Table 8.4. We omit the correlations because they are very similar with the other two cases. There are no correlations between parameters aside radial metallicity gradient of the thin disc as a function of the SN metallicity of the old thin disc which has a correlation factor around -0.6. The old thin disc results are comparable to the ones obtained for the other cases. The SN metallicity increases by one sigma of the previous error ( $-0.418 \pm 0.050$  dex). However we found, for this case, a negative radial metallicity gradient of  $-0.03 \pm 0.024$  dex kpc<sup>-1</sup>, while the gradient was positive when only inner fields were considered (case 2).

The intermediate longitudes have higher metallicity than the anticenter fields and the inner fields. From these data, there is a slight indication that there are two different gradients in the thick disc, one that is positive towards the inner galaxy and one that is negative towards the outer galaxy. Using the same fields (including the anticenter) Cheng et al. (2012b) obtained a flat gradient with a mean metallicity of -0.5 dex. Our results are in agreement with the ones obtained in their work, if we consider all fields together.

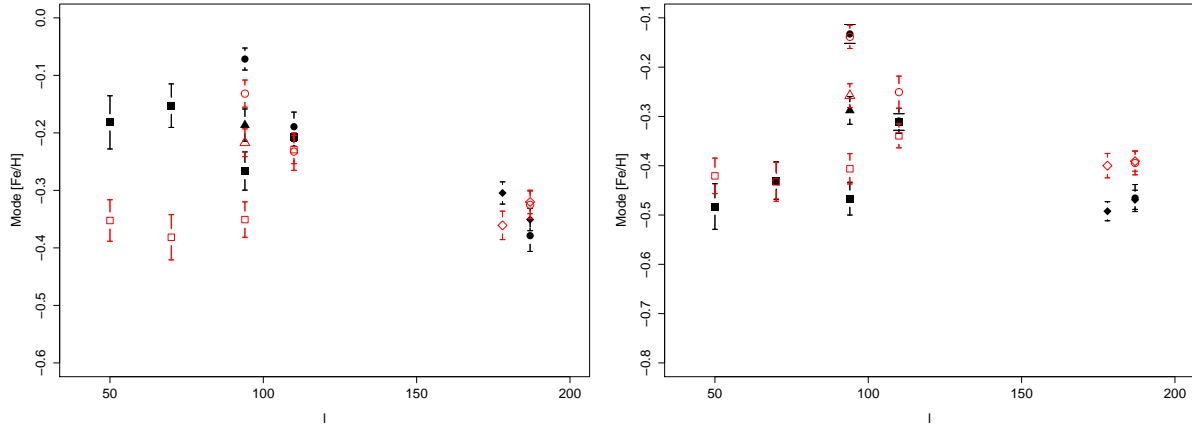


Figure 8.10: Mode of metallicities at different longitudes for the revised model (case 1). Left panel are the bright plates and right panel are the faint plates. The observations are in black and the simulations in red. The standard deviation is represented by the small bars. Squares are latitudes higher or equal to  $14^\circ$ ; Circles are latitudes between  $8^\circ$  and  $10.5^\circ$ ; Triangles are latitudes equal to  $-8^\circ$ ; Diamonds are latitudes lower than  $-8^\circ$ .

### 8.1.9 Revised model

Simulations were redone using the thick disc results from the table 8.4 and we compared for the different cases the statistics of different astrophysical parameters (metallicity, effective temperature and gravity) of the modified model with the data. We have done 10 simulations and we compute the mean likelihood for each parameter. The sigma is computed from the standard deviation of the 10 runs and is given for each spectroscopic parameter. Results are shown in Table 8.7 for each field. Table 8.8 contains the sum of the log likelihood in all fields. Figure 8.10 shows the revised model modes for each field as a function of the longitude. In comparison with figure 8.4 the values of the modes of the simulations, are shifted towards higher metallicities, in better agreement with the data but for the bright plates in inner fields the metallicity in the model is still too low.

Comparing the variations in likelihood before and after the fit (Table 8.7 for individual fields and Table 8.8 for all fields together) and for the different fits, we obtain a significant improvement of the model for the metallicity and log  $g$  distribution while the effective temperature distribution is slightly worse, specially for fields with larger longitudes. We show in figure 8.11 the temperature distributions for the original and revised models. There is a clear shift towards lower temperatures from the original to the revised model.

The reason for the disagreement may be due to the isochrone change itself and selection biases from the color selection made to select the MSTO stars. The new isochrone has a higher metallicity which shifts the turnoff position for lower temperatures explaining the lower effective temperature distribution. As we use a different isochrone for the thick disc in the revised

Table 8.7:  
Likelihood values for the spectroscopic parameters with the new sets of parameters

Fit	Plate	[Fe/H]	$\sigma$	$T_{\text{eff}}$	$\sigma$	$\log g$	$\sigma$	l(deg)	b(deg)	Stars
Original	2534	-90.72	17.65	-43.28	11.43	-55.63	14.57	50	14	468
Case 1	2534	-31.12	6.97	-14.11	5.40	-53.74	9.25			
Case 2	2534	-20.35	7.59	-18.39	8.50	-42.24	11.84			
Case 3	2534	-31.95	6.34	-16.92	6.04	-50.62	14.01			
Original	2536	-122.71	13.85	-32.64	6.77	-17.82	6.15	70	14	497
Case 1	2536	-25.01	5.16	-13.62	4.63	-12.90	5.27			
Case 2	2536	-26.11	9.72	-13.85	5.63	-13.87	2.82			
Case 3	2536	-40.72	62.79	-28.69	67.76	-31.41	57.76			
Original	2537	-119.41	25.92	-43.36	10.71	-54.73	8.43	110	10.5	494
Case 1	2537	-48.37	13.11	-49.91	11.47	-42.31	11.31			
Case 2	2537	-45.69	10.32	-54.85	7.40	-46.40	9.80			
Case 3	2537	-47.35	16.95	-51.34	9.40	-43.16	3.94			
Original	2538	-154.28	24.88	-73.68	19.62	-19.42	5.02	110	16	621
Case 1	2538	-50.07	11.44	-111.46	25.31	-17.61	5.96			
Case 2	2538	-42.21	4.66	-115.96	32.84	-17.13	5.45			
Case 3	2538	-51.78	11.49	-116.70	21.32	-22.25	8.55			
Original	2554	-177.70	16.80	-14.04	4.54	-45.65	11.26	94	14	554
Case 1	2554	-38.77	10.92	-6.27	2.73	-32.92	7.59			
Case 2	2554	-32.64	7.31	-8.49	4.61	-30.60	9.70			
Case 3	2554	-41.11	12.72	-8.72	2.74	-29.32	11.83			
Original	2555	-52.99	12.82	-81.73	17.72	-22.22	6.19	94	8	381
Case 1	2555	-29.90	7.18	-83.94	17.50	-20.38	7.60			
Case 2	2555	-22.49	7.02	-91.36	21.49	-20.24	6.29			
Case 3	2555	-23.19	8.81	-91.76	11.65	-22.89	4.76			
Original	2556	-140.26	14.39	-31.77	4.98	-13.24	4.84	94	-8	512
Case 1	2556	-54.58	11.54	-44.88	7.79	-8.06	3.07			
Case 2	2556	-45.44	11.70	-46.89	5.86	-7.27	3.68			
Case 3	2556	-48.71	11.68	-43.84	10.79	-5.89	4.18			
Original	2668	-182.22	20.12	-145.57	17.00	-84.24	16.72	187	-12	671
Case 1	2668	-134.63	26.26	-168.22	18.84	-74.16	18.66			
Case 2	2668	-150.45	33.44	-162.75	12.40	-58.22	11.75			
Case 3	2668	-138.62	15.93	-169.65	14.18	-72.45	20.34			
Original	2678	-100.43	19.95	-81.50	8.50	-58.61	16.39	187	8	555
Case 1	2678	-112.70	7.09	-90.28	10.51	-42.74	7.56			
Case 2	2678	-128.86	29.88	-82.96	17.65	-48.87	11.91			
Case 3	2678	-112.74	14.35	-88.81	15.77	-48.44	6.15			
Original	2681	-143.03	21.35	-165.20	21.17	-71.78	10.70	178	-15	639
Case 1	2681	-80.80	17.56	-207.92	30.45	-56.34	14.81			
Case 2	2681	-92.72	15.39	-201.74	35.19	-59.73	10.84			
Case 3	2681	-90.66	12.35	-210.40	26.80	-59.16	10.97			

Table 8.8:  
Sum of the log likelihood values for all fields for the spectroscopic parameters (MSTO stars) with the new set of parameters.

Fit	[Fe/H]	$\sigma$	$T_{\text{eff}}$	$\sigma$	$\log g$	$\sigma$
Original	-1238.75	18.77	-712.76	12.46	-443.33	10.03
Case 1	-605.94	11.72	-790.60	13.46	-361.15	9.108
Case 2	-606.96	13.70	-797.22	15.16	-344.56	8.41
Case 3	-626.82	11.50	-826.82	12.29	-385.58	13.09

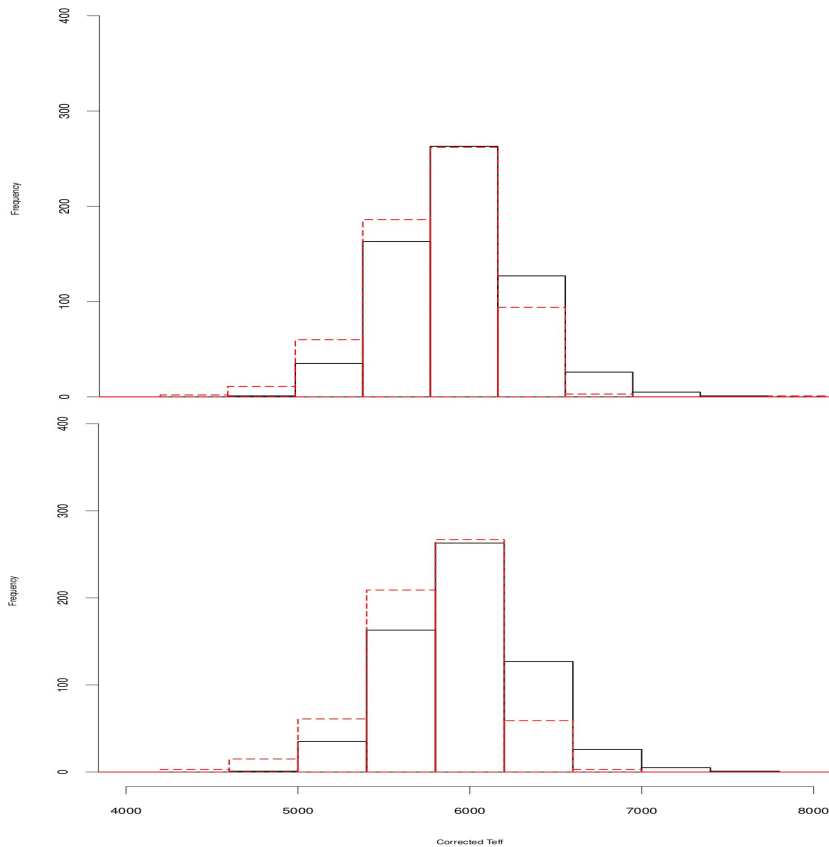


Figure 8.11: Effective temperature distributions for the original model (top panel) and revised model (bottom plot) for plate 2538. Black lines are observations and red lines simulations.

Table 8.9:

Sum of the likelihood values, for groups of fields of different longitudes, for the spectroscopic parameters (MSTO stars) with the new set of parameters.

Fit	$[Fe/H]_{gp_{in}}$	$\sigma$	$[Fe/H]_{gp_{no-out}}$	$\sigma$	$[Fe/H]_{gp_{no-in}}$	$\sigma$
Case 1	-56.13	6.07	-277.81	9.48	-549.80	13.14
Case 2	-46.46	8.66	-234.93	8.33	-560.50	14.96
Case 3	-72.67	5.34	-284.80	10.33	-554.15	13.03

Table 8.10:

Thick disc and thin disc metallicity mean values, when fitting the thick disc (two slopes) and old thin disc.  $R_{change}$  is the galactocentric radius at which the gradient of the thick disc changes.

$[Fe/H]_{SN_{thick}}$ (dex)	$\frac{d[Fe/H]}{dR}$ inner <sup>thick</sup> disc (dex kpc <sup>-1</sup> )	Disp (dex)	$[Fe/H]_{SN_{oldThin}}$ (dex)	$\frac{d[Fe/H]}{dR}$ (dex kpc <sup>-1</sup> )	Disp (dex)	$\frac{d[Fe/H]}{dR}$ outer <sup>thick</sup> disc (dex kpc <sup>-1</sup> )	$R_{change}$ kpc	$\mathcal{L}$	BIC
-0.453	0.007	0.318	-0.121	-0.079	0.135	-0.032	10.12	-497.70	1062.70
$\pm 0.036$	$\pm 0.033$	$\pm 0.031$	$\pm 0.017$	$\pm 0.017$	$\pm 0.011$	$\pm 0.046$	$\pm 1.33$	$\pm 0.51$	

model the color distribution of stars is redder because we are considering stars with larger metallicity which changes the extinction correction applied to the simulations. In figure 8.12 we show the total extinction ( $A_V$ ) as a function of the distance to the Sun and the total extinction ( $A_V$ ) distribution for the original and revised models. The total extinction applied to the revised version is smaller because, due to the use of the new isochrone, the color distributions is shifted towards red colors. This effect impacts the selection color applied to simulations and consequently the effective temperature distribution.

Table 8.9 shows the likelihoods for the three cases grouped by longitudes. We called  $gp_{in}$  the group of the inner fields (2534 and 2536),  $gp_{no-out}$  the group that excludes the anticenter ones and group  $gp_{no-in}$  excludes the inner fields.  $gp_{in}$  results show that case 2 gives the best likelihood as for the  $gp_{no-out}$  confirming the results for case 2 from the MCMC analysis. The  $gp_{no-in}$  results shows that case 1 and case 2 are compatible inside errors when we fit without the inner fields. This results confirm the possible existence of a positive gradient in the inner disc. For  $gp_{no-in}$ , in all cases the likelihood is similar within error, which means that these fields alone are not sensitive enough to the model parameters.

### 8.1.10 Fitting two slopes in the thick disc

To analyse and test the results obtained for the metallicity distribution and the possible inversion of the metallicity gradient we tried to fit one metallicity distribution associated with a inner and a outer thick disc gradient using all fields as in case 1 incorporating a new parameter  $R_{change}$  which controls the galactocentric radius at which the gradient changes. Along with this parameters we fit also the old thin disc. Table 8.10 shows the results for the fit of the two gradients.



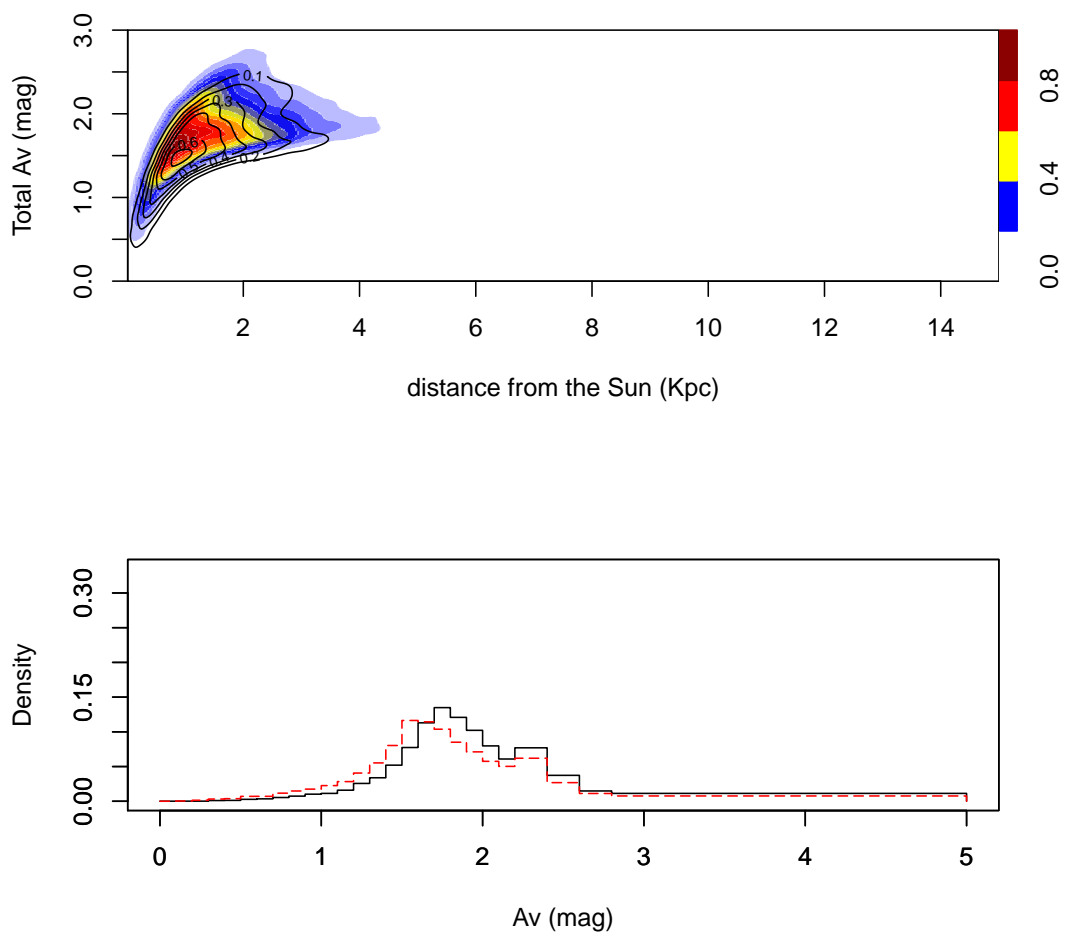


Figure 8.12: Top panel: total extinction applied to the simulations as a function of the distance to the Sun. Density plot refers to the original simulation and black contours to the revised version. Bottom panel: Total extinction distribution applied to the original model (black lines) and to the revised model (red lines).

Table 8.11:  
Sum of the likelihood values, for different ages of the thick disc, for the spectroscopic parameters (MSTO stars) with the fitted parameters.

Age	[Fe/H]	$\sigma$	$T_{\text{eff}}$	$\sigma$	$\log g$	$\sigma$
8 Gyr	-734.31	23.34	-1133.74	49.38	-424.284	17.06
9 Gyr	-693.68	10.78	-1032.26	10.84	-400.93	5.780
10 Gyr	-695.19	15.90	-990.16	39.27	-449.12	14.49
11 Gyr	-695.84	10.09	-969.23	10.22	-388.55	6.63
12 Gyr	-605.94	11.72	-790.60	13.46	-361.15	9.108
13 Gyr	-706.82	13.56	-1025.64	31.84	-448.57	13.79

The table shows that the SN metallicity and dispersion in the thick disc and the SN metallicity and dispersion of the thin disc are well in agreement with the results of table 8.4. The gradient changes at around  $10.1 \pm 1.3$  beyond the solar position. The gradient of the outer regions of thick disc is compatible with case 3 of table 8.4 and the best fit for the inner regions is no gradient. The BIC values are inside errors compatible with case 1 of table 8.4. This result reinforces the existence of no gradient in the thick disc. Regarding this result the formation of thick disc may be a combination of the scenarios described in section 10.3.

### 8.1.11 The age of the thick disc

In order to explore the capability of these data to constrain the age of the thick disc we tried different ages for the thick disc isochrones. We use case 1 as the most robust fit. From earlier studies, we assume the range of ages to test to be from 8 Gyr to 13 Gyr. We have fitted the simulations, for each age, and the metallicity parameters that we obtain are similar to the ones presented for case 1 (i.e. a SN metallicity of  $\sim -0.5$  dex and no radial gradient). We present in Table 8.11 the results taking the mean of the likelihoods in five different simulations. The bright and faint plates are treated together. From these results, assuming that the thick disc has a single epoch formation, we can say that there is an indication that 12 Gyr is the best age for this population or at least that the isochrone from Bergbush and vandenbergh (1992) that best fits these data is the one with  $\text{Fe}/\text{H} = -0.5$  and age of 12 Gyr.

## 8.2 The metallicity distribution in the model B revised version

To test whether the results depends on the population synthesis hypothesis, we used the revised version model B of the BGM described in section 3.4 to constrain the gradients and metallicity distributions with the MCMC analysis. The results for case 1 and case 2 shown in table 8.12

Table 8.12:

Thick disc and thin disc metallicity mean set of parameters - Fitting the old thin disc for the model B of the revised version.

case (dex)	$[Fe/H]_{SN_{Thick}}$ (dex kpc <sup>-1</sup> )	$\frac{d[Fe/H]}{dR}$ (dex)	Disp (dex)	$[Fe/H]_{SN_{OldThin}}$ (dex kpc <sup>-1</sup> )	$\frac{d[Fe/H]}{dR}$ (dex)	Disp (dex kpc <sup>-1</sup> )	$\mathcal{L}$ kpc	BIC
1	-0.452 ±0.034	0.006 ±0.022	0.333 ±0.029	-0.119 ±0.018	-0.083 ±0.021	0.137 ±0.027	-527.84	1107.21
2	-0.431 ±0.028	0.030 ±0.025	0.347 ±0.029	-0.119 ±0.021	-0.086 ±0.024	0.135 ±0.031	-305.72	662.97

are the mean and dispersion of 10 MCMC runs for one simulation. Inside errors results are in agreement with case 1 and case 2 for the original model presented in table 8.4 for all parameters. The likelihood and BIC are slightly higher than with the original model.

### 8.3 K giants sample

In figures 8.13 and 8.14 we compare observations and simulations for the K giants selection in plate 2536 and 2544 respectively. The effective temperatures have been corrected and stars with effective temperatures larger than 4900 k have been selected as explained in section 5.2. The log g distributions, for both plates, are peaked at  $\sim 4.5$  with a weak tail towards the giants, which means that the K giants selection is too polluted by other stars. For plate 2536 there is a good agreement between the observations and simulations for the metallicity and log g distributions. The effective temperature distribution is too wide in the simulations and the peak is shifted towards larger temperatures. For plate 2544 the metallicity distribution in the simulations is lower than the one from observations and the effective temperature is shifted. Since the K giant sample is dominated by main sequence stars we have decided not to pursue its analysis.

## 8.4 Comparison with previous works

### 8.4.1 Thin disc

Chemical gradients in both radial and vertical directions have been studied using different tracers that have different ages. In open clusters metallicity and distances are well determined which makes these objects good tracers to analyze chemical space distributions (e.g., Carrera & Pancino 2011; Friel et al. 2002; Frinchaboy et al. 2013). Several works have been using young objects like HII regions (e.g., Rudolph et al. 2006; Quireza et al. 2006) or B stars (Daflon et al. 2010). Older populations like red giants (Hayden et al. 2014)) and Planetary nebulae (e.g., Henry et al. 2010; Stanghellini et al. 2006) have been studied. Nevertheless, cepheid variables (e.g., Luck et al. 2011; Lemasle et al. 2013) remain the most accurate indicator, of present day abundance gradients in the Milky Way, due to the large distances at which they can

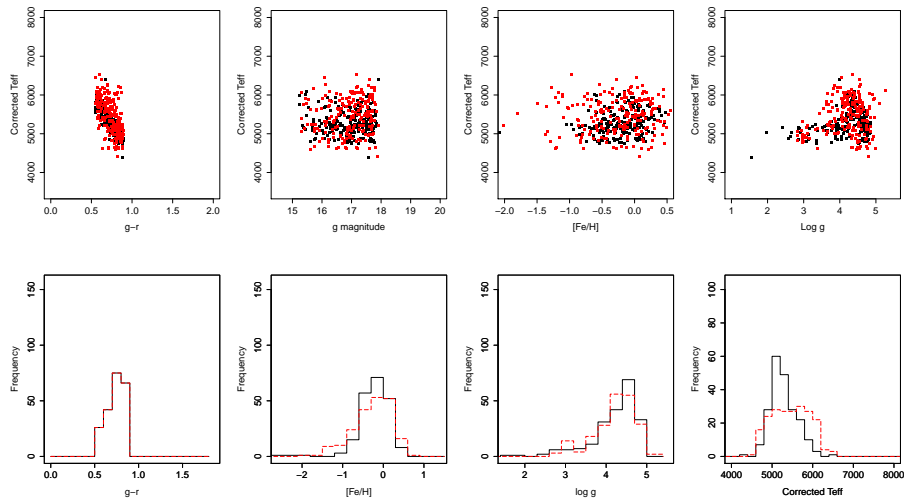


Figure 8.13: Comparison of the spectroscopic observations and simulations for the bright plate 2536.

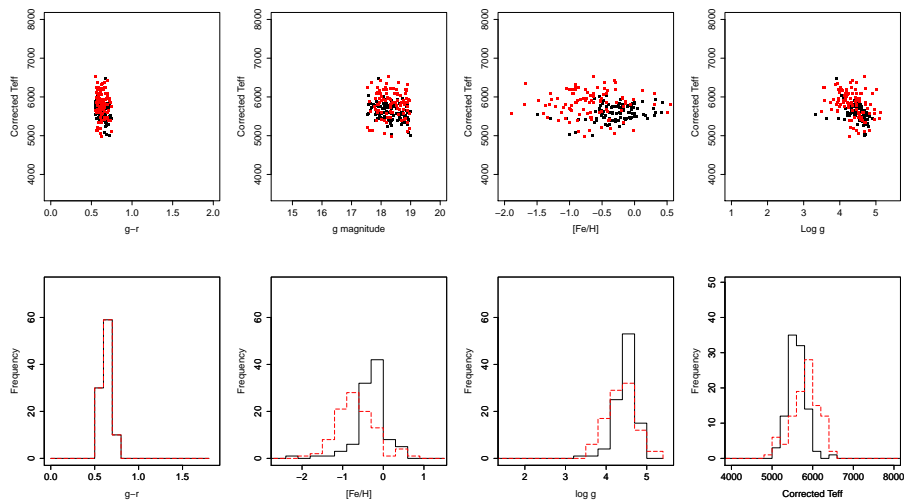


Figure 8.14: Comparison of the spectroscopic observations and simulations for the faint plate 2544.

Table 8.13:  
Thin disc metallicity distribution from the literature

Author	$\overline{[Fe/H]}$ dex	$\frac{d[Fe/H]}{dR}$ dex kpc <sup>-1</sup>	Comments
Friel et al. (2002)		-0.06	Open clusters
Soubiran et al. (2003)	-0.17 ± 0.01		HR Red clump giants
Nordström et al. (2004)	-0.19 ± 0.20	-0.099	F and G dwarf stars - GCS
Lee et al. (2011)	~ -0.2	-0.09	G dwarfs - SEGUE
Fuhrmann (2011)	-0.034 ± 0.015		300 nearby solar-type stars
Yong et al. (2012)		-0.09 → $R_{gal} < 13.0$ kpc	Outer disc open clusters
		-0.02 → $R_{gal} > 13.0$ kpc	Outer disc open clusters
Cheng et al. (2012b)	~ -0.2	-0.066 ± 0.044	MSTO stars - SEGUE
Boeche et al. (2013)		-0.065 ± 0.002	Rave dwarf stars
Frinchaboy et al. (2013)		-0.09 ± 0.03 for all sample	Open clusters - APOGEE
		-0.20 ± 0.08 → $8.0 < R_{gal} < 10.0$ kpc	
		-0.02 ± 0.09 → $R_{gal} > 10.0$ kpc	
Hayden et al. (2014)	0.02 ± 0.02	-0.09 ± 0.02	Red giants - APOGEE
Anders et al. (2014)	~ -0.1	-0.066 ± 0.006	Red giants - APOGEE
Recio-Blanco et al. (2014)		-0.058 ± 0.008	F/G/K dwarfs GES (GIRAFFE)
Mikolaitis et al. (2014)		-0.044 ± 0.009	~ 2 000 FGK dwarfs and giants GES (GIRAFFE)

be found and to their high intrinsic luminosity which allows to measure accurate spectral parameters and distances (See Maciel & Costa (2010) for a review). Recent spectroscopic surveys (GCS, 2MASS, SDSS, RAVE, GES among others) gave new constrains of metallicity gradients. (e.g., Nordström et al. 2004; Kordopatis et al. 2013b; Recio-Blanco et al. 2014; Anders et al. 2014; Mikolaitis et al. 2014). Table 8.13 summarizes most recent results from literature for the metallicity distribution of the thin disc.

We obtain for the old thin disc a SN metallicity around  $-0.116 \pm 0.021$  dex. Our results, inside errors, are in agreement with the literature. In comparison with Cheng et al. (2012b) lower  $|z|$  slice we obtain a slightly higher SN metallicity. The discrepancy is probably due to the fact that they compute the mean metallicity for a slice in  $|z|$  and not for a pure thin disc population as we do.

A radial gradient around  $-0.086 \pm 0.04$  dex kpc<sup>-1</sup> is obtained for the old thin disc in our study. The results obtained from this work, inside errors, are in agreement with other works.

## 8.4.2 Thick disc

The results presented in Table 8.4 indicate a SN metallicity around  $-0.465 \pm 0.033$  dex in agreement with most of the recent works presented in Table 8.14. Few studies obtained different results (e.g., Gilmore et al. 1995; Nordström et al. 2004) because they use different sample and they use different means to distinguish the thick from the thin disc and the halo (i.e. they slice in  $|z|$  to select the population) or they use kinematics..

Our null gradient for the thick disc ( $-0.008 \pm 0.015$  dex kpc<sup>-1</sup>) is in agreement with Cheng et al. (2012b) who obtained  $0.0028 \pm 0.0071$  dex kpc<sup>-1</sup>, Hayden et al. (2014) ( $-0.003 \pm 0.006$  dex kpc<sup>-1</sup>) which used a sample of red giants from APOGEE, Boeche et al. (2013) ( $0.006 \pm 0.015$

Table 8.14:  
Thick disc metallicity distribution from the literature

Author	$[Fe/H]$ dex	$\frac{d[Fe/H]}{dR}$ dex kpc <sup>-1</sup>	Comments
Gilmore et al. (1995)	-0.7	No gradient	F/G stars - $ z  > 1.5$ kpc
Soubiran et al. (2003)	$-0.48 \pm 0.05$		HR Red clump giants
Nordström et al. (2004)	$-0.25 \pm 0.20$	$0.028 \pm 0.036$	F and G dwarf stars - GCS
Holmberg et al. (2007)	$\sim -0.55$	Nul gradient	F/G dwarfs - GCS
Chen et al. (2011)	$-0.48 \pm 0.013$	$-0.12 \pm 0.01$	RHB stars - SEGUE
Fuhrmann (2011)	$-0.584 \pm 0.057$		300 nearby solar-type stars
Cheng et al. (2012b)	$\sim -0.5$	$0.0028 \pm 0.0071$	MSTO stars - SEGUE
Schlesinger et al. (2012)	$\sim -0.5$		G/K dwarfs - SEGUE
Carrell et al. (2012)	$\sim -0.5$	$0.025 \pm 0.007 \rightarrow 1.0 < Z < 1.5$ $0.041 \pm 0.016 \rightarrow 2.5 < Z < 3.0$	F/G/K dwarfs SEGUE Kinematically selected
Kordopatis et al. (2013b)	$-0.45 \pm 0.01$		RAVE (DR4)
Boeche et al. (2013)		$0.006 \pm 0.015$	Rave dwarf stars
Hayden et al. (2014)	$-0.324 \pm 0.06$	$-0.012 \pm 0.006 \rightarrow 0.5 < Z < 1.0$ kpc - High $\alpha$ stars	Red giants - APOGEE
	$-0.506 \pm 0.05$	$-0.003 \pm 0.006 \rightarrow 1.0 < Z < 2.0$ kpc - High $\alpha$ stars	
Anders et al. (2014)	$\sim -0.5$	$0.00 \pm 0.004$	Red giants - APOGEE
Recio-Blanco et al. (2014)		$0.006 \pm 0.008$	F/G/K dwarfs GES (GIRAFFE)
Mikolaitis et al. (2014)		Nul gradient	$\sim 2$ 000 FGK dwarfs and giants GES (GIRAFFE)

dex kpc<sup>-1</sup>), Anders et al. (2014) ( $0.00 \pm 0.004$  dex kpc<sup>-1</sup>), Recio-Blanco et al. (2014), Mikolaitis et al. (2014). These works agree about the flattening of the radial metallicity gradient at higher distances from the plane. However these results are in disagreement with Chen et al. (2011) that argued for the existence of a strong negative gradient ( $-0.12 \pm 0.01$  dex kpc<sup>-1</sup>) in the thick disc from their sample of RHB stars. On the contrary Carrell et al. (2012) found a positive gradient for the thick disc with their kinematically selected sample (in section 10.3.1 we discuss in more detail this result).



## Chapter 9

# Spectroscopic results from the GES data

For this analysis we use the BGM version which accounts for a longer star formation period during the thick disc phase described in section 3.5. In the following sections we describe the method and analysis done comparing simulations from this version of the BGM with GES data.

### 9.1 Photometric errors

The photometric system given by the BGM is the one used in 2MASS survey so we have used the transformations given by Soto et al. (2013) to convert magnitudes and colors for the VVV photometric system. To simulate the photometric errors in the simulations we have fitted the photometric error as a function of the magnitude for bands J,H and K using an exponential law  $Error_{mag_{JHK}} = a + exp(-b + c * mag_{JHK})$  for few fields and tooked the mean of each fitted parameter. VISTA magnitudes are given two decimal precisions. Therefore the a parameter is at least 0.01 mags (Private communication from Saito). Table 9.1 shows the mean results. We have included the photometric errors in the simulation by drawing errors from a Gaussian distribution.

Table 9.1:

The value of the parameters used to compute the photometric errors in the simulation

Band	a	b	c
J	0.01	21.11	0.984
H	0.01	20.34	0.986
K	0.01	19.58	0.983



## 9.2 Extinction

To compare model with observations we have to apply an extinction model to the simulations from the BGM. In order to test if the extinction from Schlegel extinction maps (Schlegel et al. 1998) can be used for the GES disc fields we have computed the mean reddening for each of the observed disc fields in Gaia-ESO Survey. Table 9.2 shows the results. From the table we see that the GES disc fields suffer from low reddening in average ( $\sim 0.05$ ) but there are some fields where the reddening is higher (fields with reddening larger than 0.25 are in bold).

Table 9.2:  
Mean reddening for each of the observed disc fields in GES

Field	l ( $^{\circ}$ )	b ( $^{\circ}$ )	Mean E(B-V) (mag)
000400 010000	97.4333	-61.5059	0.0335
000400 470000	324.9635	-68.0406	0.0105
002000 010000	105.5221	-62.7944	0.0367
002000 470000	318.1591	-69.1909	0.0114
002959 033000	109.7612	-65.8181	0.0427
002959 500600	311.6242	-66.6682	0.0117
003240 440056	314.3819	-72.6887	0.0075
004000 010000	116.4808	-63.7293	0.0227
004000 470000	308.6863	-70.0057	0.0113
005000 033000	122.0503	-66.3708	0.0466
005000 500600	303.5252	-67.0218	0.012
005959 010000	127.7875	-63.7933	0.0376
005959 470000	298.6443	-70.056	0.0131
011959 010000	138.7815	-62.9931	0.0394
011959 470000	289.0232	-69.3523	0.0098
014000 010000	148.9815	-61.3958	0.0308
014000 470000	280.4699	-67.9542	0.0153
015959 010000	157.9989	-59.1308	0.0266
015959 470000	273.2971	-66.0007	0.0205
022000 470000	267.6228	-63.5858	0.02
023000 033000	172.1166	-56.6476	0.0288
023959 010000	172.3794	-53.1104	0.031
023959 470000	263.2037	-60.8926	0.0186
025556 002846	176.4049	-49.9664	0.0678
025559 003000	176.4435	-49.9749	0.0677
030000 470000	259.8427	-57.9307	0.0129
030959 500600	263.4263	-55.0372	0.0212

*continued from previous page*

Field	l ( $^{\circ}$ )	b ( $^{\circ}$ )	Mean E(B-V)
031800 003000	181.9725	-45.8948	0.0651
032000 470000	257.3047	-54.8174	0.0144
033000 500600	261.1165	-52.1336	0.0118
033800 273000	223.3754	-53.1838	0.0117
033959 000000	186.1927	-41.2921	0.0878
033959 470000	255.4938	-51.5834	0.0087
035959 470000	254.261	-48.2724	0.0092
041000 500600	258.2034	-46.014	0.0159
041959 001959	193.7336	-33.2971	0.0901
043000 500600	257.4094	-42.8559	0.0116
044000 500600	257.1272	-41.2643	0.0133
050000 520000	259.2574	-37.9788	0.011
051959 540000	261.598	-34.8999	0.0252
070359 423000	253.021	-15.7917	0.1032
072048 003000	216.7397	6.3021	0.1374
<b>074500 423000</b>	<b>256.3686</b>	<b>-8.982</b>	<b>0.3683</b>
075600 090000	228.5067	9.964	0.0803
075959 003000	221.3949	14.967	0.0325
082312 052959	228.8929	17.5586	0.0434
083959 003000	226.56	23.691	0.032
092758 003043	233.7991	33.8884	0.0311
092800 003000	233.8015	33.9044	0.031
094753 102657	246.7813	31.7726	0.0447
095958 410150	271.3995	11.1151	0.2059
100000 410000	271.3826	11.1412	0.2043
100759 080000	248.6133	37.0959	0.0431
100913 412801	273.084	11.8159	0.177
101428 405235	273.5493	12.8694	0.175
102800 410000	275.8022	14.1972	0.1264
103959 410000	277.7933	15.3714	0.0856
105731 124726	264.5839	41.4514	0.0363
105808 154324	266.8911	39.0943	0.0577
105959 410000	281.2715	17.1368	0.1261
110009 410232	281.3219	17.1128	0.1281
110053 132816	266.0057	41.3453	0.0383
112200 100000	269.6091	47.0036	0.0492
112800 410000	286.399	19.1806	0.1306
113159 435959	288.158	16.5758	0.084
120000 090000	282.1134	51.7844	0.0447
120000 410000	292.5759	20.8361	0.1492
121159 410000	294.9616	21.2586	0.1254

*continued from previous page*

Field	l ( $^{\circ}$ )	b ( $^{\circ}$ )	Mean E(B-V)
122759 410000	298.1712	21.6541	0.0882
124224 130559	299.5267	49.7121	0.0509
124359 060000	299.536	56.8251	0.0257
124359 090000	299.8108	53.8198	0.0346
124359 410000	301.4142	21.8501	0.1415
125609 451238	303.8018	17.6518	0.1023
130047 410000	304.8281	21.8387	0.1223
131359 410000	307.508	21.6702	0.1002
131359 460007	307.0158	16.6899	0.1143
132000 050000	316.1287	57.1295	0.0397
132000 090000	314.7758	53.2216	0.037
132000 130000	313.6272	49.2724	0.0508
132800 410000	310.3277	21.3475	0.1029
133026 434759	310.3363	18.5143	0.1213
134400 410000	313.5079	20.7907	0.0842
140000 100000	329.3628	49.3221	0.0435
140000 410000	316.6275	20.0391	0.0783
140000 450000	315.4695	16.1944	0.0874
142000 050000	339.9213	51.3929	0.0462
142000 410000	320.4204	18.8484	0.1064
142145 440827	319.5711	15.7946	0.1162
142800 090000	339.2173	46.9602	0.0576
143959 410000	324.0767	17.3729	0.0967
144113 400831	324.68	18.0482	0.0914
145800 410000	327.2323	15.8234	0.0953
150159 100000	347.8423	41.2106	0.0964
150512 400000	328.9853	16.0101	0.0904
151111 404800	329.5627	14.7365	0.0951
151712 413000	330.1636	13.5388	0.1336
152311 421200	330.7191	12.3387	0.1509
152936 425359	331.3066	11.0943	0.1701
<b>154224 441200</b>	<b>332.4165</b>	<b>8.6675</b>	<b>0.2687</b>
<b>155400 410000</b>	<b>336.1364</b>	<b>9.8158</b>	<b>0.4179</b>
155959 003000	9.4834	36.974	0.1462
<b>160312 455359</b>	<b>334.176</b>	<b>5.0174</b>	<b>1.2436</b>
<b>170024 051200</b>	<b>14.5918</b>	<b>21.806</b>	<b>0.4784</b>
<b>173359 430000</b>	<b>346.8104</b>	<b>-5.4604</b>	<b>0.6386</b>
181959 470000	347.1854	-14.5017	0.0945
200246 454536	353.8071	-31.1154	0.0482
201959 470000	352.7417	-34.2074	0.0419
204000 471200	352.6892	-37.6217	0.0366

*continued from previous page*

Field	l (°)	b (°)	Mean E(B-V)
211000 020000	48.4331	-31.4288	0.0551
211959 480000	351.1175	-44.2975	0.0375
212800 020000	51.2491	-35.2688	0.0588
215200 033000	53.7985	-41.1081	0.0445
215959 480000	349.0457	-50.8337	0.0257
224135 480000	344.574	-57.2816	0.0093
230000 470000	343.2279	-60.4697	0.0116
232000 020000	77.9707	-56.6649	0.0422
232000 480000	337.3118	-62.5768	0.0089
233000 050000	78.0953	-60.5843	0.0432
234000 010000	86.6902	-58.7474	0.0319
234000 470000	333.4433	-65.6767	0.0137
235000 050000	86.7355	-63.4716	0.035
235600 020000	92.7531	-61.5758	0.0341
235600 480000	326.6305	-66.4947	0.0113

We have reddened simulations using the Schlegel extinction maps, because the reddening at these direction is low in average, assuming a relation between the reddening and total extinction in each band given by table 2 of Catelan et al. (2011) (Table 9.3) which uses the Cardelli et al. (1989) extinction law. We have checked where the extinction is higher by comparing color distributions.

Table 9.3:  
Total extinction in each filter

Filter	$A_x/E(B-V)$
J	0.866
H	0.567
K	0.364

Figure 9.1, 9.2 and 9.3 show the reddening (left panel) and color (right panel) distributions for the six fields with  $E(B-V) > 0.25$  mag. In the figures right panel black lines are observations and red lines simulations. The color distributions and the modes are given in the right panel in the observed and simulated catalogs.

From the color histograms and corresponding modes we consider the field 170024 051200 ( $l=14.6^\circ, b=21.8^\circ$ ) as suitable to be included in our analysis because the color distribution is well reproduced and the modes of the observed and simulated distributions are very similar. We do not consider other high extinction fields for further analysis.

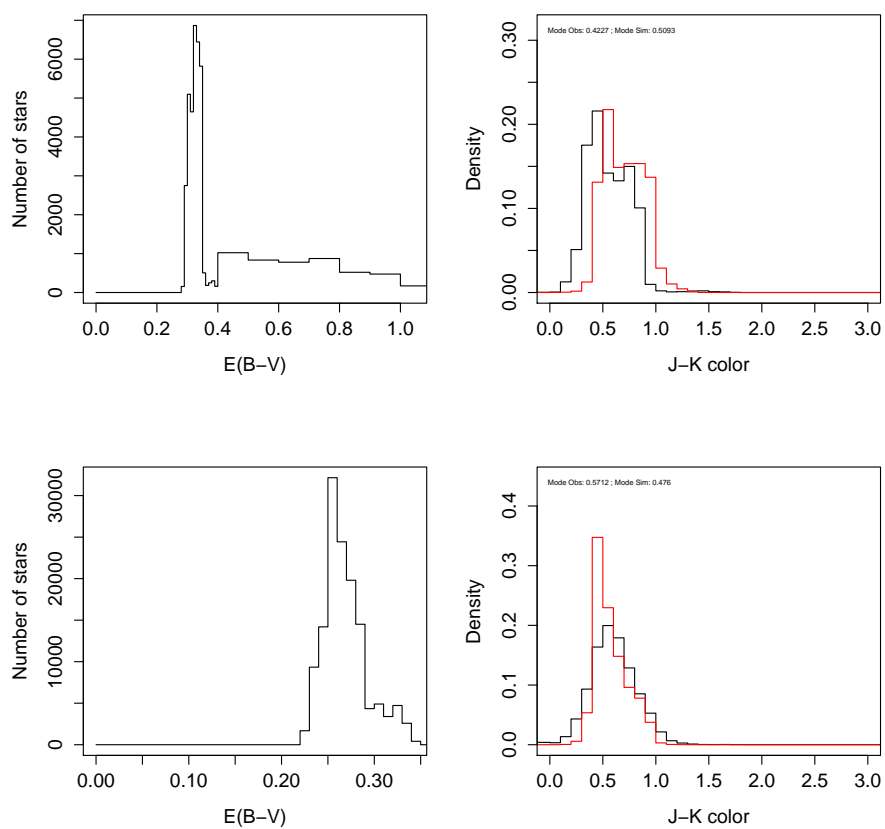


Figure 9.1: Reddening from SFD maps and color distributions from GES data (black lines) and simulations (red lines) for field 074500 423000 (top panel) and field 154224 441200 (bottom panel).

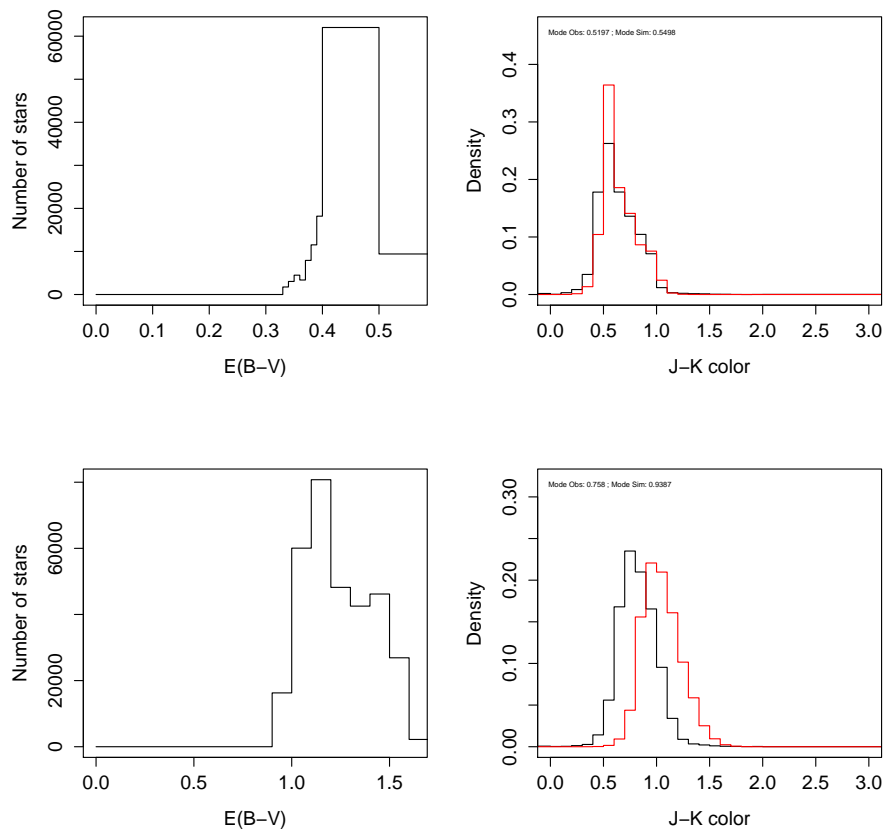


Figure 9.2: Reddening from SFD maps and color distributions from GES data (black lines) and simulations (red lines) for field 155400 410000 (top panel) and field 160312 455359 (bottom panel).

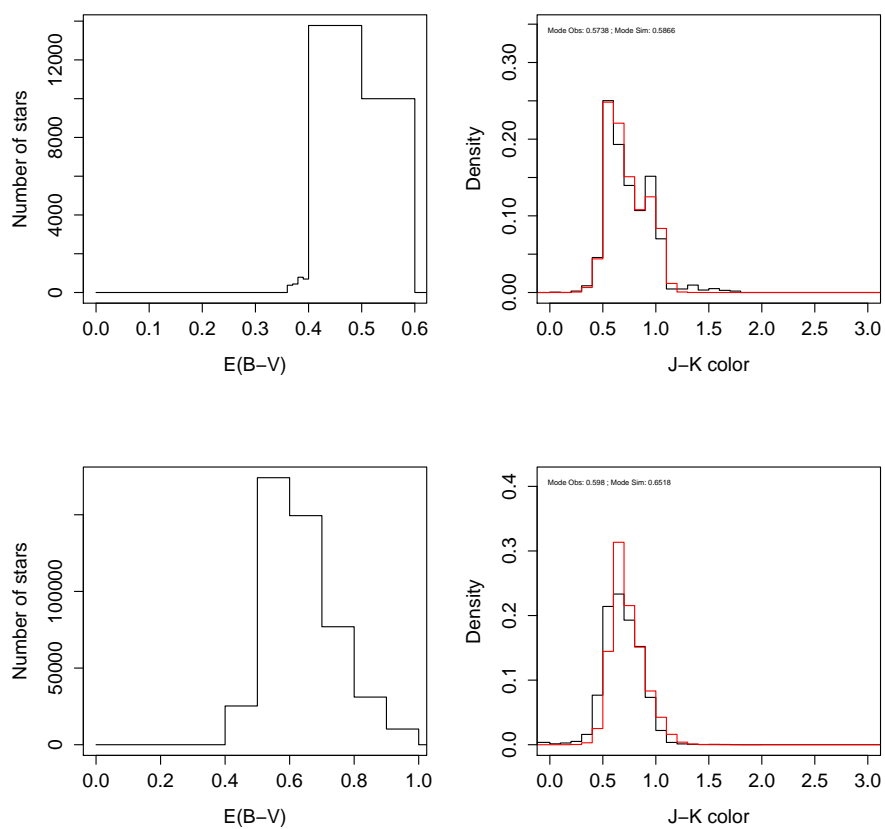


Figure 9.3: Reddening from SFD maps and color distributions from GES data (black lines) and simulations (red lines) for field 170024 051200 (top panel) and field 173359 430000 (bottom panel).

### 9.3 Spectroscopic errors

The internal errors in metallicity, effective temperature and gravity are 0.08 dex, 70 K and 0.10 dex respectively (Recio-Blanco et al. 2014). If we consider the external errors the uncertainties should be around 100K in Teff, 0.15 dex in logg and 0.10 dex for [M/H] (GES internal private communication). We have simulated the spectroscopic errors by assuming the external errors drawn from a Gaussian distribution.

### 9.4 The selection sample

We have selected FGK-type stars observed by GIRAFFE from the Gaia-ESO Survey. The selection function is based on the VISTA photometry. The target selection, for the disc fields, explained in Gilmore et al. (2012) is based on the Disc/Halo transition from the Sloan Digital Sky Survey photometry. There are two main boxes, a blue one and a red one

- **Blue box:**  $0.0 < (J - K)_0 < 0.45$  and  $14.0 < J_0 < 17.5$  mag
- **Red box:**  $0.4 < (J - K)_0 < 0.70$  and  $12.5 < J_0 < 15.0$  mag
- **Extended red box:**  $0.4 < (J - K)_0 < 0.85$  and  $12.5 < J_0 < 17.0$  mag (*when the number of stars was not enough to fill all FLAMES fibers*)

These boxes are defined according to the Schlegel extinction maps (Schlegel et al. 1998) by shifting the box by an amount corresponding to the average total extinction in the field. The observed GES catalog that we use has been given by the GES consortium (GES internal release DR2).

After applying the extinction to the simulated stars, we selected stars in the simulated catalog by binning in the color (J-K) magnitude (J) space, with bins of 0.05 and 0.1 mags respectively, and selecting the same number of stars present in each bin of the color magnitude bins of the observations. The total number of stars in both catalogs is 7470. In table 9.4 we show the number of thin, young thick, old thick disc and total number of stars, selected from the populations in the model, for each field in the simulated catalogs.

Table 9.4:

Number of stars, in the model, for the thin, young thick, old thick disc for each field after applying the selection sample. The total number of stars in each field is given in the last column



---



---

Field	l (°)	b (°)	thin disc	young thick disc	old thick disc	total
000400 010000	97	-61	15	15	15	49
000400 470000	325	-68	5	18	11	39
002000 010000	105	-63	10	22	14	53
002000 470000	319	-69	6	8	10	30
002959 033000	110	-66	13	12	16	43
002959 500600	311	-67	16	20	20	64
003240 440056	314	-73	8	10	11	30
004000 010000	117	-64	9	8	7	26
004000 470000	309	-70	1	4	6	11
005000 033000	122	-66	9	13	10	34
005000 500600	304	-67	10	19	16	50
005959 010000	128	-64	7	10	8	26
005959 470000	298	-70	12	12	19	47
011959 010000	139	-63	6	11	10	28
011959 470000	289	-69	13	15	14	47
014000 010000	149	-61	10	15	15	45
014000 470000	280	-68	10	25	17	60
015959 010000	158	-59	11	19	11	44
015959 470000	273	-66	13	23	15	55
022000 470000	268	-64	5	17	9	35
023000 033000	172	-57	14	15	10	40
023959 010000	172	-53	6	23	6	36
023959 470000	263	-61	4	9	9	23
025556 002846	176	-50	10	13	10	34
025559 003000	176	-50	17	14	5	36
030000 470000	260	-58	19	18	11	53
030959 500600	263	-55	15	17	26	63
031800 003000	182	-46	9	19	9	39
032000 470000	257	-55	12	17	23	60
033000 500600	261	-52	12	18	15	47
033800 273000	223	-53	7	17	18	45
033959 000000	186	-41	17	17	10	45
033959 470000	255	-52	17	18	16	53
035959 470000	254	-48	11	14	21	48
041000 500600	258	-46	19	25	9	57
041959 001959	194	-33	27	22	27	78
043000 500600	257	-43	15	20	16	61
044000 500600	257	-41	9	23	17	51
050000 520000	259	-38	18	36	25	88
051959 540000	262	-35	21	32	20	77

---

*continued from previous page*

Field	l (°)	b (°)	thin disc	young thick disc	old thick disc	total
070359 423000	253	-16	36	25	14	76
072048 003000	217	6	73	18	0	91
075600 090000	228	10	55	19	9	83
075959 003000	221	15	52	36	16	106
082312 052959	229	18	29	30	18	78
083959 003000	227	24	20	41	24	85
092758 003043	234	34	22	28	18	69
092800 003000	234	34	22	24	25	74
094753 102657	247	32	4	18	9	34
095958 410150	271	11	55	20	4	79
100000 410000	271	11	36	31	17	86
100759 080000	249	37	20	23	14	58
100913 412801	273	12	38	31	10	80
101428 405235	274	13	36	46	10	94
102800 410000	276	14	36	29	12	77
103959 410000	278	15	36	21	5	63
105731 124726	264	42	9	21	16	48
105808 154324	267	39	3	25	20	51
105959 410000	281	17	39	35	25	101
110009 410232	281	17	39	32	10	82
110053 132816	266	41	3	11	20	41
112200 100000	270	47	10	26	26	66
112800 410000	286	19	21	34	14	71
113159 435959	288	17	34	40	10	86
120000 090000	282	52	8	24	17	52
120000 410000	293	21	20	41	29	91
121159 410000	295	21	22	30	17	69
122759 410000	298	22	15	33	12	62
124224 130559	300	50	7	22	24	55
124359 060000	300	57	11	18	23	57
124359 090000	300	54	11	27	19	61
124359 410000	301	22	25	28	6	59
125609 451238	304	18	31	34	10	75
130047 410000	305	22	18	50	21	93
131359 410000	308	22	17	30	9	56
131359 460007	307	17	15	35	8	61
132000 050000	316	57	13	18	24	62
132000 090000	315	53	9	17	17	52
132000 130000	313	49	13	12	9	37
132800 410000	310	21	21	35	11	69
133026 434759	310	19	15	37	8	61

*continued from previous page*

Field	l (°)	b (°)	thin disc	young thick disc	old thick disc	total
134400 410000	313	21	18	48	17	85
140000 100000	329	49	10	19	23	61
140000 410000	317	20	21	49	19	92
140000 450000	315	16	22	46	11	79
142000 050000	340	51	9	18	13	45
142000 410000	320	19	21	40	12	74
142145 440827	320	16	17	37	8	65
142800 090000	339	47	10	29	31	80
143959 410000	324	17	23	40	21	86
144113 400831	325	18	23	34	23	83
145800 410000	327	16	18	25	12	58
150159 100000	348	41	9	37	34	91
150512 400000	329	16	49	44	9	104
151111 404800	330	15	41	40	17	101
151712 413000	330	14	44	43	15	106
152311 421200	331	12	43	37	14	95
152936 425359	331	11	31	41	13	89
154224 441200	332	9	38	53	14	107
155959 003000	9	37	7	23	22	64
170024 051200	15	22	12	38	7	60
181959 470000	347	-14	26	35	14	79
200246 454536	354	-31	8	44	36	101
201959 470000	353	-34	7	13	6	26
204000 471200	353	-38	4	38	26	73
211000 020000	48	-31	18	41	24	89
211959 480000	351	-44	9	36	33	86
212800 020000	51	-35	13	29	18	63
215200 033000	54	-41	16	25	24	72
215959 480000	349	-51	8	27	36	80
224135 480000	344	-57	15	28	17	62
230000 470000	343	-60	9	21	16	49
232000 020000	78	-57	18	22	16	63
232000 480000	337	-63	6	8	5	22
233000 050000	78	-61	13	18	20	58
234000 010000	87	-59	9	16	20	48
234000 470000	333	-66	9	12	16	44
235000 050000	87	-63	9	22	19	52
235600 020000	93	-62	12	20	7	42
235600 480000	327	-66	8	11	9	35

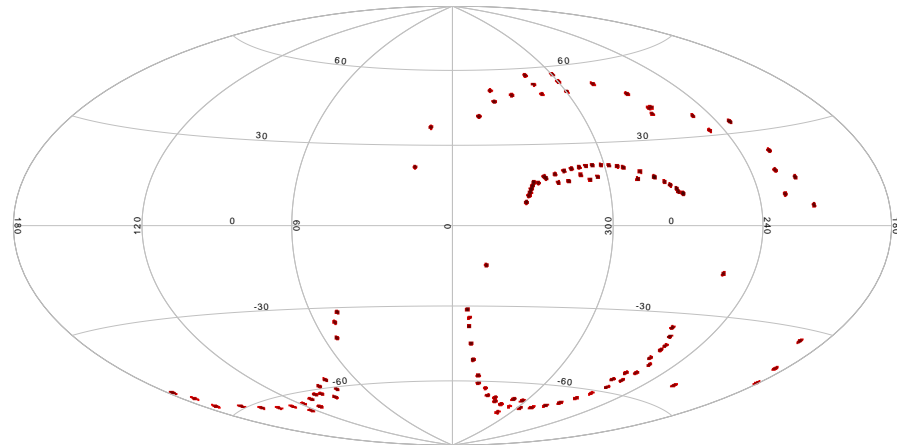


Figure 9.4: Aitoff projection for the iDR2 fields selected for this analysis.

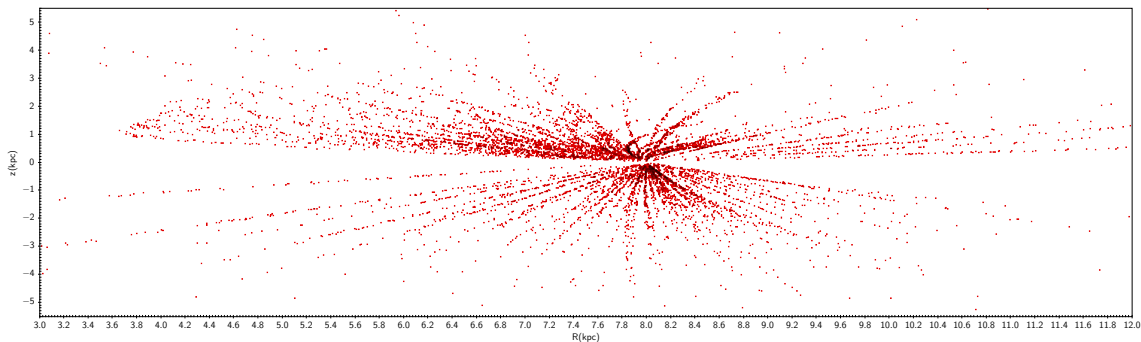


Figure 9.5: Spatial distribution for the F/G/K stars sample from GES as given by the simulations.

Figure 9.4 shows the Aitoff projection for the iDR2 fields selected for this analysis and figure 9.5 shows the spatial coverage in Galactocentric cylindrical coordinates for the F/G/K stars in the GES sample as given by the model. The sample covers a galactocentric distance in the range  $4.0 < R_{\text{gal}} < 10.5$  kpc and a distance above the plane in the range  $-3.0 < Z < 3.0$  kpc. The SEGUE sample goes further in the outer regions which allows a better analysis of the radial metallicity distribution in the external galaxy while GES sample covers better the inner regions. The  $z$  distribution in GES is larger than in SEGUE which allows a possible study of the vertical metallicity gradients.

## 9.5 Distances

We have calculated distances in a similar way as described in section 8.1.4. While in SEGUE we used the absolute magnitudes in V band for the GES sample we used absolute magnitudes in J band. From the SEGUE selection we selected MSTO stars while from GES disc selection

Table 9.5:

Set of parameters used to compute absolute magnitude from the relation with effective temperature for dwarfs ( $\log g > 4.5$  dex) and giants ( $\log g < 4.0$  dex) and with  $\log g$  for subgiants ( $4.0 \text{ dex} \leq \log g \leq 4.5 \text{ dex}$ ). The selection in metallicity and  $\log g$  is given in the first two columns respectively.

[Fe/H] range (dex)	$\log g$ range (dex)	Intercept	First coef	Second coef
$[Fe/H] < -0.5$	$\log g > 4.5$	17.384	-0.004	$2.29 \times 10^{-07}$
$-0.5 \leq [Fe/H] \leq 0.0$	$\log g > 4.5$	21.307	-0.006	$4.41 \times 10^{-07}$
$[Fe/H] > 0.0$	$\log g > 4.0$	20.904	-0.005	$3.72 \times 10^{-07}$
$[Fe/H] < -0.5$	$\log g < 4.0$	-39.826	0.013	$-9.94 \times 10^{-07}$
$-0.5 \leq [Fe/H] \leq 0.0$	$\log g < 4.0$	-51.826	0.018	$-1.537 \times 10^{-06}$
$[Fe/H] > 0.0$	$\log g \leq 4.0$	-48.973	0.018	$-1.537 \times 10^{-06}$
$[Fe/H] \leq -0.5$	$4.0 \leq \log g \leq 4.5$	14.481	-7.833	1.224
$[Fe/H] > -0.5$	$4.0 \leq \log g \leq 4.5$	3.101	-3.157	0.752

sample we selected in color range which contains a mixture of dwarfs, giants and subgiants. Therefore to compute the distance modulus for this sample, one needs a relation between absolute magnitude and effective temperature for each type of stars. Besides selecting stars in different metallicity ranges we have also to use the  $\log g$  information to select giants, subgiants and dwarfs. For the giants and dwarfs we fitted the absolute magnitude as a function of temperature for each metallicity selection while for the subgiants we fitted the absolute magnitude as a function of the  $\log g$ . We selected stars from which we computed absolute magnitudes in the ranges defined by metallicity and  $\log g$ . For  $\log g$  the selected intervals are smaller than 4.0 dex, between 4.0 dex and 4.5 dex, and larger than 4.5 dex. We make 3 groups of metallicities ( $[Fe/H] < -0.5$ ,  $-0.5 \leq [Fe/H] \leq 0.0$  and  $[Fe/H] > 0.0$ ), except for the subgiants ( $4.0 < \log g < 4.5$ ) for which 2 groups are considered ( $[Fe/H] \leq -0.5$  and  $[Fe/H] > -0.5$ ).

We have fitted with a second order polynomial each of these ranges for each of the luminosity class. Figure 9.6 and 9.7 show the absolute magnitude as a function of effective temperature and 9.8 show the absolute magnitude as a function of the  $\log g$  for the stars in the selected ranges. Table 9.5 shows the results of the fitted relations.

The distance modulus is computed, in J band, as explained in section 8.1.4 correcting the observed apparent magnitudes with Schlegel extinction values in J band. Figure 9.9 shows the difference between distance estimate and the distance given by the model as a function of the distance given by the model. The figure shows a good agreement between the distances computed from our method and the distances given by the BGM. In comparison with the distances computed from SEGUE there is a clear improvement. We can inspect the accuracy of our method in relation to the BGM distances from the distribution of the difference between distance estimate and the distance given by the model shown in figure 9.10. The results show that the accuracy is good with more than 91% of the stars inside 1.0 kpc accuracy but there is a

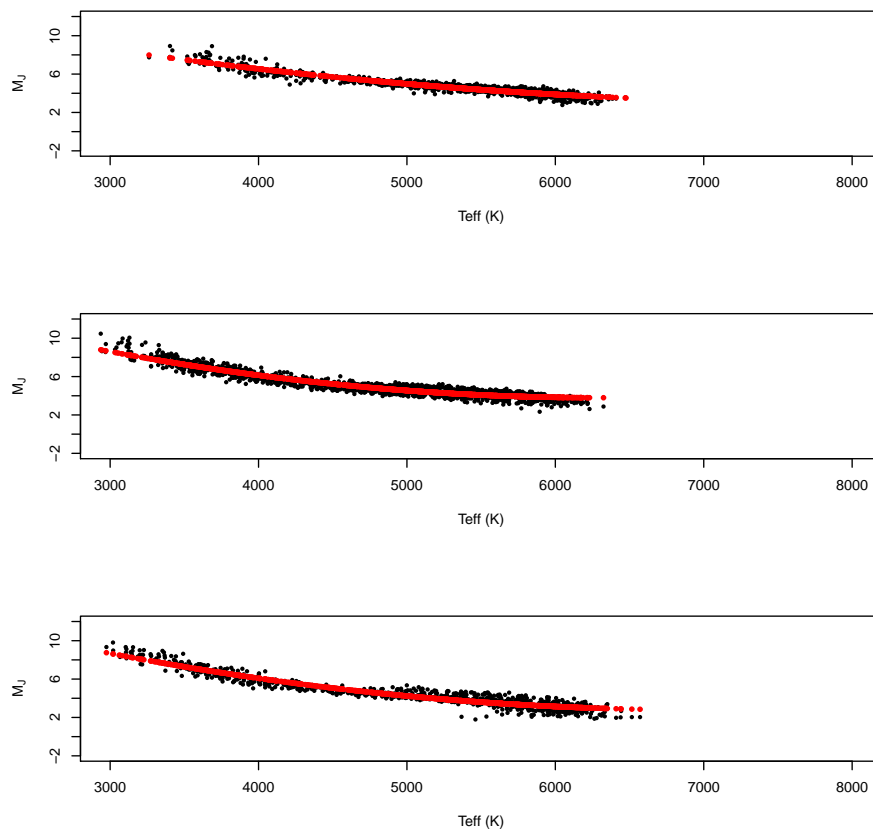


Figure 9.6: Absolute magnitude as a function of the effective temperature for dwarf stars in the three different metallicity ranges. From top to bottom the metallicity ranges are  $[Fe/H] < -0.5$ ,  $-0.5 \leq [Fe/H] \leq 0.0$  and  $[Fe/H] > 0.0$  respectively.

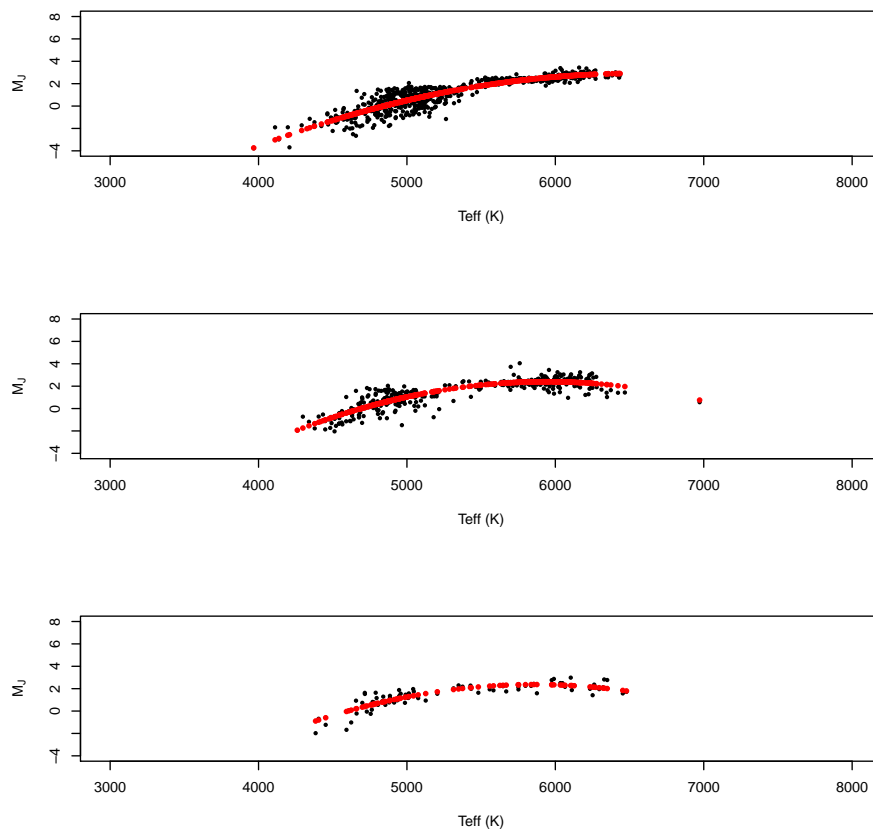


Figure 9.7: Absolute magnitude as a function of the effective temperature for giants stars in the three different metallicity ranges. From top to bottom the metallicity ranges are  $[Fe/H] < -0.5$ ,  $-0.5 \leq [Fe/H] \leq 0.0$  and  $[Fe/H] > 0.0$  respectively.

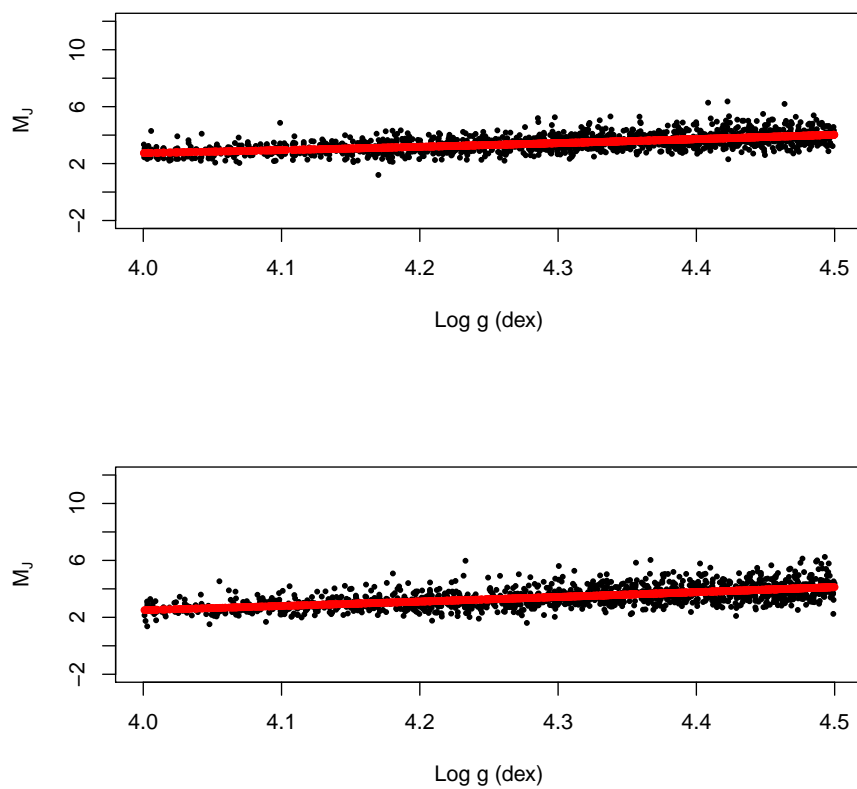


Figure 9.8: Absolute magnitude as a function of the log  $g$  for subgiant stars in the two different metallicity ranges. From top to bottom the metallicity ranges are  $[Fe/H] \leq -0.5$  and  $[Fe/H] > -0.5$  respectively.



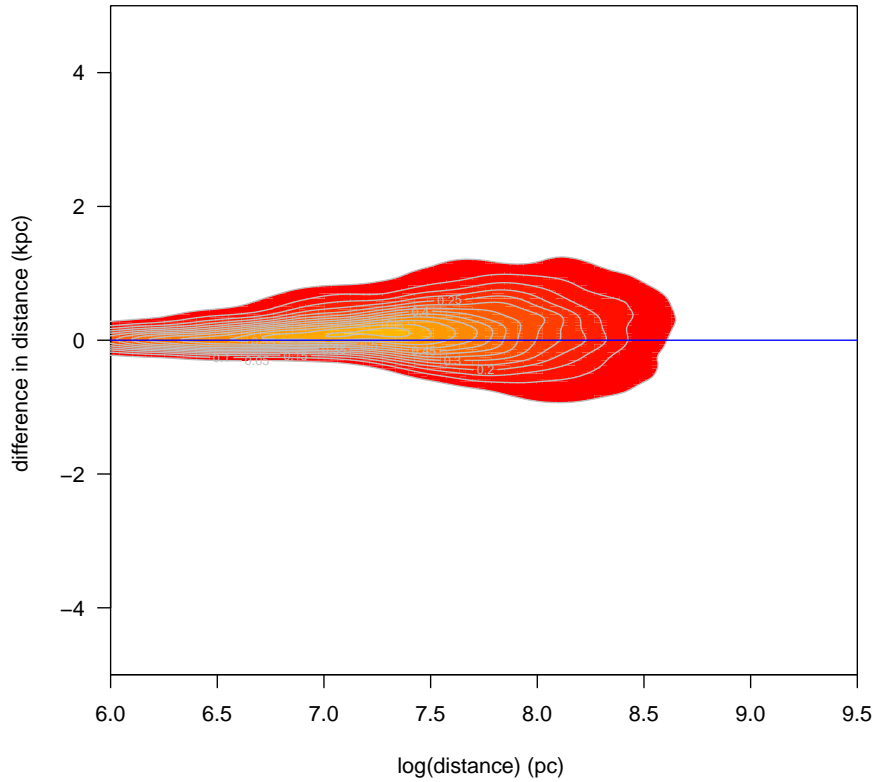


Figure 9.9: Difference between distance estimate and the distance given by the model as a function of the  $\log(\text{distance})$  (natural logarithm) given by the model. Density map and grey contours refer to our method.

bias towards larger distances computed from our method.

## 9.6 The Metallicity Distribution

### 9.6.1 The observed metallicity distribution

Figure 9.11 shows the metallicity distribution of the total GES sample. The total metallicity distribution which is the mixture essentially of the thin and thick disc has a mean equal to  $-0.294$  dex with a dispersion of  $0.468$  dex with a low metallicity tail.

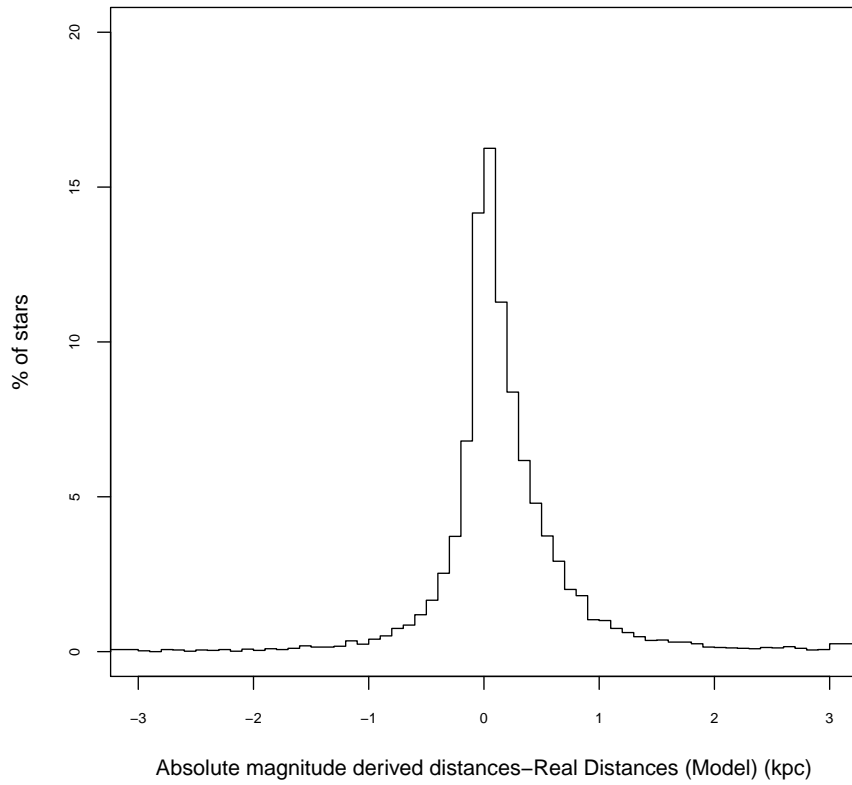


Figure 9.10: Distribution of the differences between distance estimate and the distance given by the model.

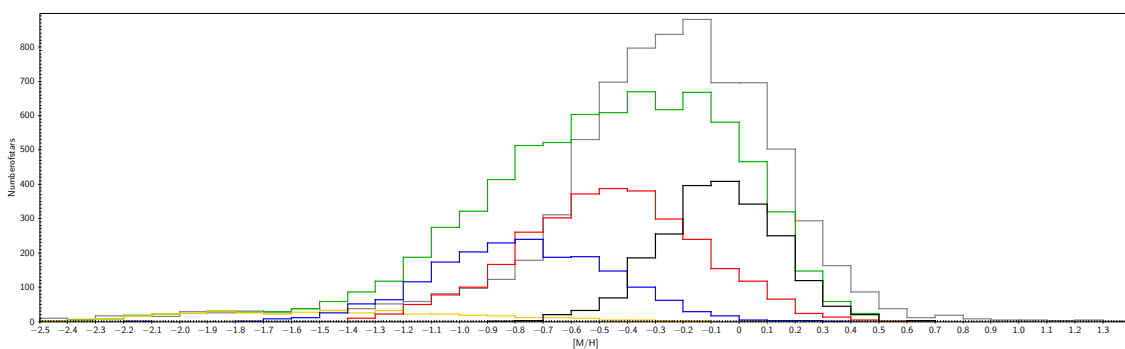


Figure 9.11: Metallicity distribution of the total GES sample from observations (grey lines) and as given by simulations (Green lines). The different components as given by the model are: black lines: Thin disc; red lines: Young thick disc; blue lines: Old thick disc; orange lines: Halo.

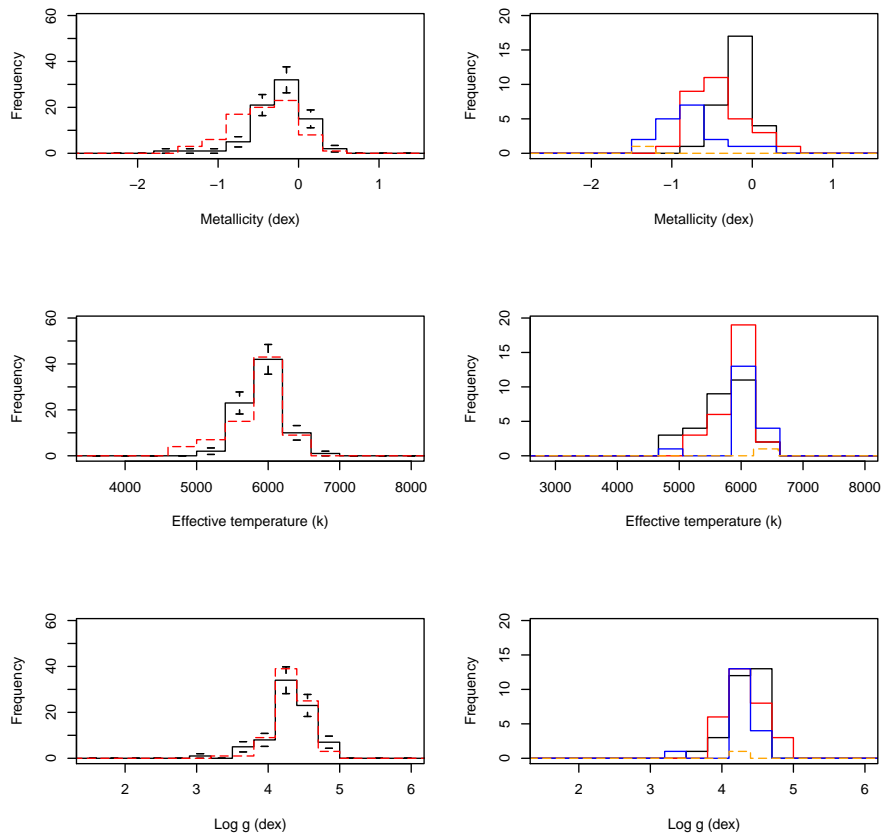


Figure 9.12: Comparison of the spectroscopic observations and simulations for a field at  $l=229^\circ$  and  $b=18^\circ$ . Left panels: Black lines are observations and simulations are in red. The Poisson noise is represented by the small vertical bars. Right panels: Black lines are thin disc; red lines are young thick disc; blue lines are old thick disc; orange lines are halo.

### 9.6.2 Preliminary comparison with the BGM

The simulated spectral parameters distributions were compared with the observed spectroscopic distributions for the different fields. Figures 9.12 and 9.13 show the parameter distributions for field 082312 052959 at the direction  $l=229^\circ$  and  $b=18^\circ$  and for field 000400 010000 at the direction  $l=97^\circ$  and  $b=-61^\circ$  respectively. These two directions are located at nearly opposite places of the Milky Way. Field 082312 052959 presents a good agreement for the effective temperature and  $\log g$  distributions. The simulated metallicity distribution is slightly lower than the observed one. Field 000400 010000 presented in figure 9.13 presents a metallicity distribution similar to the former one. The effective temperature presents a wide distribution. Figure 9.14 shows the effective temperature as a function of the J-K color. The figure shows an existing bias which may have come from the data, from the isochrones, that should be revised, or because the extinction was not corrected properly. The simulated  $\log g$  distribution is in agreement with the observational distribution at the  $2\sigma$  level.

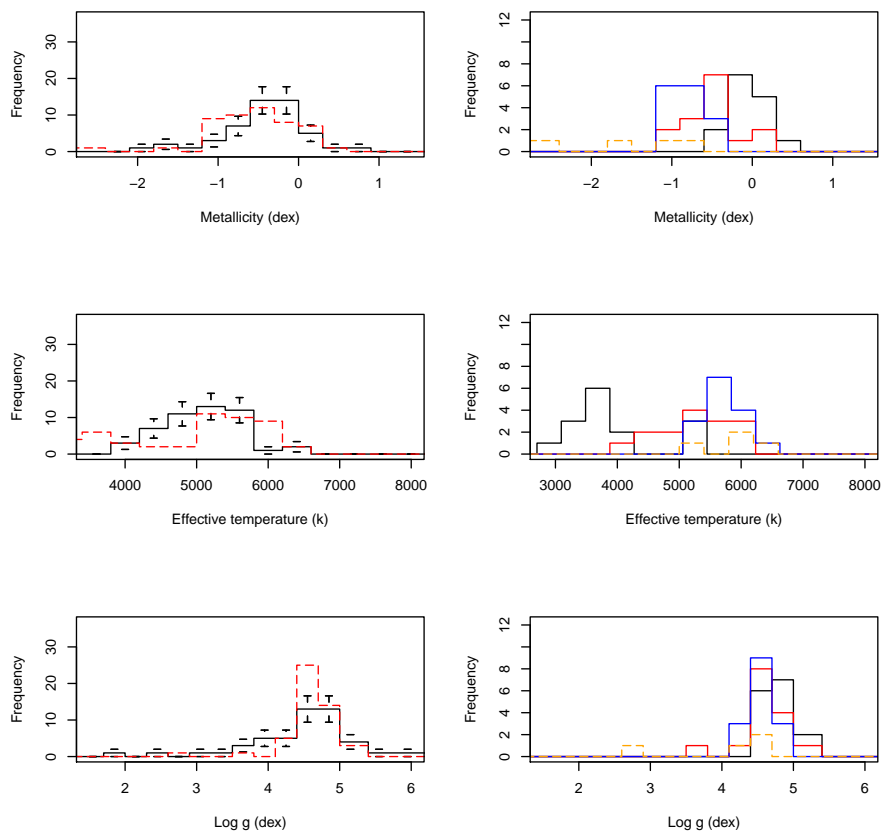


Figure 9.13: Comparison of the spectroscopic observations and simulations for a field at  $l=97^\circ$  and  $b=-61^\circ$ . Left panels: Black lines are observations and simulations are in red. The Poisson noise is represented by the small vertical bars. Right panels: Black lines are thin disc; red lines are young thick disc; blue lines are old thick disc; orange lines are halo.

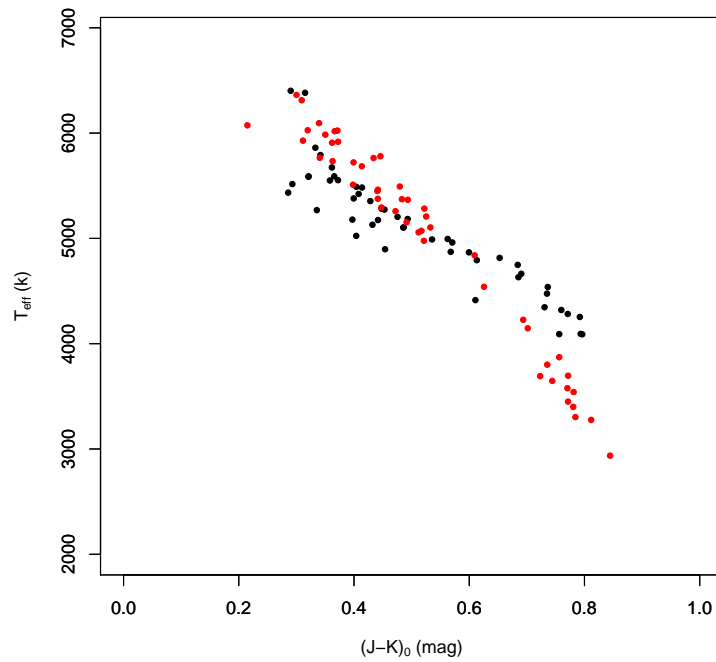


Figure 9.14: Effective temperature as a function of the J-K color for a field at  $l=97^\circ$  and  $b=-61^\circ$ . Black points represent observations and red points simulations.

To inspect the metallicity distributions we computed the means, modes and dispersion in both catalogs for all fields. The results are presented in table 9.6. This table shows that the means and modes for the simulated metallicity distributions are often lower than the ones from the observed metallicity distribution.

Table 9.6:  
GES metallicity distribution

Field	mean obs (dex)	mean sim (dex)	mode obs (dex)	mode sim (dex)	$\sigma_{obs}$ (dex)	$\sigma_{sim}$ (dex)	l ( $^{\circ}$ )	b ( $^{\circ}$ )
000400 010000	-0.42	-0.539	-0.315	-0.706	0.51	0.553	97	-61
000400 470000	-0.239	-0.676	0.077	-0.893	0.584	0.48	325	-68
002000 010000	-0.39	-0.63	-0.464	-0.446	0.382	0.482	105	-63
002000 470000	-0.255	-0.718	-0.139	-0.517	0.49	0.709	319	-69
002959 033000	-0.519	-0.531	-0.446	-0.352	0.607	0.478	110	-66
002959 500600	-0.428	-0.553	-0.426	-0.531	0.581	0.504	311	-67
003240 440056	-0.264	-0.493	-0.111	-0.279	0.447	0.425	314	-73
004000 010000	-0.425	-0.534	-0.361	-0.195	0.317	0.671	117	-64
004000 470000	-0.236	-0.636	-0.264	-0.454	0.545	0.42	309	-70
005000 033000	-0.316	-0.479	-0.104	-0.526	0.363	0.389	122	-66
005000 500600	-0.433	-0.624	-0.5	-0.452	0.353	0.469	304	-67
005959 010000	-0.247	-0.523	-0.381	-0.757	0.37	0.389	128	-64
005959 470000	-0.483	-0.608	-0.527	-0.248	0.491	0.568	298	-70
011959 010000	-0.377	-0.533	-0.256	-0.479	0.635	0.485	139	-63
011959 470000	-0.443	-0.544	-0.319	-0.356	0.366	0.531	289	-69
014000 010000	-0.375	-0.526	-0.461	-0.568	0.466	0.498	149	-61
014000 470000	-0.509	-0.591	-0.422	-0.22	0.593	0.533	280	-68
015959 010000	-0.352	-0.482	-0.382	-0.133	0.32	0.441	158	-59
015959 470000	-0.508	-0.489	-0.394	-0.325	0.505	0.466	273	-66
022000 470000	-0.145	-0.618	-0.32	-0.546	0.355	0.511	268	-64
023000 033000	-0.261	-0.386	-0.343	-0.269	0.373	0.361	172	-57
023959 010000	-0.304	-0.54	-0.196	-0.448	0.528	0.426	172	-53
023959 470000	-0.319	-0.518	-0.162	-0.537	0.425	0.389	263	-61
025556 002846	-0.275	-0.415	-0.363	-0.374	0.389	0.338	176	-50
025559 003000	-0.234	-0.305	-0.3	-0.186	0.231	0.271	176	-50
030000 470000	-0.294	-0.5	-0.249	-0.497	0.534	0.588	260	-58
030959 500600	-0.395	-0.629	-0.33	-0.245	0.487	0.579	263	-55
031800 003000	-0.388	-0.484	-0.266	-0.182	0.627	0.453	182	-46
032000 470000	-0.397	-0.679	-0.382	-0.605	0.382	0.58	257	-55
033000 500600	-0.273	-0.475	-0.169	-0.195	0.424	0.356	261	-52
033800 273000	-0.39	-0.693	-0.289	-0.651	0.475	0.485	223	-53

*continued from previous page*

Field	mean obs (dex)	mean sim (dex)	mode obs (dex)	mode sim (dex)	$\sigma_{obs}$ (dex)	$\sigma_{sim}$ (dex)	l (°)	b (°)
033959 000000	-0.292	-0.439	-0.1	-0.331	0.398	0.505	186	-41
033959 470000	-0.337	-0.457	-0.324	-0.236	0.376	0.461	255	-52
035959 470000	-0.199	-0.566	-0.231	-0.718	0.405	0.432	254	-48
041000 500600	-0.406	-0.476	-0.271	-0.188	0.533	0.462	258	-46
041959 001959	-0.292	-0.512	-0.326	-0.196	0.361	0.46	194	-33
043000 500600	-0.503	-0.638	-0.412	-0.691	0.542	0.535	257	-43
044000 500600	-0.271	-0.532	-0.232	-0.634	0.3	0.49	257	-41
050000 520000	-0.375	-0.551	-0.164	-0.24	0.454	0.491	259	-38
051959 540000	-0.243	-0.481	-0.186	-0.527	0.402	0.434	262	-35
070359 423000	-0.149	-0.398	-0.082	-0.17	0.328	0.395	253	-16
072048 003000	-0.228	-0.302	-0.053	-0.15	0.303	0.23	217	6
075600 090000	-0.229	-0.325	-0.057	-0.258	0.385	0.321	228	10
075959 003000	-0.227	-0.363	-0.051	-0.24	0.417	0.32	221	15
082312 052959	-0.251	-0.42	-0.143	-0.165	0.337	0.396	229	18
083959 003000	-0.296	-0.457	-0.075	-0.43	0.378	0.379	227	24
092758 003043	-0.272	-0.503	-0.082	-0.254	0.39	0.416	234	34
092800 003000	-0.313	-0.493	-0.097	-0.236	0.437	0.465	234	34
094753 102657	-0.357	-0.613	-0.306	-0.581	0.441	0.404	247	32
095958 410150	-0.124	-0.275	-0.011	-0.084	0.367	0.334	271	11
100000 410000	-0.129	-0.335	-0.018	-0.032	0.316	0.436	271	11
100759 080000	-0.332	-0.495	-0.121	-0.327	0.514	0.414	249	37
100913 412801	-0.131	-0.276	0.073	-0.119	0.346	0.362	273	12
101428 405235	-0.145	-0.295	0.015	-0.102	0.297	0.373	274	13
102800 410000	-0.199	-0.35	-0.195	-0.188	0.321	0.345	276	14
103959 410000	-0.167	-0.284	0.006	-0.069	0.328	0.36	278	15
105731 124726	-0.585	-0.569	-0.285	-0.319	0.598	0.401	264	42
105808 154324	-0.581	-0.598	-0.379	-0.492	0.636	0.432	267	39
105959 410000	-0.171	-0.37	-0.091	-0.188	0.396	0.421	281	17
110009 410232	-0.181	-0.318	0.035	-0.174	0.422	0.363	281	17
110053 132816	-0.426	-0.757	-0.306	-0.719	0.433	0.587	266	41
112200 100000	-0.445	-0.61	-0.302	-0.658	0.597	0.376	270	47
112800 410000	-0.126	-0.372	-0.057	-0.173	0.435	0.402	286	19
113159 435959	-0.183	-0.383	0.004	-0.433	0.441	0.393	288	17
120000 090000	-0.476	-0.578	-0.388	-0.417	0.447	0.457	282	52
120000 410000	-0.213	-0.477	-0.177	-0.213	0.441	0.418	293	21
121159 410000	-0.294	-0.41	-0.058	-0.396	0.453	0.388	295	21
122759 410000	-0.129	-0.427	0.086	-0.139	0.35	0.399	298	22
124224 130559	-0.451	-0.582	-0.205	-0.362	0.472	0.398	300	50
124359 060000	-0.513	-0.626	-0.353	-0.638	0.606	0.506	300	57
124359 090000	-0.488	-0.544	-0.238	-0.645	0.653	0.453	300	54
124359 410000	-0.124	-0.317	-0.124	-0.149	0.403	0.37	301	22

*continued from previous page*

Field	mean obs (dex)	mean sim (dex)	mode obs (dex)	mode sim (dex)	$\sigma_{obs}$ (dex)	$\sigma_{sim}$ (dex)	l (°)	b (°)
125609 451238	-0.254	-0.324	-0.211	-0.131	0.396	0.396	304	18
130047 410000	-0.256	-0.494	-0.377	-0.435	0.368	0.452	305	22
131359 410000	-0.298	-0.434	-0.209	-0.175	0.47	0.365	308	22
131359 460007	-0.136	-0.385	-0.19	-0.386	0.351	0.423	307	17
132000 050000	-0.502	-0.63	-0.278	-0.592	0.566	0.624	316	57
132000 090000	-0.509	-0.63	-0.226	-0.457	0.605	0.479	315	53
132000 130000	-0.331	-0.519	-0.326	-0.395	0.486	0.514	313	49
132800 410000	-0.207	-0.434	-0.181	-0.225	0.48	0.492	310	21
133026 434759	-0.194	-0.444	0.003	-0.392	0.509	0.433	310	19
134400 410000	-0.214	-0.444	-0.309	-0.245	0.375	0.411	313	21
140000 100000	-0.435	-0.739	-0.365	-0.496	0.425	0.591	329	49
140000 410000	-0.174	-0.427	-0.087	-0.452	0.334	0.443	317	20
140000 450000	-0.177	-0.368	-0.156	-0.309	0.283	0.373	315	16
142000 050000	-0.406	-0.582	-0.172	-0.758	0.612	0.384	340	51
142000 410000	-0.173	-0.391	-0.263	-0.393	0.32	0.398	320	19
142145 440827	-0.179	-0.449	-0.169	-0.371	0.374	0.426	320	16
142800 090000	-0.607	-0.648	-0.345	-0.464	0.636	0.441	339	47
143959 410000	-0.12	-0.414	-0.143	-0.577	0.395	0.44	324	17
144113 400831	-0.215	-0.477	-0.154	-0.237	0.402	0.488	325	18
145800 410000	-0.144	-0.408	-0.028	-0.165	0.388	0.413	327	16
150159 100000	-0.468	-0.665	-0.314	-0.523	0.575	0.535	348	41
150512 400000	-0.297	-0.395	-0.343	-0.142	0.438	0.487	329	16
151111 404800	-0.143	-0.36	0.045	-0.373	0.354	0.378	330	15
151712 413000	-0.206	-0.371	-0.024	-0.187	0.391	0.425	330	14
152311 421200	-0.179	-0.297	-0.285	-0.003	0.398	0.406	331	12
152936 425359	-0.137	-0.401	-0.255	-0.157	0.479	0.466	331	11
154224 441200	-0.178	-0.336	0.022	-0.078	0.367	0.45	332	9
155959 003000	-0.503	-0.65	-0.457	-0.36	0.552	0.544	9	37
170024 051200	-0.205	-0.501	0.023	-0.309	0.62	0.441	15	22
181959 470000	-0.136	-0.361	0.099	0.051	0.402	0.485	347	-14
200246 454536	-0.522	-0.629	-0.438	-0.575	0.495	0.469	354	-31
201959 470000	-0.195	-0.469	-0.28	-0.501	0.486	0.383	353	-34
204000 471200	-0.411	-0.596	-0.477	-0.544	0.483	0.433	353	-38
211000 020000	-0.233	-0.551	-0.257	-0.417	0.34	0.508	48	-31
211959 480000	-0.539	-0.647	-0.255	-0.555	0.571	0.438	351	-44
212800 020000	-0.306	-0.521	-0.225	-0.422	0.52	0.457	51	-35
215200 033000	-0.414	-0.616	-0.226	-0.62	0.539	0.521	54	-41
215959 480000	-0.474	-0.713	-0.2	-0.628	0.509	0.51	349	-51
224135 480000	-0.419	-0.571	-0.3	-0.656	0.449	0.448	344	-57
230000 470000	-0.198	-0.516	-0.215	-0.391	0.467	0.432	343	-60
232000 020000	-0.278	-0.58	-0.26	-0.291	0.448	0.566	78	-57



continued from previous page

Field	mean obs (dex)	mean sim (dex)	mode obs (dex)	mode sim (dex)	$\sigma_{obs}$ (dex)	$\sigma_{sim}$ (dex)	l ( $^{\circ}$ )	b ( $^{\circ}$ )
232000 480000	-0.234	-0.468	-0.281	-0.19	0.398	0.519	337	-63
233000 050000	-0.335	-0.581	-0.151	-0.615	0.54	0.511	78	-61
234000 010000	-0.298	-0.568	-0.374	-0.565	0.513	0.422	87	-59
234000 470000	-0.392	-0.692	-0.378	-0.674	0.625	0.559	333	-66
235000 050000	-0.434	-0.489	-0.482	-0.473	0.497	0.517	87	-63
235600 020000	-0.442	-0.437	-0.41	-0.511	0.448	0.342	93	-62
235600 480000	-0.427	-0.667	-0.362	-0.349	0.612	0.678	327	-66

In order to inspect these results we show in figures 9.15 and 9.16 the field distribution in galactic coordinates color coded by the difference in the means and modes respectively. The figures show that for regions around  $l=270^{\circ}$  to  $330^{\circ}$  and  $b=10^{\circ}$  to  $25^{\circ}$  there are fields systematically larger by the same amount even if the dispersion is large. In overall the distribution of the means or modes is positive which means that the observed metallicity distributions are systematically more metal rich than the simulated metallicity distributions.

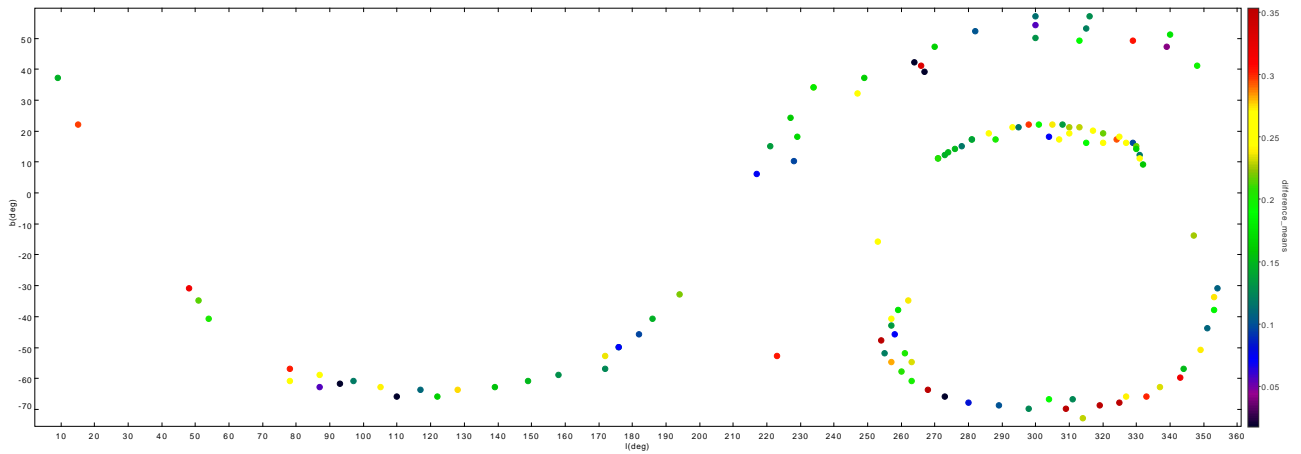


Figure 9.15: Distribution in (l,b) for all fields in GES sample. The color code represents the difference between the mean observation and mean simulation for each field.

### 9.6.3 ABC/MCMC analysis for the GES sample

We used the ABC/MCMC method as explained in section 8.1.5. In this preliminary analysis the fit was done for the three parameters of the young thick disc and the three parameters of the old thin disc. The metallicity distribution of the old thick disc is the one assumed by the model version (i.e. a local value of  $-0.78$  dex, a dispersion of  $0.3$  and no gradients) (Robin et al. 2014).

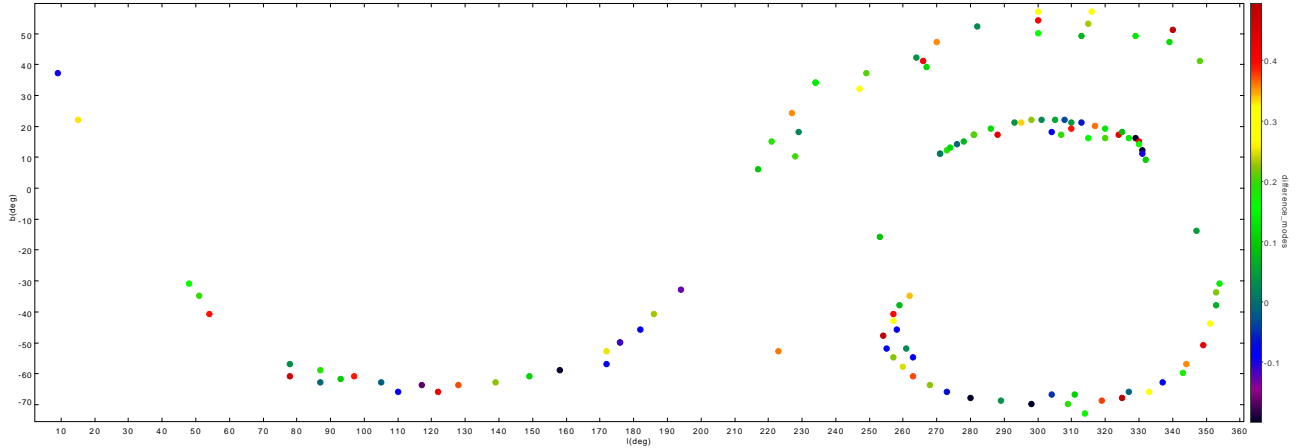


Figure 9.16: Distribution in (l,b) for all fields in GES sample. The color code represents the difference between mode of the observed distribution in metallicity and the mode of the simulated distribution.

Table 9.7:

Set of parameter range. The thick disc parameters have the subscript 'Thick' and refer to the young thick disc. The subscript 'Old Thin' refers to the older ages of the thin disc as explained in section 8.1.5.

Parameter		Minimum	Maximum
$\frac{d[Fe/H]}{dR}$	(dex/kpc)	-0.15	0.15
$[Fe/H]_{SNThick}$	(dex)	-1.0	-0.1
$(Dispersion)_{Thick}$	(dex)	0.0	0.7
$\frac{d[Fe/H]}{dR}$	(dex/kpc)	-0.2	0.1
$[Fe/H]_{SNOld Thin}$	(dex)	-0.5	0.25
$(Dispersion)_{Old Thin}$	(dex)	0.0	0.6

The parameters range used for this analysis are given in table 9.7. As explained in section 8.1.5 the errors were computed from the final batch of each Markov Chain and by comparison of the different runs for each single simulation. In SEGUE analysis we have performed 10 different simulations and the results of each different simulation were well inside errors given by the ABC/MCMC analysis. Therefore, in this preliminary analysis, we assume that the errors due to different simulations are smaller than the ones given by the method but further analysis is needed to confirm it. We have explored the different possible correlations between parameters. In this analysis we used all the above listed fields from GES survey.

Table 9.8 gives the fitted model parameters, along with standard deviation for each parameter. The values are the mean of 10 different ABC/MCMC runs which allowed to check if the chain has converged. These results are compatible with a flat radial gradient for the thick disc ( $0.011 \pm 0.024$  dex kpc<sup>-1</sup>) as in SEGUE analysis but a SN metallicity of  $-0.233 \pm 0.038$  dex is found which is higher than the one found for SEGUE. The dispersion in the thick disc (0.173

Table 9.8:

Young thick disc and old thin disc metallicity mean values, when fitting the young thick disc and old thin disc with the GES survey

$[Fe/H]_{SN_{Thick}}$ (dex)	$\frac{d[Fe/H]}{dR}$ (dex kpc <sup>-1</sup> )	$(Disp)_{Thick}$ (dex)	$[Fe/H]_{SN_{Old\ Thin}}$ (dex)	$\frac{d[Fe/H]}{dR}$ (dex kpc <sup>-1</sup> )	$(Disp)_{Thin}$ (dex)	$\mathcal{L}$	BIC
-0.233 ±0.038	0.011 ±0.024	0.173 ±0.024	0.128 ±0.045	-0.033 ±0.045	0.135 ±0.012	-490.55 ±1.150	1033.51

±0.024 dex) is also smaller than the one found with SEGUE analysis.

Regarding the thin disc, results point to a SN metallicity around  $0.128 \pm 0.045$  dex which is larger than the one obtained with SEGUE and a dispersion well in agreement with SEGUE data. The radial metallicity gradient is shallower ( $-0.033 \pm 0.045$  dex kpc<sup>-1</sup>) than the one given by the SEGUE analysis. The dispersion around  $0.135 \pm 0.011$  dex is well in agreement with the SEGUE analysis and presents no correlation with other parameters.

In figure 9.17 we show the correlations for the ABC/MCMC analysis of the GES sample. The parameters do not show correlations apart of the correlation thick disc local metallicity and gradient. Comparing with SEGUE correlations (Figure 8.8) we noticed that there is no more correlation between the gradient of the old thin disc and the SN of the old thin disc for the GES sample while the correlation between the gradient and SN metallicity of the thick disc changed sign. The anticorrelation visible in SEGUE results is now a positive correlation with GES sample. We will discuss this result in section 10.2.

## 9.7 Discussion

### 9.7.1 The thin disc

The local metallicity value is still under debate and the errors associated to the measurements from different analysis may be large. The SN metallicity in GES sample is found to be  $0.128 \pm 0.045$  dex which is larger than the one obtained from the analysis of SEGUE sample. Both results are well in agreement with the local sample results from Adibekyan et al. (2013) which obtained a value around  $-0.06 \pm 0.22$  dex and with figure 9 of Haywood et al. (2013) (which used the same data) but is slightly higher than values around zero as Fuhrmann (2011) which obtained  $-0.034 \pm 0.015$  dex from a local sample of stars and Hayden et al. (2014) which obtained  $0.02 \pm 0.02$  dex with a APOGEE red giants sample. Other analysis have obtained solar values of  $[M/H] \sim 0.00$  dex (Haywood 2001, 2002; Taylor & Croxall 2005; Luck & Heiter 2006; Fuhrmann 2008; Ivezić et al. 2008; Casagrande et al. 2011). Even lower values, around -0.2 dex, have been obtained (Wyse & Gilmore 1995; Rocha-Pinto & Maciel 1996; Soubiran et al. 2003; Nordström et al. 2004; Allende Prieto et al. 2004; Holmberg et al. 2007; Lee et al. 2011).

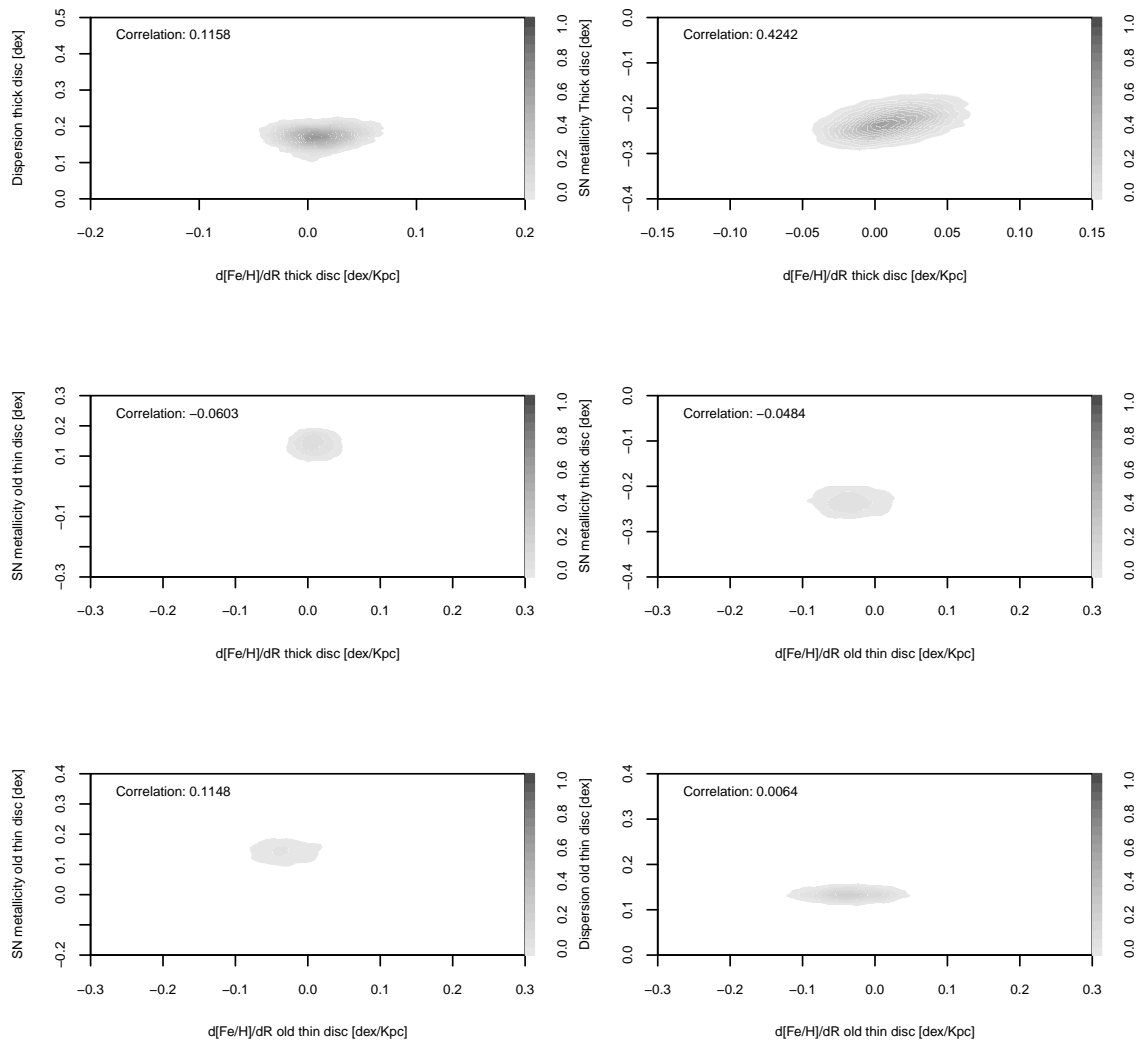


Figure 9.17: Correlations between parameters for the young thick disc and old thin disc fitting for the GES sample analysis.

Table 8.13 summarizes a selection of literature values.

The gradient obtained for the old thin disc of  $-0.033 \pm 0.045$  dex  $\text{kpc}^{-1}$  is in agreement, inside errors, with results obtained from the SEGUE analysis but has a larger error compared with the SEGUE analysis of case 1. Recent literature values from the GES DR1 analysis of F/G/K stars are  $-0.058 \pm 0.008$  dex  $\text{kpc}^{-1}$  (Recio-Blanco et al. 2014) and  $-0.044 \pm 0.009$  dex  $\text{kpc}^{-1}$  (Mikolaitis et al. 2014) which are flatter than the ones obtained from the red giants in APOGEE survey  $-0.066 \pm 0.006$  dex  $\text{kpc}^{-1}$  (Anders et al. 2014) and  $-0.09 \pm 0.02$  dex  $\text{kpc}^{-1}$  (Hayden et al. 2014) and in better agreement with our results. Values for the thin disc gradient are shown in table 8.13.

The dispersion around  $0.135 \pm 0.011$  dex is in agreement with our SEGUE analysis and with determinations from simulations which obtained values around 0.15 dex (Minchev et al. 2013).

### 9.7.2 The thick disc

As for the thin disc the local metallicity is difficult to constrain and different analysis point to different values. The local thick disc metallicity is found to be  $-0.233 \pm 0.038$  higher than the one obtained from the SEGUE analysis. The value is higher than the one obtained by Adibekyan et al. (2013) for the chemically selected thick disc sample but in agreement with their sample of thick disc + high  $\alpha$  metal rich stars. The results are also in agreement with local sample from the GCS around  $-0.25 \pm 0.20$  (Gilmore et al. 1995) and the most recent analysis of APOGEE red giants in the range  $0.5 < z < 1.0$  kpc which obtained  $-0.324 \pm 0.06$  (Hayden et al. 2014). Nevertheless in most of the recent analysis the local metallicity measures are around -0.5 dex (table 8.14) as obtained in SEGUE analysis.

The gradient in the thick disc, as in SEGUE analysis is found to be flat which is in agreement with literature presented in table 8.14 and discussed in section 8.4.2.

# Chapter 10

## Conclusions and perspectives

We have analysed a photometric sample of the SEGUE survey, and two spectroscopic samples, a sample of MSTO stars from the SEGUE survey and a sample of F/G/K stars from the GES survey. In the following sections we will analyse the implications of our results on the formation and evolution of the thin and thick disc and give future perspectives to the following work.

### 10.1 The photometric sample

We have analysed the SEGUE low latitudes photometric sample and we noticed that in few fields there was a star count difference between simulations and observations. Assuming that the extinction is properly taken into account this can be due to the presence of a structure or the an indication that the warp slope or the warp model used should be revised.

The preliminary analysis done to the proper motions shown that there is a shift and a larger dispersion in simulations than in observations. The larger dispersion can be due to overestimations of errors or that the velocity dispersion implementation should be revised. The new implementation could take into account smaller age bins and new age-velocity dispersions, even if Gomez et al. (1997) has already been compared with Holmberg et al. (2009) and the former has presented better results (Czekaj et al. 2014).

The analysis done to the revised versions A and B (Czekaj et al. 2014) have shown that model B produces simulations in better agreement with the data.

### 10.2 Thin/Thick disc - SEGUE vs GES

Figures 10.1 and 10.2 show the R and Z distribution for the GES and SEGUE samples. The SEGUE sample covers better larger galactocentric distances than the inner galaxy while GES covers better the inner galaxy. The GES sample covers better than SEGUE the vertical distribution.

---

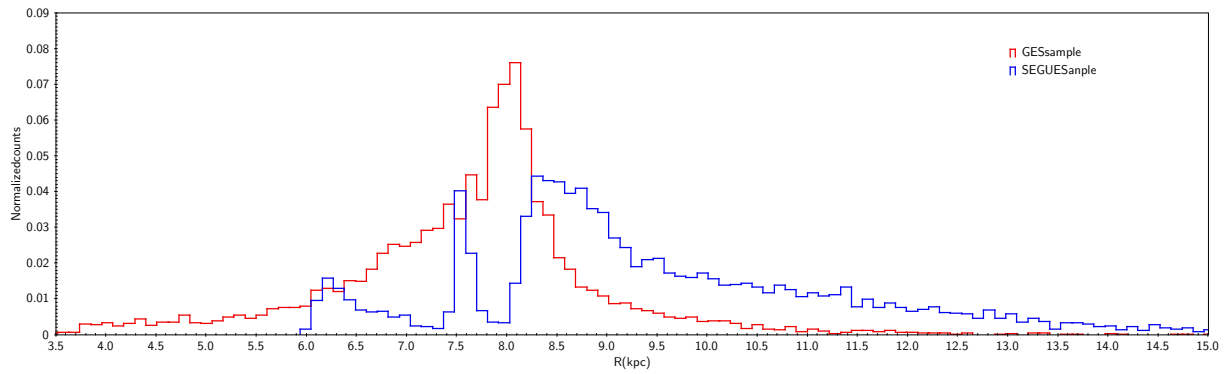


Figure 10.1: Galactocentric radius distribution for the F/G/K stars sample from GES (red line) and MSTO from SEGUE (blue line) as given by the simulations.

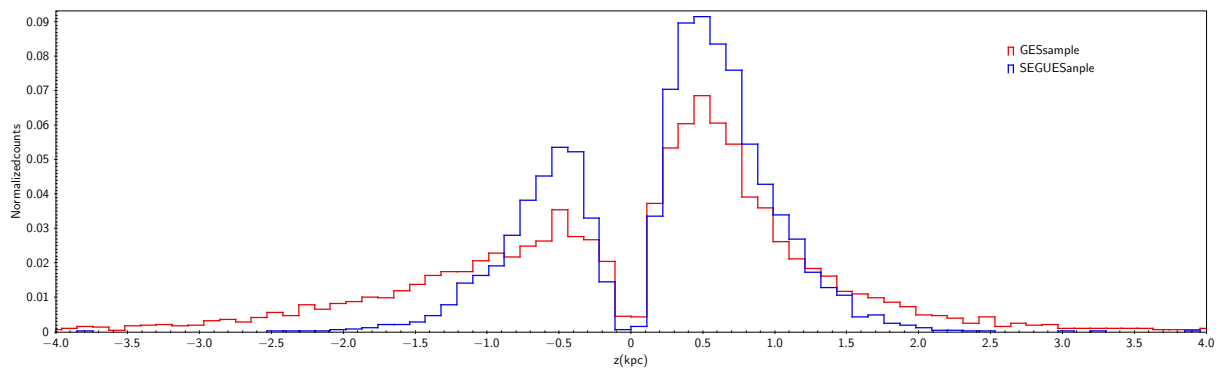


Figure 10.2: Distance from the plane distribution for the F/G/K stars sample from GES (red line) and MSTO from SEGUE (blue line) as given by the simulations.

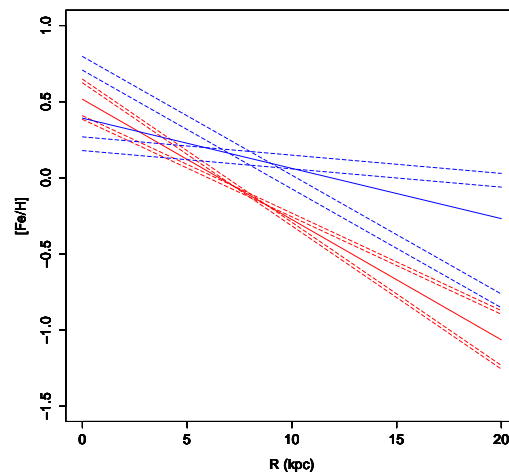


Figure 10.3: Metallicity as a function of the galactocentric radius for the case 1 SEGUE results (red lines) and GES SN metallicity and gradient results for the old thin disc. The continuous lines are the best values obtained and the dashed lines are the combination of the different results taking into account the maximum and minimum values for the errors.

In figure 10.3 we show the range of possible results, in one  $\sigma$ , of the old thin disc fit for the two different samples. The radial metallicity gradients are compatible but there is a shift in the local value. This shift is in agreement with the GES metallicity distribution in figure 9.11 which peaks at higher metallicities. The use of  $\alpha$  element abundances would ease the separation of thin and thick disc samples. In comparison with literature values it is probable that GES sample is slightly shifted towards higher metallicities but further analysis should be done.

Figure 10.4 presents the range of possible results, in one  $\sigma$  errors, obtained for the thick disc analysis for SEGUE and GES samples. The radial metallicity gradients are in agreement but as for the thin disc the SN metallicity is higher in the GES sample. As for the thin disc this value seem slightly higher than most of the analysis found in literature. To confirm these results, as for the thin disc, we should make use of abundances in other elements in order to understand better the observational sample and use the information to analyse better possible selection bias.

In SEGUE sample analysis the radial metallicity gradient is anti-correlated with the local metallicity, while in GES sample analysis these parameters are correlated. The SEGUE sample covers better the large galactocentric radius while the GES sample covers better the inner galaxy, as visible in figure 10.1, which means that the correlation between these two parameters is dependent of the mean galactocentric radius of the analysed sample. To make correlations vanish larger number of fields should be use covering more homogeneously the Milky Way.



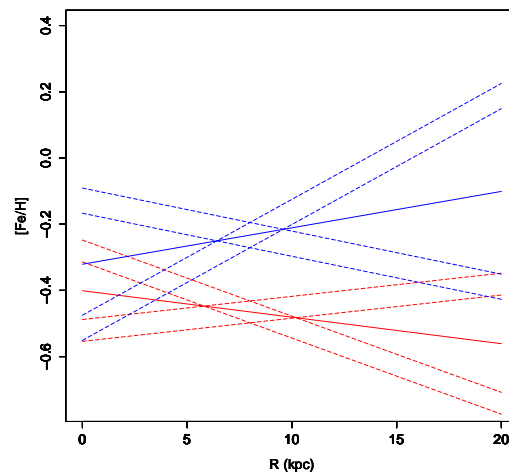


Figure 10.4: Metallicity as a function of the galactocentric radius for the SEGUE results (red lines) and GES SN metallicity and gradient results for the thick disc. The continuous lines are the best values obtained and the dashed lines are the combination of the different results taking into account the maximum and minimum values for the errors.

### 10.3 If the thick disc has no radial gradient?

The indication of a negligible radial gradient, in our best fit, provides some constraints to the thick disc formation and evolution. The thick disc has a SN metallicity around  $-0.465 \pm 0.033$  dex and no radial gradient.

The GES preliminary analysis confirms the results obtained with the SEGUE sample of a flat gradient in the thick disc. This result reinforces the indication of a thick disc which formed in an early epoch from a highly turbulent, well mixed gas (scenario (3); see section 2.5.2) producing a chemically homogeneous thick disc (e.g., Brook et al. 2004; Bournaud et al. 2009) or that heavy mixing has occurred since this epoch. Radial migration (scenario (5)) can also flatten gradients but Minchev et al. (2011) and Minchev et al. (2012) show that secular radial migration probably has minor effects on building a thick disc. Our results cannot rule out this scenario and it remains open to further discussion. The radial mixing in a disc can be also a consequence of the minor merger bombardment (scenario (2)) (Kazantzidis et al. 2008), (Quillen et al. 2009) and (Bird et al. 2012). In this scenario the radial mixing is stronger at higher  $|Z|$  explaining the lack of gradient in the thick disc. The direct accretion of stars (scenario (1)) cannot be ruled out by a null gradient but this scenario predicts orbits with large eccentricities which are not observed in works like Dierickx et al. (2010) from 3D velocities in SDSS and Wilson et al. (2011) from RAVE data.

### 10.3.1 If the thick disc has a positive/negative gradient?

Our result, from SEGUE analysis, is compatible with a positive gradient in the inner regions ( $0.031 \pm 0.025$ ) dex kpc<sup>-1</sup> and a negative gradient in the outer regions of ( $0.030 \pm 0.024$ ) dex kpc<sup>-1</sup>. The preliminary GES analysis cannot rule out the gradient inversion but further analysis, such as fitting separately the inner and outer galaxy or testing a two slope gradient in the thick disc as we did in section 8.1.10, are required.

The existence of positive or negative gradients has already been proposed in the literature. Carrell et al. (2012) kinematically selected a sample of F, G and K dwarfs from SDSS DR8 ( $7.0 \text{ kpc} < R_{gal} < 10.5 \text{ kpc}$ ). The authors sliced the sample in bins of 0.5 kpc in  $|Z|$  from  $|Z| = 1.5$  to  $|Z| = 3.0$  and obtained radial gradients between  $0.025 \pm 0.007$  dex kpc<sup>-1</sup> and  $0.041 \pm 0.016$  dex kpc<sup>-1</sup> for the higher distance from the plane (Isochrone Distance Method). Curir et al. (2014) studied the radial metallicity gradient, induced by secular evolution using a N-body simulation to confront their results. The authors find positive gradients of  $0.0112 \pm 0.0007$  dex kpc<sup>-1</sup> for  $2.5 \text{ kpc} < |Z| < 3.0 \text{ kpc}$ . They conclude that if a positive radial metallicity gradient in the solar neighbourhood is confirmed it is consistent with an early positive radial metallicity gradient in the inner disc ( $R_{gal} < 10 \text{ kpc}$ ) and a negative in the outer disc ( $R_{gal} > 10 \text{ kpc}$ ). More recently Hayden et al. (2014) using the APOGEE sample DR10 (1st year of observations) found a gradient inversion using their sample sliced in  $0.5 \text{ kpc} < |Z| < 1.0 \text{ kpc}$ . The authors found a positive gradient of  $0.021 \pm 0.009$  dex kpc<sup>-1</sup> for inner regions ( $R_{gal} < 8 \text{ kpc}$ ) and a negative gradient of  $-0.053 \pm 0.004$  dex kpc<sup>-1</sup> for outer regions ( $R_{gal} > 8 \text{ kpc}$ ). In an inside-out context (Spitoni & Matteucci (2011), Mott et al. (2013)) the gradient inversion is explained by three different evolution stages. (1) At an early epoch the SFR is higher in the inner regions, but there is a high rate of infalling primordial gas which dilutes more the gas in the inner regions than in outer regions. (2) At later epochs, in the inner regions, the SFR is still strong and the infall of the primordial gas declines which increases the quantity of metals in the interstellar medium. (3) At later epochs the SFR in the inner regions is higher than in the outer regions where there is still a small rate of gas infall. If confirmed, the gradient inversion shows that the direct accretion of stars (scenario (1)) is not the main mechanism that builds the thick disc.

### 10.3.2 Perspectives

In this Phd project we have created a handful number of statistical tools that allowed to analyse large scale surveys and compare it with the BGM which enables a deep study of the structure, formation and evolution of the thick of the Milky Way. In order to constrain the ingredients of the BGM we used two surveys: The SEGUE/SDSS and the GES surveys. We have divided our work in three major parts.

In the first part of the work we analysed the low latitude fields from the SEGUE/SDSS survey. We have developed tools to implement correctly the extinction model in the simulations and compare it with observations, by comparing qualitatively and quantitatively, magnitude, color, color-magnitude and proper motions distributions. Even though many work has been

done to constrain the Milky Way using photometry there are analysis about shape and structure which are worth to do as constrain the warp, flare, disc truncations, scale length among other structures. For this kind of study we could use Red Giant Branch stars as tracers due to their lower dependence of the extinction and because they can reach further distances (Momany et al. 2006).

Further and deeper analysis of proper motions and radial velocities should be done as mentioned before. This analysis are being done by other colleagues who try to improve the model kinematics and compare the model with proper motions and radial velocities.

To further test the revised version (model A and B) (Czekaj et al. 2014) of the BGM larger photometric samples, near the plane, should be used to compare magnitude, color and color magnitude distributions which can give new constraints on the IMF and SFR of each component and SFH in general.

A deeper analysis to the Gaia-ESO sample have to be done to confirm our results which indicate a higher metallicity distribution and a flatter gradient for the thin disc and a higher metallicity distribution for the thick disc compared with literature values and the SEGUE analysis. The same data may be used to confirm a possible inversion of the gradient in the thick disc and constrain the vertical metallicity gradients in thin disc and thick disc, age of the thick disc or even different metallicity distributions for the thin disc components. This data may be used to compute the vertical metallicity gradients in the thin and thick discs as fitting different thin disc gradients according to age. A combination of the SEGUE with Gaia-ESO survey may improve the results of the work and decrease the correlations that exist due to the bias given by using only inner/outer galaxy samples. The analysis of the APOGEE data will provide new constrains on the vertical metallicity gradients and thin disc metallicity distributions because of the high resolution infrared spectroscopy it provides. The combination of large surveys which cover different regions of the galaxy is a step to cover better the space of parameters and possible make disappear possible correlations. The use of kinematical data combined with metallicity distributions would be a further step to understand the thick disc formation.

---

## Publications

- André M. M. Martins , Annie C. Robin , Young Sun Lee and Christian P. Robert, Metallicity distribution of the thick disc of the Milky Way from SEGUE low latitude fields - Submitted to A&A
  - A. C. Robin, C. Reylé, J. Fliri, M. Czekaj, C. P. Robert, and A. M. M. Martins 2014, A&A, 569, A13, Constraining the thick disc formation scenario of the Milky Way
  - Yun, J. L., Elia, D., Palmeirim, P. M., Gomes, J. I., & Martins, A. M. 2009, A&A, 500, 833, Molecular gas and a new young stellar cluster in the far outer Galaxy
-



## Bibliography

- Abadi, M. G., Navarro, J. F., Steinmetz, M., & Eke, V. R. 2003, *ApJ*, 597, 21
- Adibekyan, V. Z., Figueira, P., Santos, N. C., et al. 2013, *A&A*, 554, A44
- Aguerri, J. A. L., Balcells, M., & Peletier, R. F. 2001, *A&A*, 367, 428
- Ahn, C. P., Alexandroff, R., Allende Prieto, C., et al. 2014, *ApJS*, 211, 17
- Ahn, C. P., Alexandroff, R., Allende Prieto, C., et al. 2012, *ApJS*, 203, 21
- Aihara, H., Allende Prieto, C., An, D., et al. 2011, *ApJS*, 193, 29
- Alard, C. 2000, *ArXiv Astrophysics e-prints*
- Allard, F. & Hauschildt, P. H. 1995, *ApJ*, 445, 433
- Allen, C. & Santillan, A. 1991, 22, 255
- Allende Prieto, C., Barklem, P. S., Lambert, D. L., & Cunha, K. 2004, *A&A*, 420, 183
- Allende Prieto, C., Sivarani, T., Beers, T. C., et al. 2008, *AJ*, 136, 2070
- Anders, F., Chiappini, C., Santiago, B. X., et al. 2014, *A&A*, 564, A115
- Arenou, F. 2011, in *American Institute of Physics Conference Series*, Vol. 1346, American Institute of Physics Conference Series, ed. J. A. Docobo, V. S. Tamazian, & Y. Y. Balega, 107–121
- Arnett, D. 1996, *Space Sci. Rev.*, 78, 559
- Athanassoula, E. 2003, *MNRAS*, 341, 1179
- Aumer, M. & Binney, J. J. 2009, *MNRAS*, 397, 1286
- Baade, W. 1944, *ApJ*, 100, 137
- Baade, W. 1958, *Ricerche Astronomiche*, 5, 3
- Babusiaux, C., Gómez, A., Hill, V., et al. 2010, *A&A*, 519, A77
- Bahcall, J. N. & Soneira, R. M. 1984, *ApJS*, 55, 67
-

- 
- Bailin, J. 2003, *ApJ*, 583, L79
- Bailin, J. & Steinmetz, M. 2003, *Ap&SS*, 284, 701
- Barbanis, B. & Woltjer, L. 1967, *ApJ*, 150, 461
- Battaglia, G., Helmi, A., Morrison, H., et al. 2005, *MNRAS*, 364, 433
- Battaglia, G., Helmi, A., Morrison, H., et al. 2006, *MNRAS*, 370, 1055
- Beers, T. C., Carollo, D., Ivezić, Ž., et al. 2012, *ApJ*, 746, 34
- Belokurov, V., Evans, N. W., Irwin, M. J., et al. 2007, *ApJ*, 658, 337
- Bensby, T., Alves-Brito, A., Oey, M. S., Yong, D., & Meléndez, J. 2011, *ApJ*, 735, L46
- Bensby, T., Feltzing, S., & Lundström, I. 2003, *A&A*, 410, 527
- Bensby, T., Feltzing, S., & Lundström, I. 2004a, Origin and Evolution of the Elements
- Bensby, T., Feltzing, S., & Lundström, I. 2004b, *A&A*, 421, 969
- Bensby, T., Feltzing, S., & Lundström, I. 2004c, *A&A*, 415, 155
- Bensby, T., Zenn, A. R., Oey, M. S., & Feltzing, S. 2007, *ApJ*, 663, L13
- Bergbusch, P. A. & Vandenberg, D. A. 1992, *ApJS*, 81, 163
- Bertelli, G., Bressan, A., Chiosi, C., Fagotto, F., & Nasi, E. 1994, *A&AS*, 106, 275
- Bertelli, G., Girardi, L., Marigo, P., & Nasi, E. 2008, *A&A*, 484, 815
- Bertelli, G., Nasi, E., Girardi, L., & Marigo, P. 2009, *A&A*, 508, 355
- Bessell, M. S., Brett, J. M., Wood, P. R., & Scholz, M. 1989, *A&AS*, 77, 1
- Bienaymé, O., Robin, A. C., & Crézé, M. 1987, *A&A*, 180, 94
- Bilir, S., Karaali, S., Ak, S., Yaz, E., & Hamzaoglu, E. 2006, *New Astron.*, 12, 234
- Binney, J. & Tremaine, S. 2008a, *Galactic Dynamics: Second Edition* (Princeton University Press)
- Binney, J. & Tremaine, S. 2008b, *Galactic Dynamics: Second Edition* (Princeton University Press)
- Bird, J. C., Kazantzidis, S., & Weinberg, D. H. 2012, *MNRAS*, 420, 913
- Bissantz, N. & Gerhard, O. 2002, *MNRAS*, 330, 591
- Blumenthal, G. R., Faber, S. M., Primack, J. R., & Rees, M. J. 1984, *Nature*, 311, 517
- Boeche, C., Siebert, A., Piffl, T., et al. 2013, *A&A*, 559, A59
-

- 
- Boggess, N. W., Mather, J. C., Weiss, R., et al. 1992, *ApJ*, 397, 420
- Bosma, A. 1991, in *Warped Disks and Inclined Rings around Galaxies*, ed. S. Casertano, P. D. Sackett, & F. H. Briggs, 181
- Boughn, S. & Crittenden, R. 2004, *Nature*, 427, 45
- Bournaud, F. & Elmegreen, B. G. 2009, *ApJ*, 694, L158
- Bournaud, F., Elmegreen, B. G., & Martig, M. 2009, *ApJ*, 707, L1
- Bovy, J. & Rix, H.-W. 2013, *ApJ*, 779, 115
- Bovy, J., Rix, H.-W., & Hogg, D. W. 2012a, *ApJ*, 751, 131
- Bovy, J., Rix, H.-W., Liu, C., et al. 2012b, *ApJ*, 753, 148
- Brook, C. B., Governato, F., Roškar, R., et al. 2011, *MNRAS*, 415, 1051
- Brook, C. B., Kawata, D., Gibson, B. K., & Freeman, K. C. 2004, *ApJ*, 612, 894
- Brunthaler, A., Reid, M. J., Menten, K. M., et al. 2011, *Astronomische Nachrichten*, 332, 461
- Burton, W. B. 1988, *The structure of our Galaxy derived from observations of neutral hydrogen*, ed. K. I. Kellermann & G. L. Verschuur, 295–358
- Burton, W. B. & te Lintel Hekkert, P. 1986, *A&AS*, 65, 427
- Buser, R. 2000, *Science*, 287, 69
- Buser, R., Rong, J., & Karaali, S. 1999, *A&A*, 348, 98
- Caldwell, J. A. R. & Ostriker, J. P. 1981, *ApJ*, 251, 61
- Cardelli, J. A., Clayton, G. C., & Mathis, J. S. 1989, *ApJ*, 345, 245
- Carlberg, R. G. & Sellwood, J. A. 1985, *ApJ*, 292, 79
- Carney, B. W., Latham, D. W., & Laird, J. B. 1990, *AJ*, 99, 572
- Carollo, D., Beers, T. C., Chiba, M., et al. 2010, *ApJ*, 712, 692
- Carollo, D., Beers, T. C., Lee, Y. S., et al. 2007, *Nature*, 450, 1020
- Carollo, D., Freeman, K., Beers, T. C., et al. 2014, *ApJ*, 788, 180
- Carr, B. J. & Lacey, C. G. 1987, *ApJ*, 316, 23
- Carraro, G. 2014, in *IAU Symposium, Vol. 298*, *IAU Symposium*, ed. S. Feltzing, G. Zhao, N. A. Walton, & P. Whitelock, 7–16
- Carraro, G., Beletsky, Y., & Marconi, G. 2013, *MNRAS*, 428, 502
-



- 
- Carrell, K., Chen, Y., & Zhao, G. 2012, *AJ*, 144, 185
- Carrera, R. & Pancino, E. 2011, *A&A*, 535, A30
- Casagrande, L., Schönrich, R., Asplund, M., et al. 2011, *A&A*, 530, A138
- Castellani, V., Chieffi, A., & Straniero, O. 1992, *ApJS*, 78, 517
- Catelan, M., Minniti, D., Lucas, P. W., et al. 2011, in *RR Lyrae Stars, Metal-Poor Stars, and the Galaxy*, ed. A. McWilliam, 145
- Cayrel, R., Hill, V., Beers, T. C., et al. 2001, *Nature*, 409, 691
- Chabrier, G. & Baraffe, I. 1997, *A&A*, 327, 1039
- Chang, C.-K., Ko, C.-M., & Peng, T.-H. 2011, *ApJ*, 740, 34
- Chen, B., Figueras, F., Torra, J., et al. 1999, *A&A*, 352, 459
- Chen, Y. Q., Zhao, G., Carrell, K., & Zhao, J. K. 2011, *AJ*, 142, 184
- Cheng, J. Y., Rockosi, C. M., Morrison, H. L., et al. 2012a, *ApJ*, 752, 51
- Cheng, J. Y., Rockosi, C. M., Morrison, H. L., et al. 2012b, *ApJ*, 746, 149
- Chiba, M. & Beers, T. C. 2000, *AJ*, 119, 2843
- Cirasuolo, M., Afonso, J., Bender, R., et al. 2012, in *Society of Photo-Optical Instrumentation Engineers (SPIE) Conference Series*, Vol. 8446, Society of Photo-Optical Instrumentation Engineers (SPIE) Conference Series
- Clewley, L., Warren, S. J., Hewett, P. C., et al. 2005, *MNRAS*, 362, 349
- Combes, F. & Sanders, R. H. 1981, *A&A*, 96, 164
- Cox, J. 2008, *Astronomy & Geophysics*, 49, 1.7
- Crézé, M., Chereul, E., Bienayme, O., & Pichon, C. 1998, *A&A*, 329, 920
- Cui, X.-Q., Zhao, Y.-H., Chu, Y.-Q., et al. 2012, *Research in Astronomy and Astrophysics*, 12, 1197
- Curir, A., Serra, A. L., Spagna, A., et al. 2014, *ApJ*, 784, L24
- Czekaj, M. A., Robin, A. C., Figueras, F., Luri, X., & Haywood, M. 2014, *A&A*, 564, A102
- Daflon, S., Cunha, K., de la Reza, R., Holtzman, J., & Chiappini, C. 2010, in *IAU Symposium*, Vol. 265, *IAU Symposium*, ed. K. Cunha, M. Spite, & B. Barbuy, 358–359
- Dalton, G., Trager, S. C., Abrams, D. C., et al. 2012, in *Society of Photo-Optical Instrumentation Engineers (SPIE) Conference Series*, Vol. 8446, Society of Photo-Optical Instrumentation Engineers (SPIE) Conference Series
-

- 
- Dame, T. M. 1993, in American Institute of Physics Conference Series, Vol. 278, Back to the Galaxy, ed. S. S. Holt & F. Verter, 267–278
- De Angeli, F., Piotto, G., Cassisi, S., et al. 2005, *AJ*, 130, 116
- de Blok, W. J. G. 2010, *Advances in Astronomy*, 2010
- de Jong, J. T. A., Yanny, B., Rix, H.-W., et al. 2010, *ApJ*, 714, 663
- de Jong, R. S., Bellido-Tirado, O., Chiappini, C., et al. 2012, in Society of Photo-Optical Instrumentation Engineers (SPIE) Conference Series, Vol. 8446, Society of Photo-Optical Instrumentation Engineers (SPIE) Conference Series
- Debattista, V. P. 2006, in Astronomical Society of the Pacific Conference Series, Vol. 352, New Horizons in Astronomy: Frank N. Bash Symposium, ed. S. J. Kannappan, S. Redfield, J. E. Kessler-Silacci, M. Landriau, & N. Drory, 161
- Debattista, V. P., Mayer, L., Carollo, C. M., et al. 2006, *ApJ*, 645, 209
- Debattista, V. P. & Sellwood, J. A. 2000, *ApJ*, 543, 704
- Dehnen, W. & Binney, J. J. 1998, *MNRAS*, 298, 387
- Dekel, A., Sari, R., & Ceverino, D. 2009, *ApJ*, 703, 785
- Del Popolo, A. 2009, *ApJ*, 698, 2093
- Del Popolo, A., Lima, J. A. S., Fabris, J. C., & Rodrigues, D. C. 2014, 4, 21
- Deng, L.-C., Newberg, H. J., Liu, C., et al. 2012, *Research in Astronomy and Astrophysics*, 12, 735
- Dennis, T. R. 1966, *ApJ*, 146, 581
- Derriere, S. & Robin, A. C. 2001, in Astronomical Society of the Pacific Conference Series, Vol. 232, The New Era of Wide Field Astronomy, ed. R. Clowes, A. Adamson, & G. Bromage, 229
- Dierickx, M., Klement, R., Rix, H.-W., & Liu, C. 2010, *ApJ*, 725, L186
- Diplas, A. & Savage, B. D. 1991, *ApJ*, 377
- Djorgovski, S. & Sosin, C. 1989, *ApJ*, 341, L13
- Drimmel, R. & Spergel, D. N. 2001, *ApJ*, 556, 181
- Du, C., Ma, J., Wu, Z., & Zhou, X. 2006, *MNRAS*, 372, 1304
- Dubinski, J. & Carlberg, R. G. 1991, *ApJ*, 378, 496
- Dwek, E., Arendt, R. G., Hauser, M. G., et al. 1995, *ApJ*, 445, 716
-

- 
- Eggen, O. J., Lynden-Bell, D., & Sandage, A. R. 1962, *ApJ*, 136, 748
- Eisenstein, D. J., Weinberg, D. H., Agol, E., et al. 2011, *AJ*, 142, 72
- Epchtein, N., Deul, E., Derriere, S., et al. 1999, *A&A*, 349, 236
- Finkbeiner, A. 2012, *Nature*, 490, 24
- Fluks, M. A., Plez, B., The, P. S., et al. 1994, *A&AS*, 105, 311
- Flynn, C., Holmberg, J., Portinari, L., Fuchs, B., & Jahreiß, H. 2006, *MNRAS*, 372, 1149
- Frebel, A., Christlieb, N., Norris, J. E., et al. 2007, *ApJ*, 660, L117
- Freeman, K. & Bland-Hawthorn, J. 2002, *ARA&A*, 40, 487
- Freudenreich, H. T. 1998, *ApJ*, 492, 495
- Freudenreich, H. T., Berriman, G. B., Dwek, E., et al. 1994, *ApJ*, 429, L69
- Friel, E. D., Janes, K. A., Tavares, M., et al. 2002, *AJ*, 124, 2693
- Frinchaboy, P. M., Thompson, B., Jackson, K. M., et al. 2013, *ApJ*, 777, L1
- Fuhrmann, K. 2008, *MNRAS*, 384, 173
- Fuhrmann, K. 2011, *MNRAS*, 414, 2893
- Fux, R. 1997, *A&A*, 327, 983
- Fux, R. 1999, *A&A*, 345, 787
- Gardner, E., Debattista, V. P., Robin, A. C., Vásquez, S., & Zoccali, M. 2014, *MNRAS*, 438, 3275
- Georgelin, Y. M. & Georgelin, Y. P. 1976, *A&A*, 49, 57
- Gerhard, O. 2006, in *EAS Publications Series*, Vol. 20, *EAS Publications Series*, ed. G. A. Mamon, F. Combes, C. Deffayet, & B. Fort, 89–96
- Gilmore, G., Randich, S., Asplund, M., et al. 2012, *The Messenger*, 147, 25
- Gilmore, G. & Reid, N. 1983, *MNRAS*, 202, 1025
- Gilmore, G., Wyse, R. F. G., & Jones, J. B. 1995, *AJ*, 109, 1095
- Girard, T. M., Korchagin, V. I., Casetti-Dinescu, D. I., et al. 2006, *AJ*, 132, 1768
- Girardi, L., Groenewegen, M. A. T., Hatziminaoglou, E., & da Costa, L. 2005, *A&A*, 436, 895
- Gomez, A. E., Grenier, S., Udry, S., et al. 1997, in *ESA Special Publication*, Vol. 402, *Hipparcos - Venice '97*, ed. R. M. Bonnet, E. Høg, P. L. Bernacca, L. Emiliani, A. Blaauw, C. Turon, J. Kovalevsky, L. Lindegren, H. Hassan, M. Bouffard, B. Strim, D. Heger, M. A. C. Perryman, & L. Woltjer, 621–624
-

- 
- Gould, A., Flynn, C., & Bahcall, J. N. 1998, *ApJ*, 503, 798
- Grabelsky, D. A., Cohen, R. S., Bronfman, L., & Thaddeus, P. 1988, *ApJ*, 331, 181
- Gunn, J. E., Siegmund, W. A., Mannery, E. J., et al. 2006, *AJ*, 131, 2332
- Gyuk, G., Flynn, C., & Evans, N. W. 1999, *ApJ*, 521, 190
- Hammersley, P. L., Garzon, F., Mahoney, T., & Calbet, X. 1995, *MNRAS*, 273, 206
- Hänninen, J. & Flynn, C. 2002, *MNRAS*, 337, 731
- Hänninen, J. & Flynn, C. 2004, *A&A*, 421, 1001
- Hansen, B. M. S., Kalirai, J. S., Anderson, J., et al. 2013, *Nature*, 500, 51
- Hauser, M. G., Kelsall, T., Moseley, Jr., S. H., et al. 1991, in *American Institute of Physics Conference Series*, Vol. 222, *After the first three minutes*, ed. S. S. Holt, C. L. Bennett, & V. Trimble, 161–178
- Hayden, M. R., Holtzman, J. A., Bovy, J., et al. 2014, *AJ*, 147, 116
- Haywood, M. 2001, *MNRAS*, 325, 1365
- Haywood, M. 2002, *MNRAS*, 337, 151
- Haywood, M. 2006a, *MNRAS*, 371, 1760
- Haywood, M. 2006b, *MNRAS*, 371, 1760
- Haywood, M. 2008, *MNRAS*, 388, 1175
- Haywood, M., Di Matteo, P., Lehnert, M. D., Katz, D., & Gómez, A. 2013, *A&A*, 560, A109
- Haywood, M., Robin, A. C., & Crézé, M. 1997a, *A&A*, 320, 428
- Haywood, M., Robin, A. C., & Crézé, M. 1997b, *A&A*, 320, 440
- Helmi, A. 2008, *A&A Rev.*, 15, 145
- Henderson, A. P., Jackson, P. D., & Kerr, F. J. 1982, *ApJ*, 263, 116
- Henry, R. B. C., Kwitter, K. B., Jaskot, A. E., et al. 2010, *ApJ*, 724, 748
- Hill, V., Lecureur, A., Gómez, A., et al. 2011, *A&A*, 534, A80
- Holmberg, J., Nordström, B., & Andersen, J. 2007, *A&A*, 475, 519
- Holmberg, J., Nordström, B., & Andersen, J. 2009, *A&A*, 501, 941
- Ibata, R. A. & Gilmore, G. F. 1995, *MNRAS*, 275, 591
- Ibukiyama, A. & Arimoto, N. 2002, *A&A*, 394, 927
-

- 
- Immeli, A., Samland, M., Gerhard, O., & Westera, P. 2004, *A&A*, 413, 547
- Ivezić, Ž., Beers, T. C., & Jurić, M. 2012, *ARA&A*, 50, 251
- Ivezić, Ž., Sesar, B., Jurić, M., et al. 2008, *ApJ*, 684, 287
- Jahreiß, H. & Wielen, R. 1997, in *ESA Special Publication*, Vol. 402, *Hipparcos - Venice '97*, ed. R. M. Bonnet, E. Høg, P. L. Bernacca, L. Emiliani, A. Blaauw, C. Turon, J. Kovalevsky, L. Lindegren, H. Hassan, M. Bouffard, B. Strim, D. Heger, M. A. C. Perryman, & L. Woltjer, 675–680
- Jenkins, A. 1992, *MNRAS*, 257, 620
- Jenkins, A. & Binney, J. 1990, *MNRAS*, 245, 305
- Jurić, M., Ivezić, Ž., Brooks, A., et al. 2008, *ApJ*, 673, 864
- Kalirai, J. S. 2012, *Nature*, 486, 90
- Kapteyn, J. C. 1922, *ApJ*, 55, 302
- Kautsch, S. J., Grebel, E. K., Barazza, F. D., & Gallagher, III, J. S. 2006, *A&A*, 445, 765
- Kazantidis, S., Bullock, J. S., Zentner, A. R., Kravtsov, A. V., & Moustakas, L. A. 2008, *ApJ*, 688, 254
- Kendall, M. & Stuart, A. 1973, *The Advanced Theory of Statistics*, Vol 2. (Griffin (London)), Ch. 8
- Kent, S. M. 1992, *ApJ*, 387, 181
- Kent, S. M., Dame, T. M., & Fazio, G. 1991, *ApJ*, 378, 131
- Kerr, F. J. & Lynden-Bell, D. 1986, *MNRAS*, 221, 1023
- Klypin, A., Zhao, H., & Somerville, R. S. 2002, *ApJ*, 573, 597
- Koch, D., Fazio, G. G., Traub, W. A., et al. 1982, *Optical Engineering*, 21, 141
- Kordopatis, G., Gilmore, G., Steinmetz, M., et al. 2013a, *AJ*, 146, 134
- Kordopatis, G., Gilmore, G., Wyse, R. F. G., et al. 2013b, *MNRAS*, 436, 3231
- Kordopatis, G., Recio-Blanco, A., de Laverny, P., et al. 2011, *A&A*, 535, A107
- Kormendy, J. & Fisher, D. B. 2005, in *Revista Mexicana de Astronomia y Astrofisica Conference Series*, Vol. 23, *Revista Mexicana de Astronomia y Astrofisica Conference Series*, ed. S. Torres-Peimbert & G. MacAlpine, 101–108
- Kormendy, J. & Kennicutt, Jr., R. C. 2004, *ARA&A*, 42, 603
- Kroupa, P. 2002, *MNRAS*, 330, 707
-

- 
- Kunder, A., Koch, A., Rich, R. M., et al. 2012, *AJ*, 143, 57
- Kurucz, R. L. 1995, in *Astronomical Society of the Pacific Conference Series*, Vol. 78, *Astrophysical Applications of Powerful New Databases*, ed. S. J. Adelman & W. L. Wiese, 205
- Lacey, C. G. & Ostriker, J. P. 1985, *ApJ*, 299, 633
- Lang, K. R. 2006, *A companion to astronomy and astrophysics* (Springer Science+Business Media, LLC,)
- Laurikainen, E., Salo, H., Athanassoula, E., Bosma, A., & Herrera-Endoqui, M. 2014, *MNRAS*, 444, L80
- Lee, Y. S., Beers, T. C., An, D., et al. 2011, *ApJ*, 738, 187
- Lee, Y. S., Beers, T. C., Sivarani, T., et al. 2008a, *AJ*, 136, 2022
- Lee, Y. S., Beers, T. C., Sivarani, T., et al. 2008b, *AJ*, 136, 2050
- Lejeune, T., Cuisinier, F., & Buser, R. 1998, *VizieR Online Data Catalog*, 413, 65
- Lemasle, B., François, P., Genovali, K., et al. 2013, *A&A*, 558, A31
- Levine, E. S., Blitz, L., & Heiles, C. 2006, *ApJ*, 643, 881
- Loebman, S. R., Roškar, R., Debattista, V. P., et al. 2011, *ApJ*, 737, 8
- López-Corredoira, M., Cabrera-Lavers, A., Garzón, F., & Hammersley, P. L. 2002, *A&A*, 394, 883
- Lopez-Corredoira, M. & Molgo, J. 2014, *ArXiv e-prints*
- LSST Science Collaboration, Abell, P. A., Allison, J., et al. 2009, *ArXiv e-prints*
- Luck, R. E., Andrievsky, S. M., Kovtyukh, V. V., Gieren, W., & Graczyk, D. 2011, *AJ*, 142, 51
- Luck, R. E. & Heiter, U. 2006, *AJ*, 131, 3069
- Maciel, W. J. & Costa, R. D. D. 2010, in *IAU Symposium*, Vol. 265, *IAU Symposium*, ed. K. Cunha, M. Spite, & B. Barbuy, 317–324
- Majewski, S. R., Wilson, J. C., Hearty, F., Schiavon, R. R., & Skrutskie, M. F. 2010, in *IAU Symposium*, Vol. 265, *IAU Symposium*, ed. K. Cunha, M. Spite, & B. Barbuy, 480–481
- Marin, J.-M., Pudlo, P., Robert, C. P., & Ryder, R. 2011, *ArXiv e-prints*
- Marshall, D. J., Robin, A. C., Reylé, C., Schultheis, M., & Picaud, S. 2006, *A&A*, 453, 635
- Martinez-Valpuesta, I. & Shlosman, I. 2004, *ApJ*, 613, L29
- Mashonkina, L. & Gehren, T. 2001, *A&A*, 376, 232
-

- 
- Mateo, M. L. 1998, *ARA&A*, 36, 435
- Matsumoto, T., Hayakawa, S., Koizumi, H., et al. 1982, in *American Institute of Physics Conference Series*, Vol. 83, *The Galactic Center*, ed. G. R. Riegler & R. D. Blandford, 48–52
- McMillan, P. J. 2011, *MNRAS*, 414, 2446
- McWilliam, A. & Zoccali, M. 2010, *ApJ*, 724, 1491
- Melnick, G. J., Fazio, G. G., Koch, D. G., et al. 1987, in *American Institute of Physics Conference Series*, Vol. 155, *The Galactic Center*, ed. D. C. Backer, 157–161
- Mendez, R. A. & Guzman, R. 1998, *A&A*, 333, 106
- Mihalas, D. & Binney, J. 1981, *Galactic astronomy: Structure and kinematics*
- Mikolaitis, Š., Hill, V., Recio-Blanco, A., et al. 2014, *ArXiv e-prints*
- Minchev, I., Chiappini, C., & Martig, M. 2013, *A&A*, 558, A9
- Minchev, I. & Famaey, B. 2010, *ApJ*, 722, 112
- Minchev, I., Famaey, B., Combes, F., et al. 2011, *A&A*, 527, A147
- Minchev, I., Famaey, B., Quillen, A. C., et al. 2012, *A&A*, 548, A127
- Minchev, I. & Quillen, A. C. 2006, *MNRAS*, 368, 623
- Minniti, D. 1996, *ApJ*, 459, 175
- Minniti, D., Saito, R. K., Alonso-García, J., Lucas, P. W., & Hempel, M. 2011, *ApJ*, 733, L43
- Minniti, D., White, S. D. M., Olszewski, E. W., & Hill, J. M. 1992, *ApJ*, 393, L47
- Minniti, D. & Zoccali, M. 2008, in *IAU Symposium*, Vol. 245, *IAU Symposium*, ed. M. Bureau, E. Athanassoula, & B. Barbuy, 323–332
- Momany, Y., Zaggia, S., Gilmore, G., et al. 2006, *A&A*, 451, 515
- Moore, B., Ghigna, S., Governato, F., et al. 1999, *ApJ*, 524, L19
- Mott, A., Spitoni, E., & Matteucci, F. 2013, *MNRAS*, 435, 2918
- Munn, J. A., Monet, D. G., Levine, S. E., et al. 2004, *AJ*, 127, 3034
- Nakanishi, H. & Sofue, Y. 2003, *PASJ*, 55, 191
- Nataf, D. M., Udalski, A., Gould, A., Fouqué, P., & Stanek, K. Z. 2010, *ApJ*, 721, L28
- Navarro, J. F. & Benz, W. 1991, *ApJ*, 380, 320
- Navarro, J. F., Frenk, C. S., & White, S. D. M. 1996, *ApJ*, 462, 563
-

- 
- Navarro, J. F., Frenk, C. S., & White, S. D. M. 1997, *ApJ*, 490, 493
- Navarro, J. F. & Steinmetz, M. 1997, *ApJ*, 478, 13
- Navarro, J. F. & Steinmetz, M. 2000, *ApJ*, 538, 477
- Ness, M., Freeman, K., Athanassoula, E., et al. 2013, *MNRAS*, 430, 836
- Neugebauer, G., Habing, H. J., van Duinen, R., et al. 1984, *ApJ*, 278, L1
- Newberg, H. J., Yanny, B., Rockosi, C., et al. 2002, *ApJ*, 569, 245
- Nomoto, K., Iwamoto, K., Nakasato, N., et al. 1997, *Nuclear Physics A*, 621, 467
- Nomoto, K., Yamaoka, H., Shigeyama, T., Kumagai, S., & Tsujimoto, T. 1994, in *Supernovae*, ed. S. A. Bludman, R. Mochkovitch, & J. Zinn-Justin, 199
- Nordström, B., Mayor, M., Andersen, J., et al. 2004, *A&A*, 418, 989
- Ojha, D. K. 2001, *MNRAS*, 322, 426
- Ojha, D. K., Bienaymé, O., Mohan, V., & Robin, A. C. 1999, *A&A*, 351, 945
- Ojha, D. K., Bienayme, O., Robin, A. C., Crézé, M., & Mohan, V. 1996, *A&A*, 311, 456
- Ojha, D. K., Bienayme, O., Robin, A. C., & Mohan, V. 1994, *A&A*, 290, 771
- Ortolani, S., Renzini, A., Gilmozzi, R., et al. 1995, *Nature*, 377, 701
- Perryman, M., Spergel, D. N., & Lindegren, L. 2014, *ApJ*, 789, 166
- Perryman, M. A. C., de Boer, K. S., Gilmore, G., et al. 2001, *A&A*, 369, 339
- Perryman, M. A. C., Lindegren, L., Kovalevsky, J., et al. 1997, *A&A*, 323, L49
- Pettinger, M. M., Bernkopf, J., Fuhrmann, K., Korn, A. J., & Gehren, T. 2001, in *Astronomische Gesellschaft Meeting Abstracts*, Vol. 18, *Astronomische Gesellschaft Meeting Abstracts*, ed. E. R. Schielicke, 166
- Pfenniger, D. & Norman, C. 1990, *ApJ*, 363, 391
- Pichardo, B., Martos, M., & Moreno, E. 2004, *ApJ*, 609, 144
- Polido, P., Jablonski, F., & Lépine, J. R. D. 2013, *ApJ*, 778, 32
- Porcel, C., Battaner, E., & Jimenez-Vicente, J. 1997, *A&A*, 322, 103
- Purcell, C. W., Kazantzidis, S., & Bullock, J. S. 2009, in *Astronomical Society of the Pacific Conference Series*, Vol. 419, *Galaxy Evolution: Emerging Insights and Future Challenges*, ed. S. Jogee, I. Marinova, L. Hao, & G. A. Blanc, 248
- Quillen, A. C., Minchev, I., Bland-Hawthorn, J., & Haywood, M. 2009, *MNRAS*, 397, 1599
-



- 
- Quinn, P. J., Hernquist, L., & Fullagar, D. P. 1993, *ApJ*, 403, 74
- Quiroza, C., Rood, R. T., Bania, T. M., Balser, D. S., & Maciel, W. J. 2006, *ApJ*, 653, 1226
- Raha, N., Sellwood, J. A., James, R. A., & Kahn, F. D. 1991, *Nature*, 352, 411
- Rattenbury, N. J., Mao, S., Sumi, T., & Smith, M. C. 2007, *MNRAS*, 378, 1064
- Read, J. I., Lake, G., Agertz, O., & Debattista, V. P. 2008, *MNRAS*, 389, 1041
- Recio-Blanco, A., de Laverny, P., Kordopatis, G., et al. 2014, *ArXiv e-prints*
- Reid, I. N., Gizis, J. E., & Hawley, S. L. 2002, *AJ*, 124, 2721
- Reid, M. J. 1993, *ARA&A*, 31, 345
- Reylé, C., Marshall, D. J., Robin, A. C., & Schultheis, M. 2009, *A&A*, 495, 819
- Rich, R. M., Reitzel, D. B., Howard, C. D., & Zhao, H. 2007, *ApJ*, 658, L29
- Rix, H.-W. & Bovy, J. 2013, *A&A Rev.*, 21, 61
- Robin, A. & Crézé, M. 1986, *A&A*, 157, 71
- Robin, A. C., Crézé, M., & Mohan, V. 1992, *ApJ*, 400, L25
- Robin, A. C., Haywood, M., Creze, M., Ojha, D. K., & Bienayme, O. 1996, *A&A*, 305, 125
- Robin, A. C., Marshall, D. J., Schultheis, M., & Reylé, C. 2012, *A&A*, 538, A106
- Robin, A. C., Reylé, C., Derrière, S., & Picaud, S. 2003, *A&A*, 409, 523
- Robin, A. C., Reylé, C., Fliri, J., et al. 2014, *A&A*, 569, A13
- Robin, A. C., Rich, R. M., Aussel, H., et al. 2007, *ApJS*, 172, 545
- Rocha-Pinto, H. J. & Maciel, W. J. 1996, *MNRAS*, 279, 447
- Roediger, J. C., Courteau, S., Graves, G., & Schiavon, R. P. 2014, *ApJS*, 210, 10
- Rojas-Arriagada, A., Recio-Blanco, A., Hill, V., et al. 2014, *ArXiv e-prints*
- Rubin, V. C., Ford, W. K. J., & Thonnard, N. 1980, *ApJ*, 238, 471
- Rubin, V. C., Thonnard, N., & Ford, Jr., W. K. 1978, *ApJ*, 225, L107
- Rudolph, A. L., Fich, M., Bell, G. R., et al. 2006, *ApJS*, 162, 346
- Ruphy, S., Robin, A. C., Epchtein, N., et al. 1996, *A&A*, 313, L21
- Saha, K. & Gerhard, O. 2013, *MNRAS*, 430, 2039
- Saha, K., Martinez-Valpuesta, I., & Gerhard, O. 2012, *MNRAS*, 421, 333
-

- 
- Saito, R. K., Zoccali, M., McWilliam, A., et al. 2011, *AJ*, 142, 76
- Samland, M. & Gerhard, O. E. 2003, *A&A*, 399, 961
- Santiago, B. X., Gilmore, G., & Elson, R. A. W. 1996, *MNRAS*, 281, 871
- Scannapieco, C. & Tissera, P. B. 2003, *MNRAS*, 338, 880
- Schaller, G., Schaerer, D., Meynet, G., & Maeder, A. 1992, *A&AS*, 96, 269
- Schiavon, R. P., Rose, J. A., Courteau, S., & MacArthur, L. A. 2005, *ApJS*, 160, 163
- Schlegel, D., White, M., & Eisenstein, D. 2009, in *Astronomy*, Vol. 2010, *astro2010: The Astronomy and Astrophysics Decadal Survey*, 314
- Schlegel, D. J., Finkbeiner, D. P., & Davis, M. 1998, *ApJ*, 500, 525
- Schlesinger, K. J., Johnson, J. A., Rockosi, C. M., et al. 2012, *ApJ*, 761, 160
- Schönrich, R., Asplund, M., & Casagrande, L. 2011, *MNRAS*, 415, 3807
- Schönrich, R. & Binney, J. 2009a, *MNRAS*, 396, 203
- Schönrich, R. & Binney, J. 2009b, *MNRAS*, 399, 1145
- Schultz, C., Oñorbe, J., Abazajian, K. N., & Bullock, J. S. 2014, *MNRAS*, 442, 1597
- Schultz, G. V. & Wiemer, W. 1975, *A&A*, 43, 133
- Schuster, W. J., Moitinho, A., Márquez, A., Parrao, L., & Covarrubias, E. 2006, *A&A*, 445, 939
- Schwarz, G. 1978, *Ann. Stat.*, 6, 461
- Sellwood, J. A. & Binney, J. J. 2002, *MNRAS*, 336, 785
- Sellwood, J. A. & Carlberg, R. G. 1984, *ApJ*, 282, 61
- Sharma, S., Bland-Hawthorn, J., Johnston, K. V., & Binney, J. 2011, *ApJ*, 730, 3
- Siebert, A., Williams, M. E. K., Siviero, A., et al. 2011, *AJ*, 141, 187
- Siegel, M. H., Majewski, S. R., Reid, I. N., & Thompson, I. B. 2002, *ApJ*, 578, 151
- Silverberg, R. F., Hauser, M. G., Boggess, N. W., et al. 1993, in *Society of Photo-Optical Instrumentation Engineers (SPIE) Conference Series*, Vol. 2019, *Infrared Spaceborne Remote Sensing*, ed. M. S. Scholl, 180–189
- Simmerer, J., Sneden, C., Cowan, J. J., et al. 2004, *ApJ*, 617, 1091
- Simmons, B. D., Melvin, T., Lintott, C., et al. 2014, *ArXiv e-prints*
- Skrutskie, M. F., Cutri, R. M., Stiening, R., et al. 2006, *AJ*, 131, 1163
-

- Smolinski, J. P., Lee, Y. S., Beers, T. C., et al. 2011, *AJ*, 141, 89
- Snedden, C., McWilliam, A., Preston, G. W., et al. 1996, *ApJ*, 467, 819
- Sofue, Y., Honma, M., & Omodaka, T. 2009, *PASJ*, 61, 227
- Sommer-Larsen, J., Gelato, S., & Vedel, H. 1999, *ApJ*, 519, 501
- Soto, M., Barbá, R., Gunthardt, G., et al. 2013, *A&A*, 552, A101
- Soubiran, C. 1994, in *IAU Symposium*, Vol. 161, *Astronomy from Wide-Field Imaging*, ed. H. T. MacGillivray, 435
- Soubiran, C., Bienaymé, O., & Siebert, A. 2003, *A&A*, 398, 141
- Spagna, A., Lattanzi, M. G., Lasker, B. M., et al. 1996, *A&A*, 311, 758
- Spergel, D. N., Bean, R., Doré, O., et al. 2007, *ApJS*, 170, 377
- Spitoni, E. & Matteucci, F. 2011, *A&A*, 531, A72
- Spitzer, Jr., L. & Schwarzschild, M. 1951, *ApJ*
- Spitzer, Jr., L. & Schwarzschild, M. 1953, *ApJ*, 118, 106
- Springel, V., Frenk, C. S., & White, S. D. M. 2006, *Nature*, 440, 1137
- Springel, V. & Hernquist, L. 2003, *MNRAS*, 339, 312
- Stanek, K. Z., Mateo, M., Udalski, A., et al. 1994, *ApJ*, 429, L73
- Stanghellini, L., Guerrero, M. A., Cunha, K., Machado, A., & Villaver, E. 2006, *ApJ*, 651, 898
- Statler, T. S. 1988, *ApJ*, 331, 71
- Steinmetz, M., Zwitter, T., Siebert, A., et al. 2006, *AJ*, 132, 1645
- Stewart, K. R., Bullock, J. S., Wechsler, R. H., Maller, A. H., & Zentner, A. R. 2008, *ApJ*, 683, 597
- Stoughton, C., Lupton, R. H., Bernardi, M., et al. 2002, *AJ*, 123, 485
- Sumi, T., Woźniak, P. R., Udalski, A., et al. 2006, *ApJ*, 636, 240
- Taylor, B. J. & Croxall, K. 2005, *MNRAS*, 357, 967
- Terndrup, D. M., Sadler, E. M., & Rich, R. M. 1995, *AJ*, 110, 1774
- The Fermi-LAT Collaboration, :, Ackermann, M., et al. 2013, *ArXiv e-prints*
- Toth, G. & Ostriker, J. P. 1992, *ApJ*, 389, 5
-

- 
- Tsikoudi, V. 1980, *ApJS*, 43, 365
- Twarog, B. A. 1980, *ApJS*, 44, 1
- Vallee, J. P. 2014, ArXiv e-prints
- Vallée, J. P. 2014, *MNRAS*, 442, 2993
- Vallenari, A., Pasetto, S., Bertelli, G., et al. 2006, *A&A*, 451, 125
- van den Bosch, F. C. 2001, *MNRAS*, 327, 1334
- van Leeuwen, F. 2007, *A&A*, 474, 653
- Velazquez, H. & White, S. D. M. 1999, *MNRAS*, 304, 254
- Veltz, L., Bienaymé, O., Freeman, K. C., et al. 2008, *A&A*, 480, 753
- Villalobos, Á. & Helmi, A. 2008, *MNRAS*, 391, 1806
- Wang, Y., Zhao, H., Mao, S., & Rich, R. M. 2012, *MNRAS*, 427, 1429
- Weinberg, M. D. & Blitz, L. 2006, *ApJ*, 641, L33
- Weiner, B. J. & Sellwood, J. A. 1999, *ApJ*, 524, 112
- Westera, P., Lejeune, T., Buser, R., Cuisinier, F., & Bruzual, G. 2002, *A&A*, 381, 524
- Wielen, R. 1974a, *Highlights of Astronomy*, 3, 395
- Wielen, R. 1974b, *Highlights of Astronomy*, 3, 395
- Wielen, R. 1977, *A&A*, 60, 263
- Wilson, M. L., Helmi, A., Morrison, H. L., et al. 2011, *MNRAS*, 413, 2235
- Wyse, R. F. G. & Gilmore, G. 1995, *AJ*, 110, 2771
- Yanny, B., Rockosi, C., Newberg, H. J., et al. 2009, *AJ*, 137, 4377
- Yong, D., Carney, B. W., & Friel, E. D. 2012, *AJ*, 144, 95
- York, D. G., Adelman, J., Anderson, Jr., J. E., et al. 2000, *AJ*, 120, 1579
- Zhao, G., Zhao, Y.-H., Chu, Y.-Q., Jing, Y.-P., & Deng, L.-C. 2012, *Research in Astronomy and Astrophysics*, 12, 723
- Zhao, H. & Mao, S. 1996, *MNRAS*, 283, 1197
- Zoccali, M. 2010, in *IAU Symposium*, Vol. 265, *IAU Symposium*, ed. K. Cunha, M. Spite, & B. Barbuy, 271–278
- Zoccali, M., Hill, V., Lecureur, A., et al. 2008, *A&A*, 486, 177
-

Zoccali, M., Renzini, A., Ortolani, S., et al. 2003, *A&A*, 399, 931

Zucker, D. B., de Silva, G., Freeman, K., Bland-Hawthorn, J., & Hermes Team. 2012, in *Astronomical Society of the Pacific Conference Series*, Vol. 458, *Galactic Archaeology: Near-Field Cosmology and the Formation of the Milky Way*, ed. W. Aoki, M. Ishigaki, T. Suda, T. Tsujimoto, & N. Arimoto, 421

Zwitter, T., Siebert, A., Munari, U., et al. 2008, *AJ*, 136, 421

---